

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>1</b>	<b>Before driving</b>	Adjusting and operating features such as door locks, mirrors, and steering column
<b>2</b>	<b>When driving</b>	Driving, stopping and safe-driving information
<b>3</b>	<b>Interior features</b>	Air conditioning and audio systems, as well as other interior features for a comfortable driving experience
<b>4</b>	<b>Maintenance and care</b>	Cleaning and protecting your vehicle, performing do-it-yourself maintenance, and maintenance information
<b>5</b>	<b>When trouble arises</b>	What to do if the vehicle needs to be towed, gets a flat tire, or is involved in an accident
<b>6</b>	<b>Vehicle specifications</b>	Detailed vehicle information
<b>7</b>	<b>For owners</b>	Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners and seat belt instructions for Canadian owners
	<b>Index</b>	Alphabetical listing of information contained in this manual

**1 Before driving**

**1-1. Key information ..... 28**  
 Keys ..... 28

**1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk ..... 32**  
 Smart access system with push-button start ..... 32  
 Wireless remote control ..... 46  
 Doors..... 49  
 Trunk..... 54

**1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel) ..... 59**  
 Front seats ..... 59  
 Power rear seat (if equipped on 5-seat models) ..... 62  
 Power rear seat (4-seat models) ..... 65  
 Driving position memory ..... 69  
 Rear seat position memory ..... 73  
 Head restraints ..... 75  
 Seat belts ..... 77  
 Steering wheel ..... 84  
 Anti-glare inside rear view mirror ..... 86  
 Outside rear view mirrors ..... 87

**1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof ..... 89**  
 Power windows..... 89  
 Moon roof ..... 91

**1-5. Refueling ..... 94**  
 Opening the fuel tank cap..... 94

**1-6. Theft deterrent system..... 97**  
 Engine immobilizer system..... 97  
 Alarm..... 99  
 Theft prevention labels (U.S.A.) ..... 101

**1-7. Safety information..... 102**  
 Correct driving posture ..... 102  
 SRS airbags ..... 104  
 Front passenger occupant classification system ..... 118  
 Child restraint systems ..... 123  
 Installing child restraints ..... 128

**2 When driving**

**2-1. Driving procedures..... 138**  
 Driving the vehicle..... 138  
 Engine (ignition) switch ..... 146  
 Automatic Transmission ..... 150  
 Turn signal lever..... 155  
 Parking brake ..... 156  
 Brake Hold..... 159

- 2-2. Instrument cluster..... 161**
  - Gauges and meters ..... 161
  - Indicators and warning lights ... 164
  - Multi-information display..... 168
- 2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers ..... 172**
  - Headlight switch..... 172
  - Fog light switch ..... 175
  - Windshield wipers and washer..... 176
  - Headlight cleaner switch ..... 181
- 2-4. Using other driving systems... 182**
  - Cruise control ..... 182
  - Dynamic radar cruise control..... 185
  - Intuitive parking assist-sensor ..... 195
  - Electronically modulated air suspension ..... 204
  - Rear view monitor system ..... 206
  - Driving assist systems..... 209
  - Pre-Collision System..... 215
  - Pre-Collision System with camera sensor ..... 218
- 2-5. Driving information ..... 227**
  - Cargo and luggage ..... 227
  - Vehicle load limits..... 230
  - Winter driving tips ..... 232
  - Trailer towing..... 236
  - Dinghy towing ..... 237

### 3 Interior features

- 3-1. Using the touch screen ..... 240**
  - Touch screen (without navigation system)..... 240
  - Setting the touch screen ..... 243
- 3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger ..... 248**
  - Front air conditioning system (without touch screen)..... 248
  - Front air conditioning system (touch screen without rear air conditioning system) ..... 257
  - Front air conditioning system (touch screen with rear air conditioning system) ..... 266
  - Rear air conditioning system... 276
  - Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers ..... 283
  - Windshield wiper de-icer ..... 284
- 3-3. Using the audio system..... 286**
  - Audio system (without touch screen)..... 286
  - Using the radio..... 288
  - Using the CD player ..... 292
  - Playing back MP3 and WMA discs..... 298
  - Optimal use of the audio system ..... 304
  - Using the AUX adapter..... 306

Using the steering wheel audio switches .....	307	Playing the HDD audio (vehicles with navigation system).....	382
Audio system (touch screen without navigation system) .....	309	Playing a DVD video/audio ...	383
Using the radio.....	312	Playing a video CD.....	396
Using the CD player .....	317	DVD player and DVD video disc information .....	400
Playing MP3 and WMA discs.....	325	Using the video mode .....	409
Using the DVD player.....	332	Changing other setting.....	411
Playing DVD video/audio.....	335	<b>3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone).....</b>	<b>413</b>
Playing a video CD.....	348	Hands-free system (for cellular phone).....	413
DVD player and DVD video disc information .....	352	Using the Bluetooth® phone...	418
Optimal use of the audio/video system.....	356	Setting the hands-free system (for cellular phone).....	431
Using the AUX adapter .....	360	<b>3-6. Using the interior lights .....</b>	<b>457</b>
Using the rear seat audio controls.....	361	Interior lights list.....	457
Using the steering wheel audio switches .....	365	• Interior lights .....	458
<b>3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system .....</b>	<b>367</b>	• Personal lights .....	458
Rear seat entertainment system features .....	367	<b>3-7. Using the storage features ....</b>	<b>460</b>
Using the radio.....	376	List of storage features.....	460
Using the front DVD player.....	377	• Glove box .....	463
Using the rear DVD player .....	378	• Coin holder.....	464
Playing an audio CD/CD text .....	380	• Door pockets.....	465
Playing WMA (front DVD player only)/ MP3 discs .....	381	• Cup holders.....	466
		• Console box.....	468
		• Cool box .....	470
		• Auxiliary boxes.....	474

<b>3-8. Other interior features .....</b>	<b>476</b>
Sun visors.....	476
Vanity mirror .....	477
Clock.....	478
Outside temperature display .....	480
Ashtrays .....	481
Cigarette lighter .....	482
Power outlet.....	484
Heated steering wheel.....	487
Climate control seats/ seat heaters .....	489
Armrest (5-seat models).....	493
Rear seat relaxation system (4-seat models).....	494
Retractable table (4-seat models).....	496
Rear sunshade.....	498
Rear door sunshades.....	501
Trunk storage extension .....	504
Coat hooks .....	506
Floor mat.....	507
Trunk features.....	508
Garage door opener.....	511
Compass.....	517
Lexus Link System .....	521

## 4 Maintenance and care

<b>4-1. Maintenance and care .....</b>	<b>536</b>
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior.....	536
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior .....	539
<b>4-2. Maintenance .....</b>	<b>542</b>
Maintenance requirements .....	542
General maintenance.....	544
Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs .....	547
<b>4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance .....</b>	<b>548</b>
Do-it-yourself service precautions.....	548
Hood .....	551
Positioning a floor jack.....	552
Engine compartment.....	554
Tires .....	570
Tire inflation pressure.....	578
Wheels .....	582
Air conditioning filter.....	584
Electronic key battery .....	587
Checking and replacing fuses.....	589
Headlight aim .....	606
Light bulbs.....	608

**5 When trouble arises**

**5-1. Essential information..... 620**  
 If your vehicle needs to  
 be towed ..... 620  
 If you think something  
 is wrong ..... 626  
 Fuel pump shut off system ..... 627  
 Event data recorder ..... 628

**5-2. Steps to take in an  
 emergency..... 630**  
 If a warning light turns on  
 or a warning buzzer  
 sounds... ..... 630  
 If a warning message is  
 displayed..... 639  
 If you have a flat tire..... 642  
 If the engine will not start ..... 650  
 If the shift lever cannot be  
 shifted from “P” ..... 652  
 If the parking brake cannot  
 be released ..... 653  
 If you lose your keys ..... 655  
 If the electronic key does not  
 operate properly ..... 656  
 If the vehicle battery is  
 discharged ..... 660  
 If your vehicle overheats ..... 663  
 If the vehicle becomes stuck ... 666

**6 Vehicle specifications**

**6-1. Specifications ..... 668**  
 Maintenance data  
 (fuel, oil level, etc.)..... 668  
 Fuel information..... 678  
 Tire information..... 681

**6-2. Customization ..... 692**  
 Customizable features..... 692

**6-3. Initialization ..... 696**  
 Items to initialize ..... 696

**7 For owners**

Reporting safety defects  
 for U.S. owners..... 698  
 Seat belt instructions  
 for Canadian owners  
 (in French)..... 699

**Index**

**Abbreviation list..... 702**

**Alphabetical index ..... 704**

**What to do if... ..... 714**

1

2

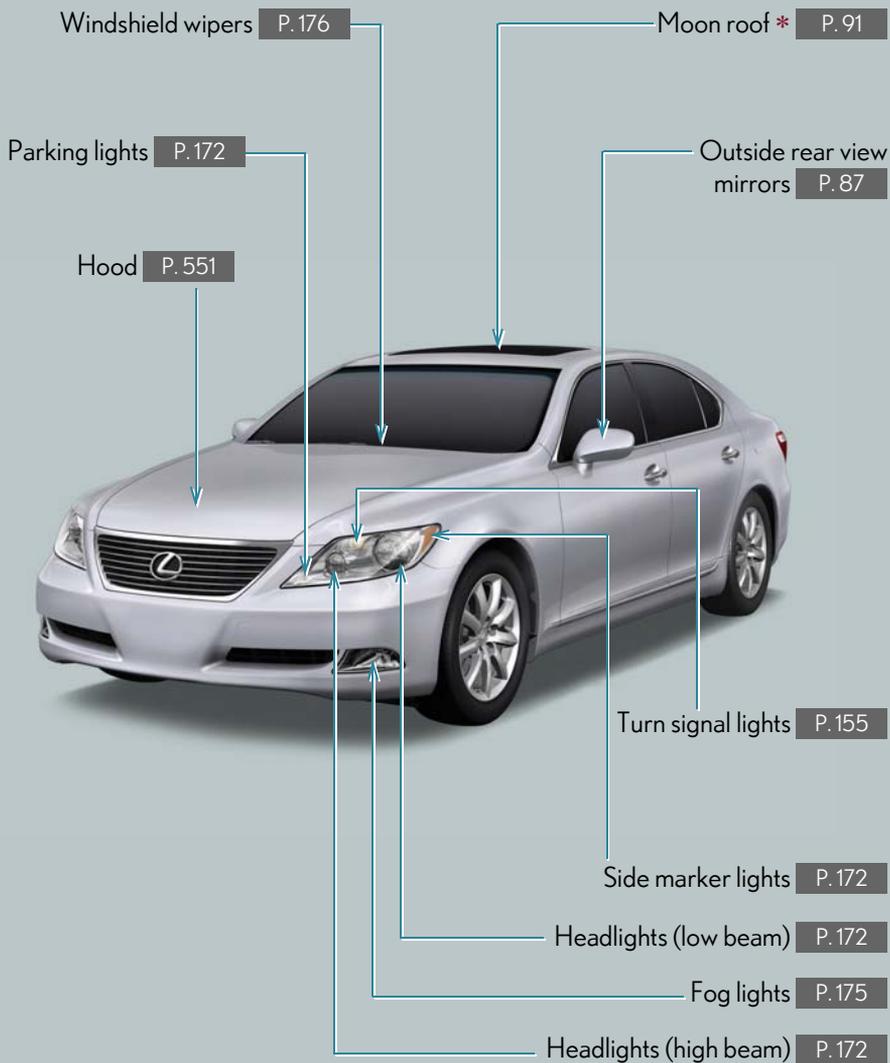
3

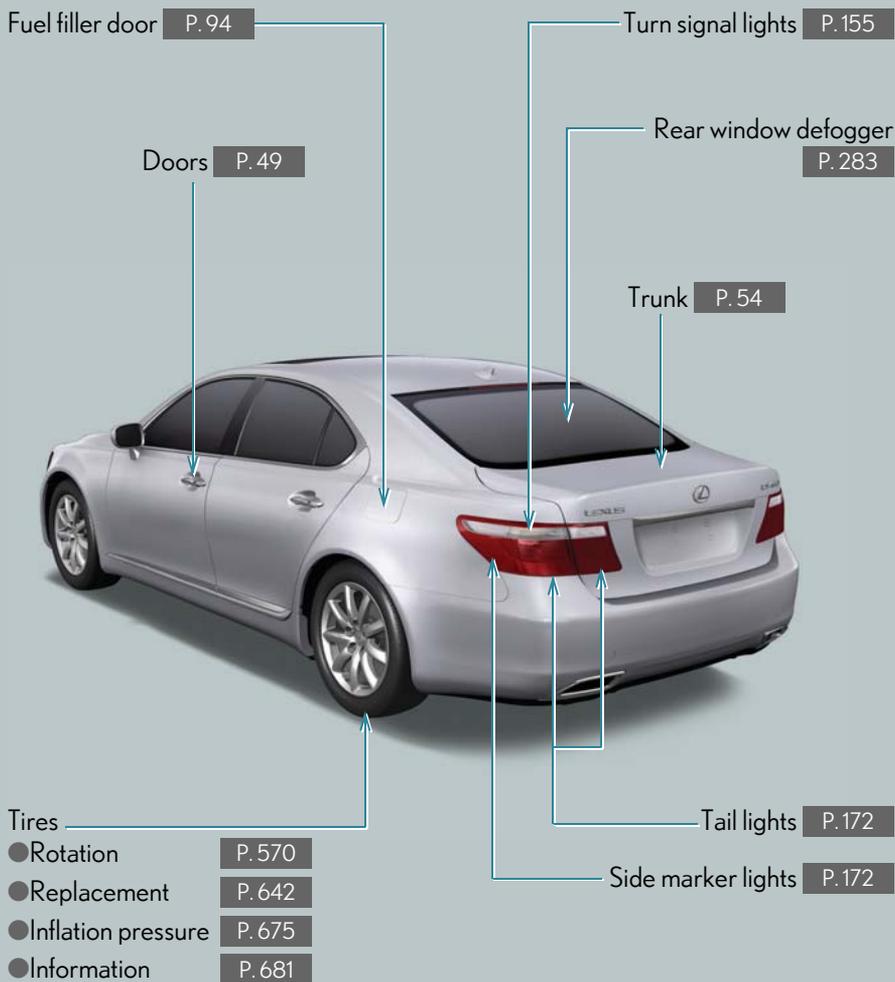
4

5

6

7

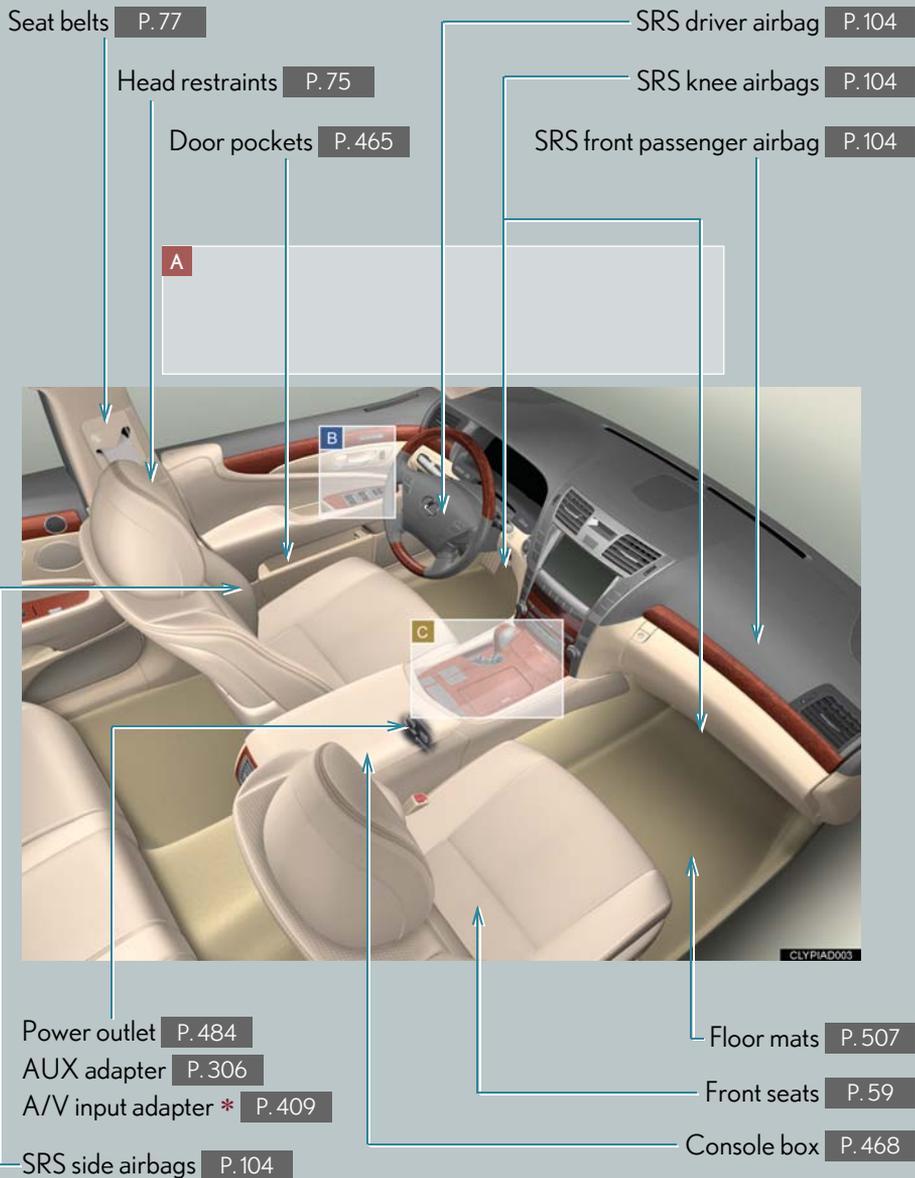




\*: If equipped

# Pictorial index

# Front interior



A

Anti-glare inside rear view mirror P. 86

Interior light P. 458

Personal lights P. 458

Moon roof switches \* P. 91

Garage door opener switches P. 511

Lexus link system \* P. 521



Compass \* P. 517

SRS curtain shield airbags P. 104

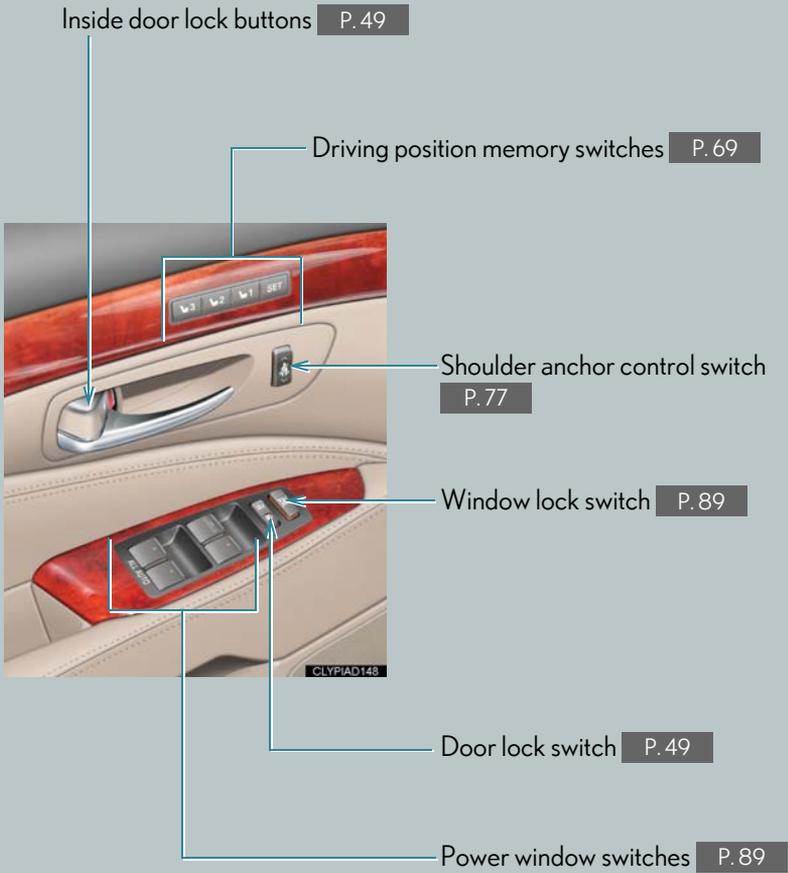
Sun visors P. 476

Vanity mirrors P. 477

Auxiliary boxes P. 474

\*: If equipped

B



C

Automatic transmission shift lever P.150

Cigarette lighter P.482

Ashtray P.481

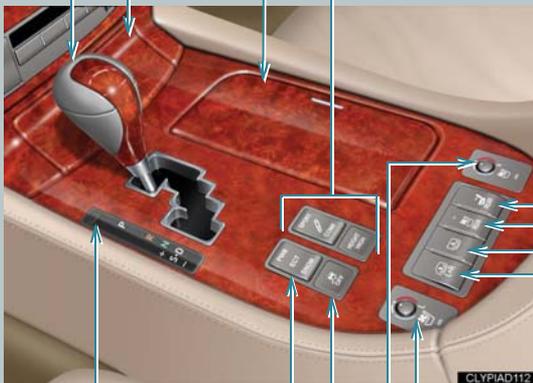
Cup holders P.466

Electronically modulated air suspension switches \* P.204

Rear seat return switch \* P.62,65

Rear seat heater switch \* P.489

Rear climate control seat switch \* P.489



Shift lock override button P.652

Rear sunshade switch \* P.498

Rear door sunshade switch \* P.501

Front climate control seat switches \* P.489

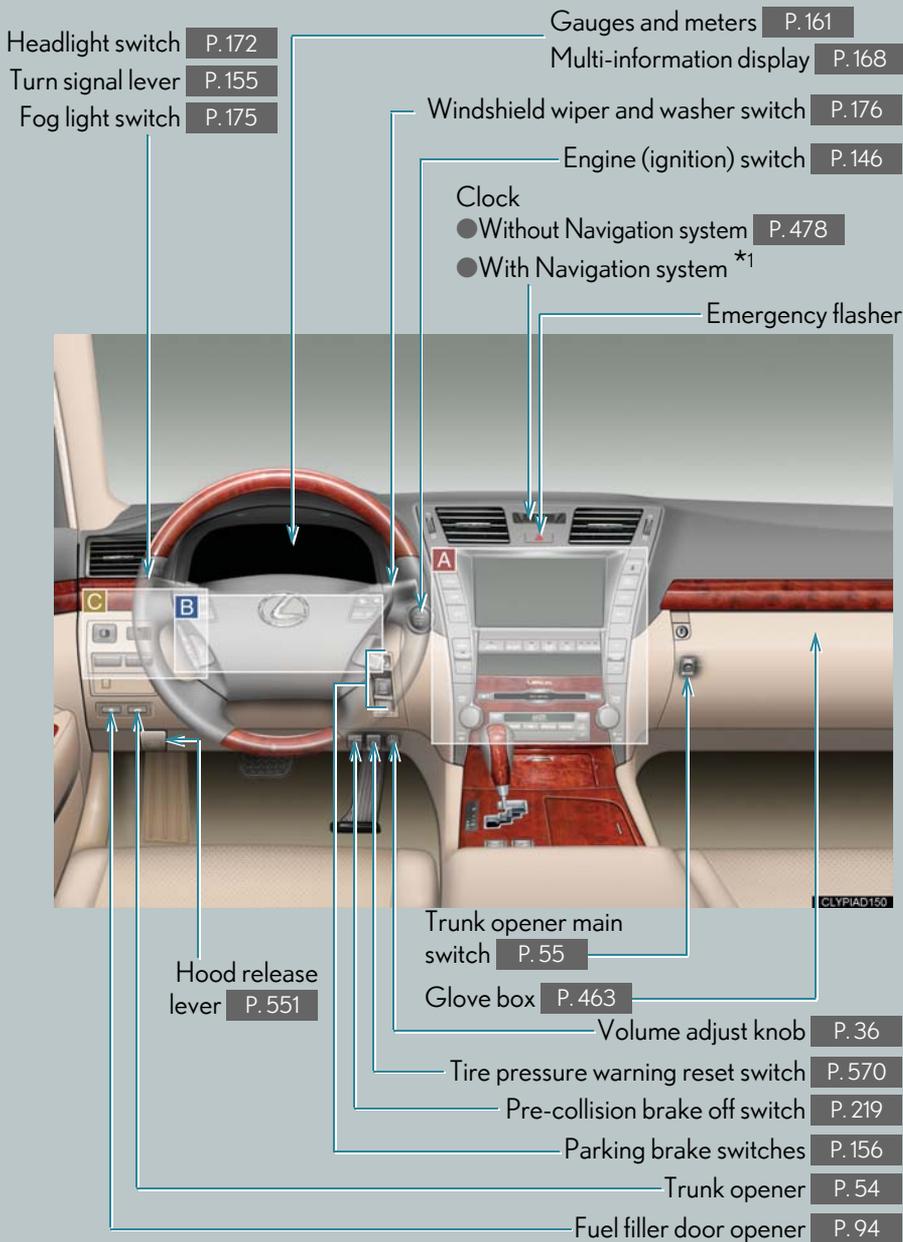
VSC off switch P.211

Driving pattern selector switch P.151

\*: If equipped

# Pictorial index

# Instrument panel



**A****▶ Without touch screen**

Air conditioning system P. 248

Audio system P. 286

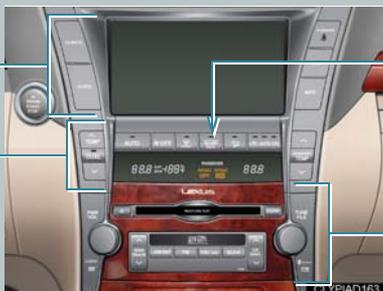


Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers P. 283

**▶ With touch screen (without navigation system)**

Touch screen P. 240

Air conditioning system P. 257, 266

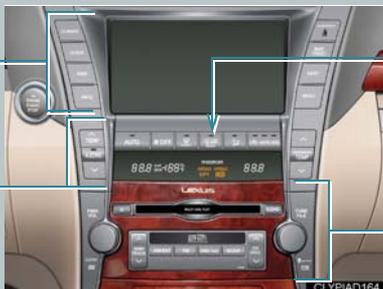


Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers P. 283

Audio system P. 309

**▶ With touch screen (with navigation system)**Touch screen \*1  
Navigation system \*1

Air conditioning system P. 257, 266



Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers P. 283

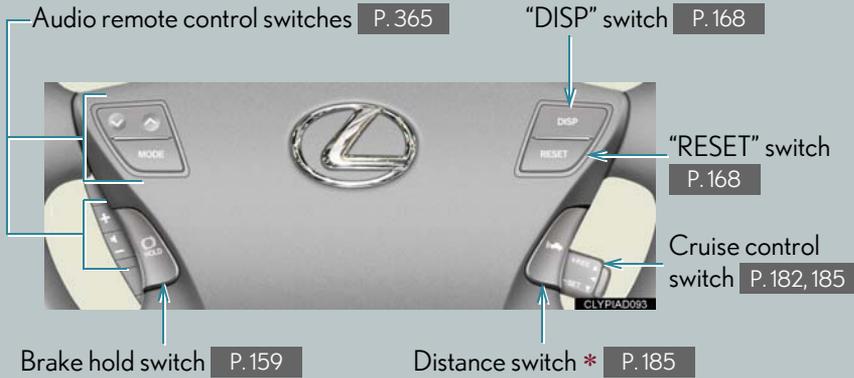
Audio system \*1

\*: If equipped

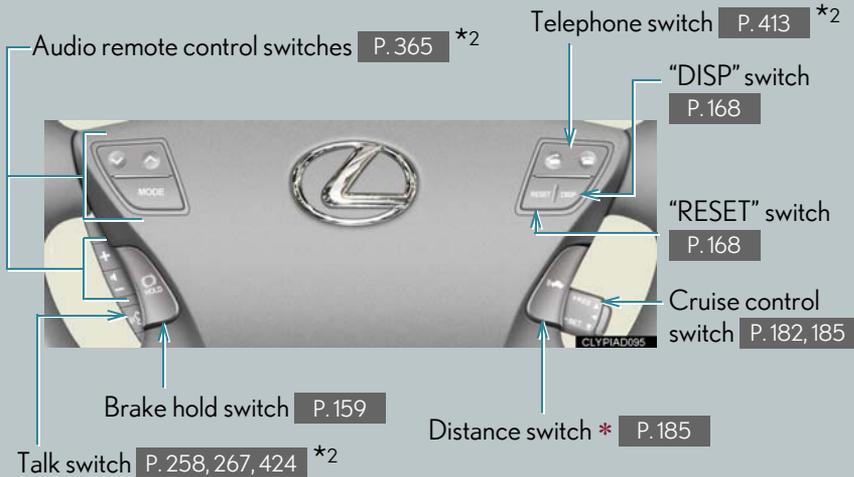
\*1: Refer to "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

## B

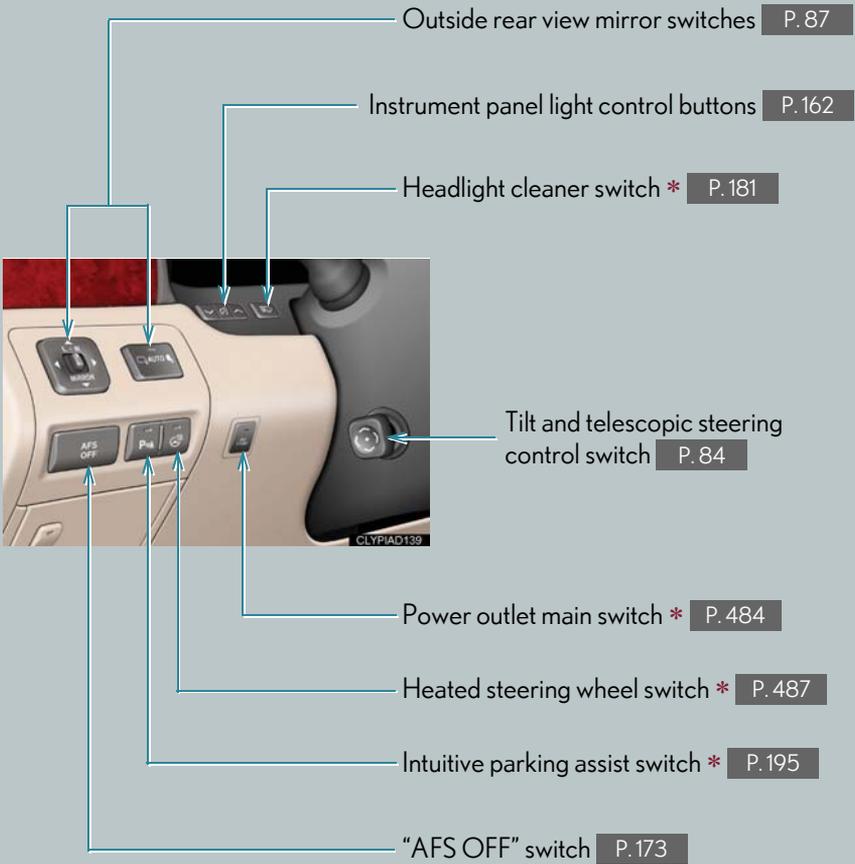
### ► Without touch screen



### ► With touch screen



C



\*: If equipped

\*2: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

# Pictorial index

## Rear interior (5-seat models)

Auxiliary boxes P. 474

Cool box \* P. 470

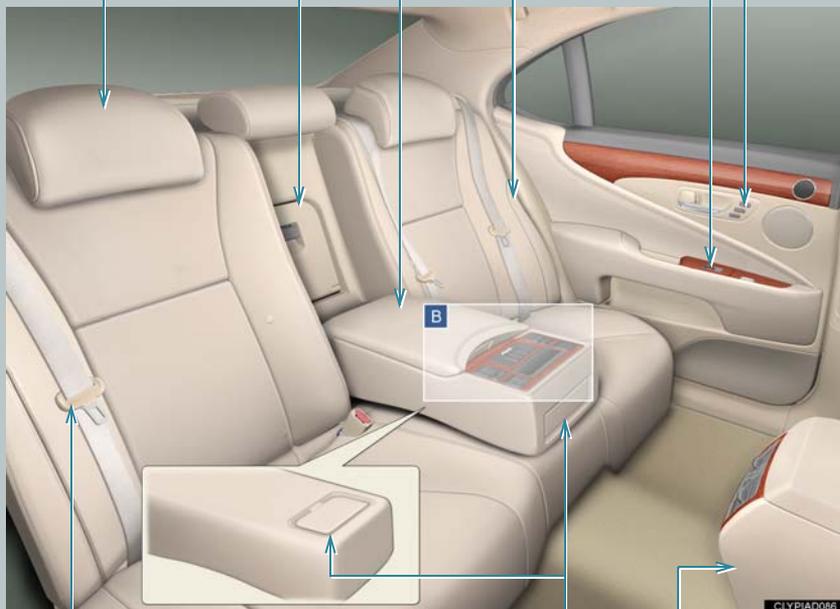
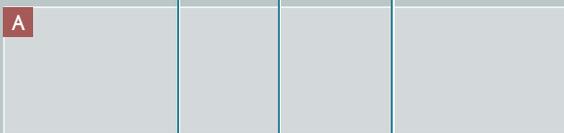
Trunk storage extension \*  
P. 504

Head restraints P. 75

Seat position memory  
switches \* P. 73

Power window  
switches P. 89

SRS side airbags \*  
P. 104



Seat belts P. 77

Cup holders P. 466

Cigarette lighter P. 482

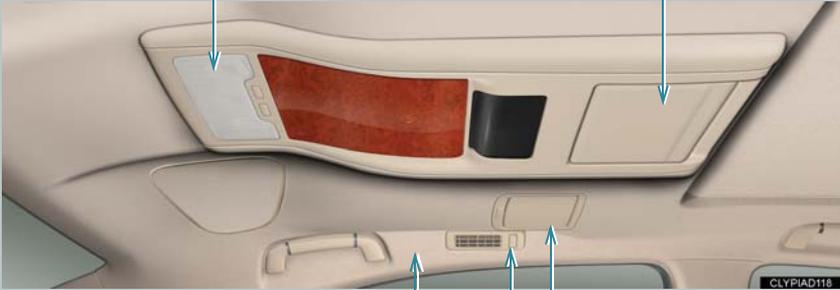
CLYPIAD086

**A**

Interior light P. 458

Personal lights P. 458

Rear seat entertainment system \* P. 367



SRS curtain shield airbags P. 104

Vanity mirrors P. 477

Coat hooks P. 506

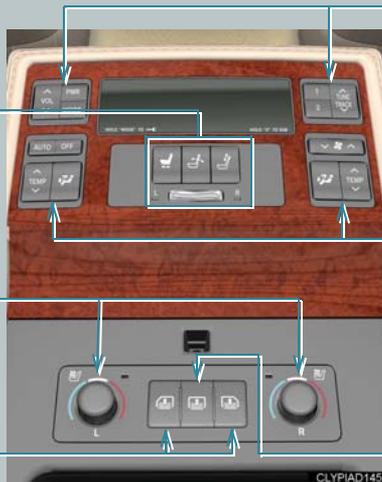
**B**

Power seat switches \* P. 62

Seat heater switches \* P. 489

Rear climate control seat switches \* P. 489

Rear door sunshade switches \* P. 501



Rear audio switches \* P. 361

Rear air conditioning switches \* P. 276

Rear sunshade switch \* P. 498

\*: If equipped

# Pictorial index

## Rear interior (4-seat models)

DVD player \* P. 378

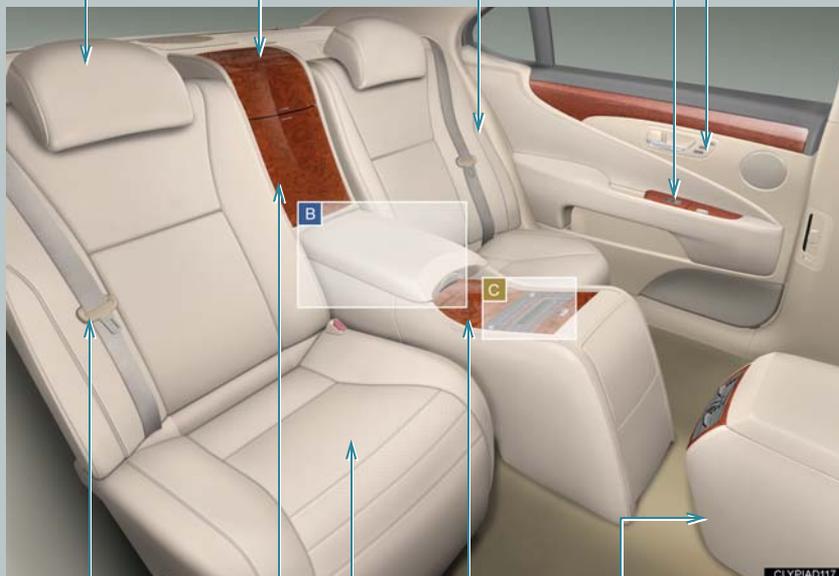
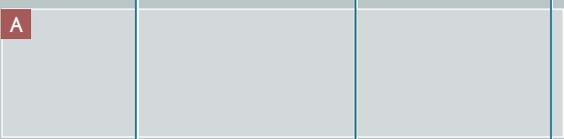
Headphone jacks \* P. 371

Seat position memory switches P. 73

Power window switches P. 89

Head restraints P. 75

SRS side airbags P. 104



Seat belts P. 77

Power outlet (115 VAC) \* P. 484

Cup holders P. 466

SRS seat cushion airbag P. 104

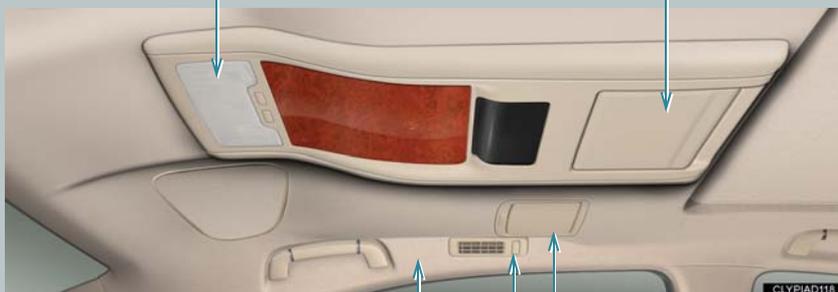
Auxiliary boxes P. 474

A

Interior lights P. 458

Personal lights P. 458

Rear seat entertainment system P. 367



SRS curtain shield  
airbags P. 104

Vanity mirrors P. 477

Coat hooks P. 506

\*: If equipped

B

A/V input adapter P. 409

Cigarette lighters \* P. 482

Power outlet \* P. 484



Rear seat entertainment system controller P. 367

Rear seat relaxation system controller P. 494

Cool box P. 470

C

Retractable table lock release lever P. 496

Rear sunshade switch P. 498

Rear door sunshade switches P. 501

Rear air conditioning switches P. 276

Rear air conditioning switches P. 276



Rear audio switches P. 361

Rear climate control seat switches P. 489

Power seat switches P. 65

\*: If equipped

## For your information

### Main Owner's Manual

Please note that this manual applies to all models and explains all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

All specifications provided in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Lexus policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Depending on specifications, the vehicle shown in the illustration may differ from your vehicle in terms of color and equipment.

### Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Lexus

A wide variety of non-genuine spare parts and accessories for Lexus vehicles are currently available in the market. You should know that Toyota does not warrant these products and is not responsible for their performance, repair, or replacement, or for any damage they may cause to, or adverse effect they may have on, your Lexus vehicle.

This vehicle should not be modified with non-genuine Lexus products. Modification with non-genuine Lexus products could affect its performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the modification may not be covered under warranty.

### Installation of a mobile two-way radio system

As the installation of a mobile two-way radio system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as the multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, cruise control system, anti-lock brake system, SRS airbag system and seat belt pretensioner system, be sure to check with your Lexus dealer for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation.

## Scrapping of your Lexus

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Lexus contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by a qualified service shop or by your Lexus dealer before you scrap your vehicle.

## Perchlorate Material

Special handling may apply, See [www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate).

Your vehicle has components that may contain perchlorate. These components may include airbag, seat belt pretensioners, and wireless remote control batteries.

### CAUTION

#### ■ General precautions while driving

**Driving under the influence:** Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol or drugs that have impaired your ability to operate your vehicle. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgment and reduce coordination, which could lead to an accident that will hurt or kill you, your occupants or others.

**Defensive driving:** Always drive defensively. Anticipate mistakes that other drivers or pedestrians might make and be ready to avoid accidents.

**Driver distraction:** Always give your full attention to driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting controls, talking on a cellular phone or reading can result in a collision with resulting death or serious injury to you, your occupants or others.

#### ■ General precaution regarding children's safety

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the cigarette lighter, the windows, the moon roof, or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

## Symbols used throughout this manual

### Cautions & Notices

#### CAUTION

This is a warning against something which, if ignored, may cause injury to people. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to reduce the risk of injury to yourself and others.

#### NOTICE

This is a warning against something which, if ignored, may cause damage to the vehicle or its equipment. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to avoid or reduce the risk of damage to your Lexus and its equipment.

### Safety symbol



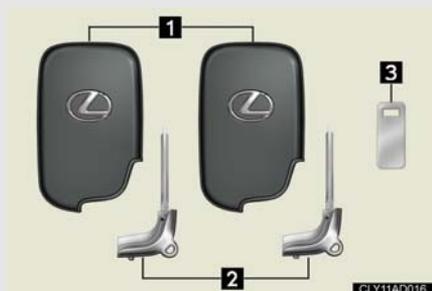
Throughout this manual, you will also see the symbol of a circle with a slash through it. This means “Do not”, “Do not do this”, or “Do not let this happen”.

<b>1-1. Key information</b> .....	<b>28</b>	<b>1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof</b> .....	<b>89</b>
Keys .....	28	Power windows .....	89
<b>1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk</b> .....	<b>32</b>	Moon roof .....	91
Smart access system with push-button start .....	32	<b>1-5. Refueling</b> .....	<b>94</b>
Wireless remote control .....	46	Opening the fuel tank cap .....	94
Doors .....	49	<b>1-6. Theft deterrent system</b> .....	<b>97</b>
Trunk .....	54	Engine immobilizer system .....	97
<b>1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)</b> .....	<b>59</b>	Alarm .....	99
Front seats .....	59	Theft prevention labels (U.S.A.) .....	101
Power rear seat (if equipped on 5-seat models) .....	62	<b>1-7. Safety information</b> .....	<b>102</b>
Power rear seat (4-seat models) .....	65	Correct driving posture .....	102
Driving position memory .....	69	SRS airbags .....	104
Rear seat position memory .....	73	Front passenger occupant classification system .....	118
Head restraints .....	75	Child restraint systems .....	123
Seat belts .....	77	Installing child restraints .....	128
Steering wheel .....	84		
Anti-glare inside rear view mirror .....	86		
Outside rear view mirrors .....	87		

## 1-1. Key information

# Keys

The following keys are provided with the vehicle.



### 1 Electronic keys

- Operating the smart access system with push-button start (→P. 32)
- Operating the wireless remote control function (→P. 46)

### 2 Mechanical keys

### 3 Key number plate

## ■ Card key (if equipped)



### 1 Electronic key

Operating the smart access system with push-button start (→P. 32)

### 2 Mechanical key

The card key comes with an information card that includes instructions for use. Lexus recommends that you carry the information card with the card key.

## Using the mechanical key



Take out the mechanical key.

The mechanical key can only be inserted in one direction, as the key only has grooves on one side. If the key cannot be inserted in a lock cylinder, turn it over and re-attempt to insert it.

After using the mechanical key, store it in the electronic key. Carry the mechanical key together with the electronic key. If the electronic key battery depletes or the entry function does not operate properly, you will need the mechanical key. (→P. 656)

1

Before driving

### ■ Card key

- The mechanical key that is stored inside the card key should be used only if a problem arises, such as when the key does not operate properly.
- If it is difficult to take out the mechanical key, push down the lock release button using a pen tip etc. If it is difficult to pull it out, use a coin etc.



- To store the mechanical key in the card key, insert it inside while pressing the lock release button.



- If the battery cover is not installed and the battery falls out or if the battery was removed because the key got wet, reinstall the battery with the positive terminal facing the Lexus emblem.

- The card key is not waterproof.

### ■ When required to leave the vehicle's key with a parking attendant

Turn the trunk opener main switch off and lock the glove box and the trunk storage extension as circumstances demand. (→P. 55, 463, 504)

Remove the mechanical key for your own use and provide the attendant with the electronic key only.

### ■ Key number plate

Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle. In the event that a mechanical key is lost, a new key can be made at your Lexus dealer using the key number plate. (→P. 655)

### ⚠ NOTICE

#### ■ To prevent key damage

Observe the following.

- Do not drop the keys, subject them to strong shocks or bend them.
- Do not expose the keys to high temperatures for a long period of time.
- Do not get the keys wet or wash them in an ultrasonic washer etc.
- Do not attach metallic or magnetic materials to the keys or place the keys close to such materials.
- Do not disassemble the keys.
- Do not place the keys near objects that produce magnetic fields, such as TVs, audio systems, glass top ranges, or medical electrical equipment, such as low-frequency therapy equipment.

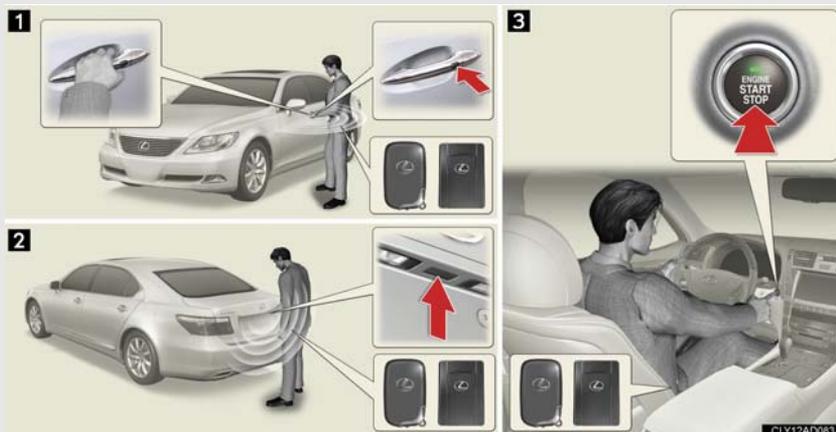
 NOTICE**■ Precautions for handling the card keys**

- Do not apply excess force when inserting the mechanical key to the card key. Doing so may damage the card key.
- If the battery or card key terminals get wet, the battery may corrode. If the key is dropped into water, or if drinking water etc. is spilled on the key, immediately remove the battery cover and wipe the battery and terminals. (To remove the battery cover, lightly grasp it and pull.) If the battery is corroded, have your Lexus dealer replace the battery.
- Do not crush the battery cover or use a screwdriver to remove the battery cover. Forcibly removing the battery cover may bend or damage the key.
- If the battery cover is frequently removed, the battery cover may become loose.
- When installing the battery, make sure to check the direction of the battery. Installing the battery in the wrong direction may cause the battery to deplete rapidly.
- The surface of the card key may be damaged, or its coating may peel off in the following situations.
  - The card key is carried together with hard objects, such as coins or keys.
  - The card key is scraped with a sharp object, such as a tip of mechanical pencil.
  - The surface of the card key is wiped with thinners or benzene.

## 1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk Smart access system with push-button start

The following operations can be performed simply by carrying the electronic key (including the card key) on your person, for example in your pocket.

(The driver should always carry the electronic key.)



**1** Locks and unlocks the doors (→P. 33)

**2** Opens the trunk (→P. 33)

**3** Starts and stops the engine (→P. 146)

## Locking and unlocking the doors



Press the lock button to lock the door.

Pressing and holding the button closes the windows.

The moon roof will also close. (if equipped)



Grip the handle to unlock the door.

Make sure to touch the sensor on the back of the handle.

The door cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the door is locked.

## Opening the trunk

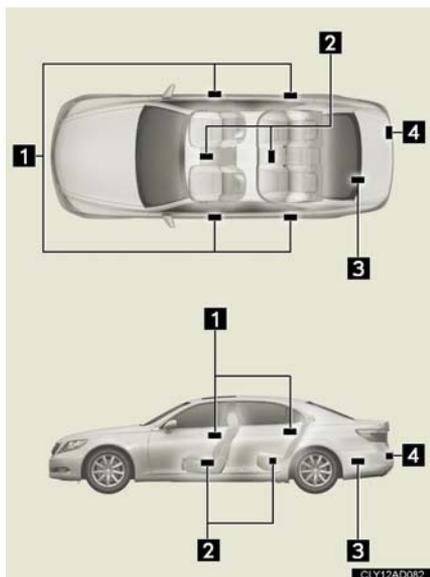


Press the button.

If the vehicle is equipped with a power trunk opener and closer, the trunk lid automatically opens fully.

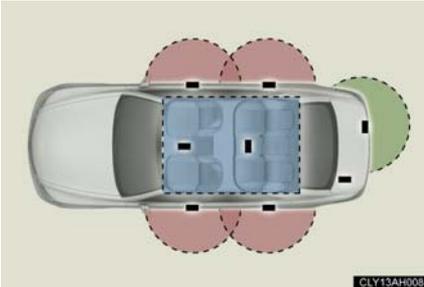
## Antenna location and effective range

### ■ Antenna location



- 1 Antennas outside cabin
- 2 Antennas inside cabin
- 3 Antenna inside trunk
- 4 Antenna outside trunk

■ Effective range (areas within which the electronic key is detected)



- When locking or unlocking the doors

The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 2.3 ft. (70 cm) of an outside door handle. (Only the doors detecting the key can be operated.)

- When unlocking the trunk

The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 2.3 ft. (70 cm) of the trunk release button.

- When starting the engine or changing “ENGINE START STOP” switch modes

The system can be operated when the electronic key is inside the vehicle.

### ■ Operation signals

Doors: A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)

Trunk: A buzzer sounds to indicate that the trunk has been unlocked.

Windows and moon roof: A buzzer sounds to indicate that the windows and moon roof are operating.

### ■ Door lock buzzer

If an attempt to lock the doors is made when a door is not fully closed, a buzzer sounds continuously. Fully close the door to stop the buzzer, and lock the vehicle once more.

### ■ Adjusting the volume of the buzzer

The operation signal buzzer and door lock buzzer can be set to the desired volume.



**1** Increases the volume.

**2** Decreases the volume.

The buzzer can be turned off by turning the knob fully clockwise.

### ■ Conditions affecting operation

The smart access system with push-button start uses weak radio waves. In the following situations, the communication between the electronic key and the vehicle may be affected, preventing the smart access system with push-button start, wireless remote control and engine immobilizer system from operating properly: (Ways of coping: →P. 656)

- When the electronic key battery is depleted
- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication devices
- When the electronic key is in contact with, or is covered by the following metallic objects
  - Cards to which aluminum foil is attached
  - Cigarette boxes that have aluminum foil inside
  - Metallic wallets or bags
  - Coins
  - Hand warmers made of metal
  - Media such as CDs and DVDs
- When multiple electronic keys are in the vicinity
- When other wireless keys (that emit radio waves) are being used nearby
- When carrying the electronic key together with the following devices that emit radio waves
  - Another vehicle's electronic key or a wireless key that emits radio waves
  - Personal computers or personal digital assistants (PDAs)
  - Digital audio players
  - Portable game systems
- If window tint with a metallic content or metallic objects are attached to the rear window

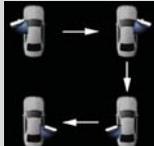
### ■ Switching the door unlock function

It is possible to set which doors the entry function unlocks using the wireless remote control.

**STEP 1** Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF.

**STEP 2** When the indicator light on the key surface is not on, press and hold  ,  , or  for about 5 seconds while pressing and holding  .

The setting changes each time an operation is performed, as shown below. (When changing the setting continuously, release the buttons, wait for at least 5 seconds, and repeat step 2.)

Multi-information display	Unlocking doors	Beep
	Hold the driver's door handle to unlock only the driver's door.	Exterior: Beeps 3 times Interior: Rings once
	Hold a passenger's door handle to unlock all the doors.	
	Hold the door handle to unlock the front and rear doors on your side.	Exterior: Beeps 4 times Interior: Rings once
	Hold the door handle to unlock the door.	Exterior: Beeps once Interior: Rings once
	Hold a door handle to unlock all doors.	Exterior: Beeps twice Interior: Rings once

**STEP 3** Unlock the doors using the wireless remote control and open one of the doors.

If a door is not opened within 60 seconds after  is pressed, the doors will be locked again and the alarm will automatically be set. In case that the alarm is triggered, immediately stop the alarm. (→P. 99)

### ■ Battery-saving function

In the following circumstances, the entry function is disabled in order to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging and electronic key battery from depleting.

- When the entry function has not been used for a month or more
- When the electronic key has been left within approximately 6 ft. (2 m) of the vehicle for 10 minutes or more

The system will resume operation when

- The vehicle is locked using the door handle lock switch when carrying the electronic key on your person.
- The vehicle is locked/unlocked using the wireless remote control function. (→P. 46)
- The vehicle is locked/unlocked using the mechanical key. (→P. 656)

### ■ Electronic key battery depletion

- The standard battery life is 1 to 2 years. (The card key battery life is about a year and a half.)
- The battery becomes depleted even if the electronic key is not used because the key always transmits radio waves. If the smart access system with push-button start or the wireless remote control does not operate, or the detection area becomes smaller, the battery may be depleted. Replace the battery when necessary. (→ P. 587)
- To avoid serious deterioration, do not leave the electronic key within 3 ft. (1 m) of the following electrical appliances that produce a magnetic field.
  - TVs
  - Personal computers
  - Cellular phones, cordless phones and battery chargers
  - Recharging cellular phones or cordless phones
  - Glass top ranges
  - Table lamps

### ■ To operate the system properly

Make sure to carry the electronic key when operating the system. Do not get the electronic key too close to the vehicle when operating the system from the outside of the vehicle.

Depending on the position and holding condition of the electronic key, the key may not be detected correctly and the system may not operate properly. (The alarm may go off accidentally, or the door lock prevention may not function.)

### ■ Note for the entry function

● Even when the electronic key is within the effective range (detection areas), the system may not operate properly in the following cases:

- The electronic key is too close to the window or outside door handle, near the ground, or in a high place when the doors are locked or unlocked.
- The electronic key is near the ground or in a high place, or too close to the rear bumper center when the trunk is unlocked.
- The electronic key is on the instrument panel, rear package tray or floor, or in the glove box when the engine is started or "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes are changed.

● As long as the electronic key is within the effective range, the doors may be locked or unlocked by anyone.

● Even if the electronic key is not inside the vehicle, it may be possible to start the engine if the electronic key is near the window.

● The doors may unlock if a large amount of water splashes on the door handle, such as in the rain or in a car wash when the electronic key is within the effective range. (The door will automatically be locked after approximately 60 seconds if the doors are not opened and closed.)

● Gripping the door handle when wearing a glove may not unlock the door.

● If the wireless remote control is used to lock the doors when the electronic key is near the vehicle, there is a possibility that the door may not be unlocked by the entry function. (Use the wireless remote control to unlock the doors.)

● A sudden approach to the effective range or door handle may prevent the doors from being unlocked. In this case, return the door handle to the original position and check that the doors unlock before pulling the door handle again.

### ■ When the vehicle is not driven for extended periods

To prevent theft of the vehicle, do not leave the electronic key within 6 ft. (2 m) of the vehicle.

### ■ Security feature

If a door is not opened within approximately 60 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked, the anti-theft system automatically locks the vehicle again.

### ■ Alarms and warning indicators

A combination of exterior and interior alarms as well as warnings displayed on the multi-information display are used to prevent theft of the vehicle and unforeseeable accidents resulting from erroneous operation. Perform the appropriate correction procedure described in the following table:

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Exterior alarm sounds once for 2 seconds.	An attempt was made to lock the doors using the entry function while the electronic key was still inside the passenger compartment.	Retrieve the electronic key from the passenger compartment and lock the doors again.
	The trunk was closed with the electronic key inside and all doors were locked.	Retrieve the electronic key from the trunk and close the trunk lid.
Exterior alarm sounds once for 60 seconds.	An attempt was made to exit the vehicle and lock the doors while carrying the electronic key without first turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF.	Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF and lock the doors again.
Exterior alarm sounds once for 10 seconds.	An attempt was made to lock the vehicle while a door was open.	Close all of the doors and lock the doors again.

## 1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Interior alarm pings continuously.	The “ENGINE START STOP” switch was turned to ACCESSORY mode while the driver’s door was open (or the driver’s door was opened while the “ENGINE START STOP” switch was in ACCESSORY mode).	Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF and close the driver’s door.
	The “ENGINE START STOP” switch was turned OFF while the driver’s door was open.	Close the driver’s door.
Interior alarm sounds continuously. <sup>*1</sup>	When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON or ACCESSORY mode, an attempt was made to open the door and exit the vehicle, and the shift lever was not in “P”.	Shift the shift lever to “P” and turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF.
Interior and exterior alarms sound continuously. <sup>*1</sup>	When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON or ACCESSORY mode, the driver’s door was closed after the key was carried outside the vehicle, and the shift lever was not in “P”.	Shift the shift lever to “P”, turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF and close the driver’s door again.

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Interior alarm pings once. *1	The electronic key has a low battery.	Replace the electronic key battery.
	An attempt was made to start the engine without the electronic key being present, or the electronic key was not functioning normally.	Start the engine with the electronic key present. *2
Interior alarm pings once and exterior alarm sounds 3 times. *1	The driver's door was closed after the key was carried outside the vehicle, and the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was not turned OFF.	Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF and close the driver's door again.
	An occupant carried the electronic key outside the vehicle and closed the door while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was not OFF.	Bring the electronic key back into the vehicle.

\*1: A warning message will be shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster.

\*2: If the engine does not start when the electronic key is inside the vehicle, the electronic key battery may be depleted or there may be difficulties receiving the signal from the key. (→P. 39)

■ **If the smart access system with push-button start does not operate properly**

- Locking and unlocking the doors and trunk: Use the mechanical key. (→P. 656)

- Starting the engine: →P. 658

■ **When the electronic key battery is fully depleted**

→P. 587

### ■ Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer

Settings (e.g. smart access system with push-button start) can be deactivated.  
(Customizable features →P. 692)

### ■ Certification for the smart access system with push-button start

► For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID: NI4TMLF-4

#### NOTE:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

#### FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

► For vehicles sold in Canada

#### NOTE:

Operation is subject to the following two conditions; (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

 **CAUTION****■ Caution regarding interference with electronic devices**

- People with implanted pacemakers or cardiac defibrillators should keep away from the smart access system antennas. (→P. 37) The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices. If necessary, the entry function can be disabled. Ask your Lexus dealer for details, such as frequency of radio waves and timing of emitting the radio waves. Then, consult your doctor to see if you should disable the entry function.
- User of any electrical medical device other than implanted pacemakers and implanted cardiac defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves.  
Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

Ask your Lexus dealer for disabling the entry function.

## 1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

# Wireless remote control

The wireless remote control can be used to lock and unlock the vehicle and the trunk from outside the vehicle.



- 1 Locks all doors
- 2 Unlocks all doors
- 3 Opens the windows (press and hold)  
The moon roof will also open. (if equipped)
- 4 Unlocks the trunk (press and hold)  
Vehicles equipped with a power trunk opener and closer: Opens the trunk (press and hold)
- 5 Sounds alarm (press and hold) (→P. 99)

### ■ 2-step unlocking function

When you push , the driver's door is unlocked. Pushing the button again within 3 seconds unlocks the other doors.

### ■ Operation signals

Doors: A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)

Trunk: A buzzer sounds to indicate that the trunk has been unlocked.

Windows and moon roof: A buzzer sounds to indicate that the windows and moon roof are opening.

### ■ Door lock buzzer

If an attempt to lock the doors is made when a door is not fully closed, a buzzer sounds continuously. Fully close the door to stop the buzzer, and lock the vehicle once more.

**■ Adjusting the volume of the buzzer**

The operation signal buzzer and door lock buzzer can be set to the desired volume.  
(→P. 36)

**■ Alarm**

Using the wireless remote control to lock the door will set the alarm system.  
(→P. 99)

**■ Electronic key battery depletion**

→P. 39

**■ Security feature**

→P. 41

**■ If the wireless remote control does not operate properly**

● Locking and unlocking the doors and trunk: Use the mechanical key.  
(→P. 656)

● Starting the engine: →P. 658

**■ When the electronic key battery is fully depleted**

→P. 587

**■ Conditions affecting operation**

→P. 37

**■ Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer**

Settings (e.g. trunk unlocking function) can be changed. (Customizable features  
→P. 692)

### ■ Certification for wireless remote control

- For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

#### NOTE:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

#### NOTICE:

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio-TV technician for help.

#### FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

- For vehicles sold in Canada

#### NOTE:

Operation is subject to the following two conditions; (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

## 1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

# Doors

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked using the entry function, wireless remote control or door lock switch.

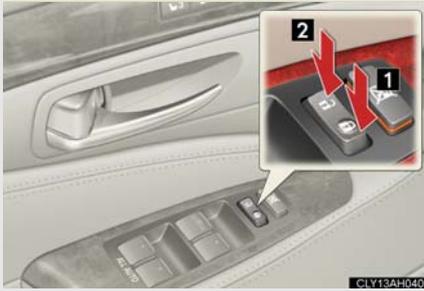
### ■ Entry function

→P. 33

### ■ Wireless remote control

→P. 46

### ■ Door lock switch



- 1 Locks all doors
- 2 Unlocks all doors

### ■ Inside lock button



- 1 Locks the door
- 2 Unlocks the door

The front doors can be opened by pulling the inside handle even if the lock buttons are in the lock position.

### Locking the front doors from the outside without a key

The door cannot be locked if the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or the electronic key is left inside the vehicle.

The key may not be detected correctly and the door may be locked.

### Rear door child-protector lock



The door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the locks are set.

These locks can be set to prevent children from opening the rear doors. Push down on each rear door switch to lock both rear doors.

### Automatic door locking and unlocking systems

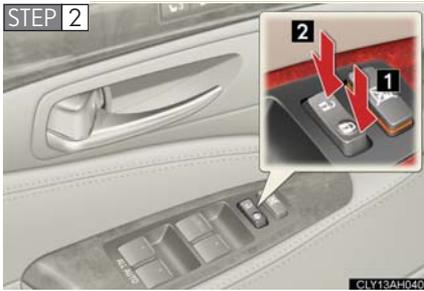
The following functions can be set or cancelled:

Function	Operation
Shift position linked door locking function	Shifting the shift lever out of “P” locks all doors.
Shift position linked door unlocking function	Shifting the shift lever to “P” unlocks all doors.
Speed linked door locking function	All doors are locked when the vehicle speed is approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) or higher.
Driver's door linked door unlocking function	All doors are unlocked when the driver's door is opened within 10 seconds after turning the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF.

### ■ Setting and canceling the functions

To switch between setting and canceling, follow the procedure below.

**STEP 1** Close all the doors and switch the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to IGNITION ON mode. (Perform the step 2 within 20 seconds.)



Shift the shift lever to “P” or “N”, and press and hold the driver's door lock switch (**1** or **2**) for approximately 5 seconds and then release.

The shift lever and switch positions corresponding to the desired function to be set or canceled are shown as follows:

Function	Shift lever position	Switch position
Shift position linked door locking function	P	<b>1</b>
Shift position linked door unlocking function		<b>2</b>
Speed linked door locking function	N	<b>1</b>
Driver's door linked door unlocking function		<b>2</b>

When the setting or canceling operation is complete, all doors are locked and then unlocked.

### ■ Door closer (if equipped)

In the event that a door is left slightly open, the door closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position.

- The door closer will operate regardless of “ENGINE START STOP” switch mode.
- The door closer will not function if the door has been closed while pulling the inside or outside door handle.
- The door can be opened by pulling the inside or outside door handle, even when the door closer is operating (except when the lock button is in the lock position or the child-protector lock is set).
- The motor sound may be heard for several seconds after the door closer closes the door. This does not indicate a malfunction.

### ■ Impact detection door lock release system

In the event that the vehicle is subject to a strong impact, all the doors are unlocked. Depending on the force of the impact or the type of accident, however, the system may not operate.

### ■ Using the mechanical key

The doors can also be locked and unlocked with the mechanical key. (→P. 656)

### ■ Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer

Settings (e.g. unlocking function using a key) can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 692)

 **CAUTION****■ To prevent an accident**

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle.

Failing to do so may result in a door opening and an occupant falling out, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Always use a seat belt.
- Always lock all doors.
- Ensure that all doors are properly closed.
- Front doors: Do not pull on the inside door handle while the vehicle is in motion. The door will open even if it is locked.
- Set the rear door child protector locks when children are seated in the rear seat.

**■ Door closer**

In the event that a door is left slightly open, the door closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position.

If the child-protector lock is set, the door closer will not stop during operation even if an attempt is made to open the door from inside the vehicle. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else in the door. Failure to do so may result in serious injury.

 **NOTICE****■ To prevent door closer malfunction (vehicles with door closer)**

Do not frequently repeat opening and closing of doors, or apply excessive force to a door while the door closer is operating.

## 1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

### Trunk

The trunk can be opened using the trunk opener, entry function or wireless remote control.

#### ■ Trunk opener



Press the opener switch.

If the vehicle is equipped with a power trunk opener and closer, the trunk lid automatically opens fully.

#### ■ Entry function

→P. 33

#### ■ Wireless remote control

→P. 46

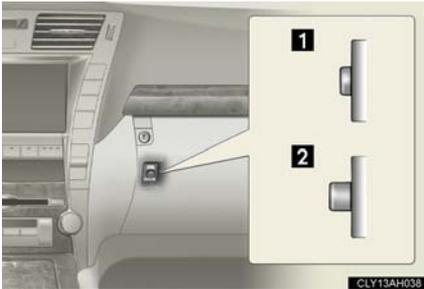
### Trunk closer switch (vehicles with power trunk opener and closer)



Pressing the switch closes the trunk lid automatically. (A buzzer sounds.)

Pressing the switch while the trunk lid is closing opens the trunk lid again.

## Canceling the trunk opener feature



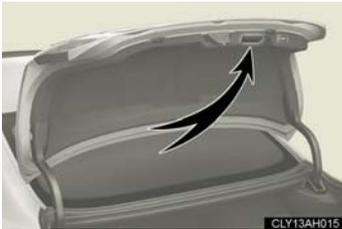
Turn the main switch in the glove box off to disable the trunk opener.

- 1 On
- 2 Off

The trunk lid cannot be opened even with the wireless remote control or the entry function.

1  
Before driving

### Trunk handle



Use the trunk handle when closing the trunk.

### Trunk easy closer

In the event that the trunk lid is left slightly open, the trunk easy closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position.

### Function to prevent the trunk being locked with the electronic key inside (when all the doors are locked)

Closing the trunk lid with the electronic key left inside the trunk will sound an alarm. In this case, the trunk lid can be opened by pressing the button on the trunk lid.

### Overload protection function (vehicles with a power trunk opener and closer only)

The trunk lid will not operate when excessive load is present on the top of the trunk lid.

## 1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

### ■ Fall-down protection function (vehicles with a power trunk opener and closer only)

While the trunk lid is opening automatically, applying excessive force to it will stop the opening operation to prevent the trunk lid from rapidly falling down.

### ■ Jam protection function (vehicles with a power trunk opener and closer only)

While the trunk lid is closing automatically, the trunk lid will stop closing and open if something gets caught.

### ■ Internal trunk release lever



The trunk lid can be opened by pulling down on the glow-in-the-dark lever located on the inside of trunk lid.

The lever will continue to glow for some time after the trunk lid is closed.

### ■ Using the mechanical key

The trunk can be also opened using the mechanical key. (→P. 656)

### ■ Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer

Setting of power trunk opener and closer function can be deactivated. (Customizable features →P. 692)

## ⚠ CAUTION

### ■ Caution while driving

Keep the trunk lid closed.

This not only keeps personal belongings from being thrown out, but also prevents exhaust gases from entering the vehicle.

### ■ When children are in the vehicle

- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle as they may lock themselves in the vehicle or trunk, which could cause the child to overheat or suffocate, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not allow a child to open or close the trunk lid. Doing so may cause the trunk lid to operate unexpectedly and part of the child's body may become caught.

 **CAUTION****■ Trunk easy closer**

When the trunk lid is not completely closed, the trunk easy closer will automatically close it. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else in the trunk lid. Failure to do so may result in serious injury.

**■ Power trunk opener and closer**

- When the power trunk opener and closer is operating, check the safety of the surrounding area and take extra care to prevent your fingers etc. from being caught in the trunk lid. Also pay attention to your personal belongings, such as bags or ties.
- Do not attach any accessories other than Lexus genuine parts to the trunk lid. Doing so may prevent the power trunk opener and closer from operating automatically, resulting in a malfunction. It may also cause the trunk lid to fall down after it has fully opened, resulting in serious injury.
- Remove any heavy loads, such as snow, on the trunk lid before opening it. Failure to do so may cause the trunk lid to fall down due to the load after it opens.
- If any abnormality is detected while the power trunk opener and closer is operating, such as when the trunk lid contacts an obstacle, the automatic operation may stop and change to manual operation. Before operating the power trunk opener and closer, make sure that there are no obstacles.

**■ Jam protection function (vehicles with a power trunk opener and closer only)**

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the trunk lid fully closes.

### NOTICE

#### ■ To prevent trunk easy closer malfunction

Do not apply force to the trunk lid while the trunk easy closer is operating.

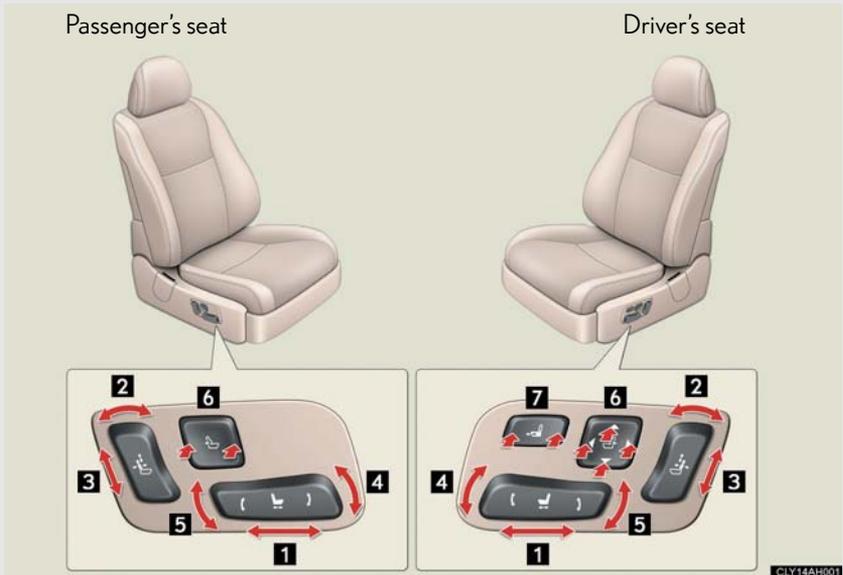
#### ■ To prevent damage to the power trunk opener and closer

- Make sure that there is no luggage or snow on the trunk lid before operating the power trunk opener and closer. In addition, make sure that there is no ice between the trunk lid and frame that prevents movement of the trunk lid. Operating the power trunk opener and closer when excessive load is present on the trunk lid may cause a malfunction.

- Do not apply excessive force to the trunk lid while the power trunk opener and closer is operating.

## 1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

### Front seats



#### 1 Seat position switch

The height of the driver's head restraint is automatically adjusted simultaneously with the seat position adjustment operation.

#### 2 Seatback angle switch

#### 3 Head restraint height adjustment switch (→P. 75)

#### 4 Seat cushion (front) angle switch

#### 5 Vertical height adjustment switch

#### 6 Lumbar support switch

Driver's seat: 4 way

Front passenger's seat: 2 way

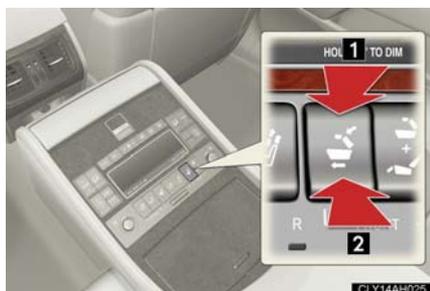
#### 7 Seat cushion length adjustment switch

### Seat operation switches on the side of the front passenger's seat



- Seatback angle switch
- 1 Forward
- 2 Backward
- Seat position switch
- 3 Forward
- 4 Backward

### Operating the front passenger's seat from the rear seat (4-seat models)



- 1 Moves the front passenger's seat forward  
The signal beeps when seat operation stops at the forward limit.
- 2 Moves the front passenger's seat backward  
The seatback will return to the neutral position.

#### ■ Operating the front passenger's seat from the rear seat (4-seat models)

The front passenger's seat can be operated when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode. However, in the following situations, the front passenger's seat does not move even when the switch is operated.

- The front passenger's seat belt is in use.
- The front passenger's door is open. (The front seat will not move forward.)

#### ■ Seat cushion automatic length adjustment (driver's seat only)

If the front of the cushion gets too close to the area around the instrument panel when the seat position is being adjusted, the seat cushion will automatically retract.

### ■ When the retractable table is in use (4-seat models)

The seat operation will stop if a front seat is going to contact the retractable table while the seat is being moved backward. (A warning message will be shown on the multi-information display.)

#### CAUTION

##### ■ Seat adjustment

To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary.

If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

##### ■ Operating the front passenger's seat from the driver's seat or rear seat

Do not operate the front passenger's seat when a passenger is seated in it. In addition, do not let anyone sit down in the front passenger's seat while the seat is being operated. The front passenger may catch their legs between the instrument panel and seat, resulting in injury.

#### NOTICE

##### ■ Operating the front passenger's seat from the driver's seat or rear seat

Before operating the front passenger's seat, make sure that there is no luggage or any other objects on the seat or in the footwell that could prevent its operation.

Failure to do so may result in excess force being applied, causing damage to the seat and/or the luggage.

## 1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

### Power rear seat (if equipped on 5-seat models)



#### 1 Seat selection switch

The indicator light for the seat that can be operated comes on.

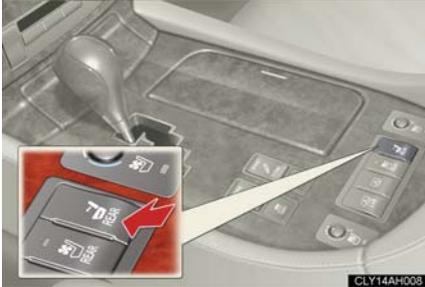
#### 2 Seat position adjustment switch

#### 3 Seatback upper angle adjustment switch

#### 4 Head restraint height adjustment switch (→P. 75)

The seat return function linked to the door opening operation allows the seat to automatically return to the neutral position for easier access to and from the vehicle.

## Returning the rear seat from the front seats



The seat will return to the neutral position while the button is pressed and held.

1

Before driving

### ■ Cancelling the seat return function



Pressing the “C” button will disable the seat return function. When disabled, the seat will not return when the door is opened. The indicator light comes on when the seat return function is disabled. Pressing the button again will enable the seat return function.

Performing either of the following cancels the seat returning operation:

- Press the “SET”, “M” or “C” button.
- Press any of the seat adjustment switches.

### ■ Operating the seat return function after the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF

The seat will automatically return to the neutral position if the door is opened within 45 seconds after the engine is turned off.

### CAUTION

#### ■ **Seat adjustment**

To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary.

If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

#### ■ **When adjusting the seat position**

Keep sufficient footwell space to prevent your feet from being caught by the front seat.

#### ■ **When returning the rear seats to the neutral position**

Wait until passengers have gotten off the rear seat before operating the switch to avoid injuring the passengers.

## Power rear seat (4-seat models)



The right-hand rear seat is a relaxation seat, which is equipped with a seatback angle adjustment function and an ottoman.

**1** Seat selection switch

The indicator light for the seat that can be operated comes on.

**2** Seat position adjustment switch

**3** Seatback upper angle adjustment switch

**4** Head restraint height adjustment switch (→P. 75)

**5** Seatback angle adjustment switch

**6** Ottoman angle adjustment switch

**7** Front passenger's seat control switch (→P. 59)

**8** Relaxation mode switch

The seat return function linked to the door opening operation allows the seat to automatically return to the neutral position for easier access to and from the vehicle.

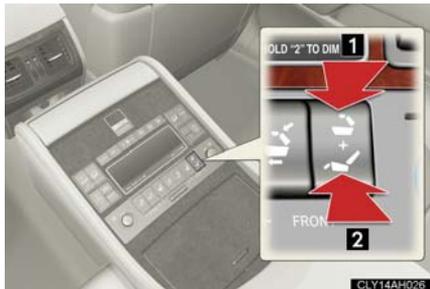
### Returning the rear seat from the front seats



The seat will return to the neutral position while the button is pressed and held.

### Relaxation mode operation

Relaxation mode can be entered by operating a switch. The front passenger seat will move forward and then the seatback of the relaxation seat will recline and the ottoman will simultaneously rise.



1 Enters relaxation mode

2 Returns to the neutral position.

The signal beeps when either operation is completed.

### ■ Relaxation mode

Relaxation mode can be entered when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode. However, in the following situations, relaxation mode cannot be entered even when the switch is operated:

- The front passenger’s seat belt is in use.
- The front passenger’s door is open. (The front seat will not move forward.)

### ■ Canceling the seat return function



Pressing the “C” button will disable the seat return function. When disabled, the seat will not return when the door is opened.

The indicator light comes on when the seat return function is disabled.

Pressing the button again will enable the seat return function.

Performing either of the following cancels the seat returning operation:

- Press the “SET”, “M” or “C” button.
- Press any of the seat adjustment switches.

### ■ Operation after the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF

- The rear seat can be returned to the neutral position as long as the relaxation mode switch is operated within 45 seconds after the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned OFF.
- The seat return function is available for 45 seconds after the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned OFF.

### ■ Seat operation automatic stop function

If the rear seat and front passenger seat are going to come in contact with each other while either of them is being operated, the signal will beep and seat operation will stop.

### CAUTION

#### ■ Seat adjustment

To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary.

If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

#### ■ When adjusting the seat position and ottoman angle

Keep sufficient footwell space to prevent your feet from being caught by the front seat.

#### ■ When returning the rear seats to the neutral position

Wait until passengers have gotten off the rear seat before operating the switch to avoid injuring the passengers.

#### ■ Using the ottoman

● Do not sit on the ottoman.

If someone sits on the ottoman, the seat belt cannot be fitted properly, and they may be thrown from the seat resulting in death or serious injury in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

● When getting in or out of the vehicle, retract the ottoman. If the ottoman is not retracted, it may cause a fall, resulting in injury.

### NOTICE

#### ■ To prevent an ottoman malfunction

● Do not place any objects in the rear seat footwell that could prevent the operation of the ottoman.

● Do not place heavy luggage on the ottoman.

### Driving position memory

Your preferred driving position (the position of the driver's seat and steering wheel, angle of the outside rear view mirrors, and height of seat belt) can be memorized and recalled with the touch of a button. It is also possible to set this function to activate automatically when the doors are unlocked. Three different driving positions can be entered into memory.

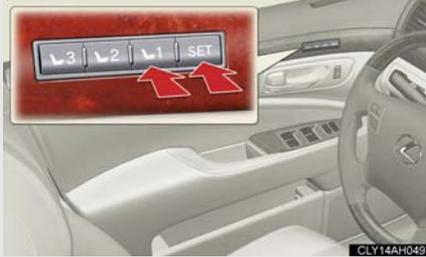
#### ■ Entering a position to memory

Check that the shift lever is set in "P".

**STEP 1** Switch to IGNITION ON mode.

**STEP 2** Adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel, outside rear view mirrors and seat belt height to the desired positions.

**STEP 3**



While pressing the "SET" button, press button "1", "2" or "3" until the signal beeps.

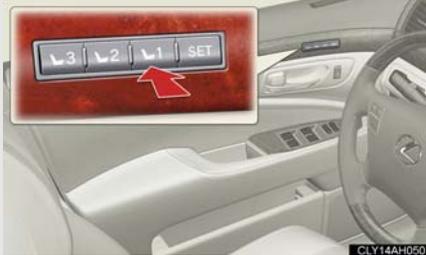
If the selected button has already been preset, the previously recorded position will be overwritten.

#### ■ Recalling the memorized position

Check that the shift lever is set in "P".

**STEP 1** Switch to IGNITION ON mode.

**STEP 2**



Press button "1", "2" or "3" to recall the memorized position.

## Linking driving position memory with door unlock operation

Record your driving position to button “1”, “2” or “3” before performing the following.

### ► Using the wireless remote control

**STEP 1** Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF and close the driver's door.



While pressing the desired button (“1”, “2” or “3”), push  on the wireless remote control until the signal beeps.

The driving position is recalled when the driver's door is unlocked using the entry function or wireless remote control and the driver's door is opened.

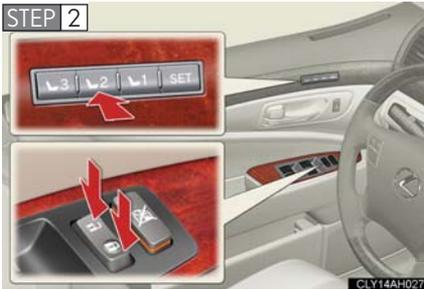
**STEP 3** Open one of the doors.

If a door is not opened within 60 seconds after  is pressed, the doors will be locked again and the alarm will automatically be set. In case that the alarm is triggered, immediately stop the alarm. (→P. 99)

### ► Using the door lock switch

Carry only the key (including the card key) to which you want to link the driving position. If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be linked properly.

**STEP 1** Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF and close the driver's door.



While pressing the desired button (“1”, “2” or “3”), press the lock or unlock side on the door lock switch (either the driver or passenger side) until the signal beeps.

The driving position is recalled when the driver's door is unlocked using the entry function or wireless remote control and the driver's door is opened.

### ■ Canceling the linked door unlock operation

**STEP 1** Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF and close the driver's door.

**STEP 2** Using the wireless remote control: While pushing the “SET” button, press **1** on the wireless remote control until the signal beeps.

Using the door lock switch: While pressing the “SET” button, press the lock or unlock side on the door lock switch until the signal beeps.

### ■ Operating the driving position memory after turning the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF

Memorized positions (except the steering wheel position) can be recalled by operating button “1”, “2” or “3” within 30 seconds after the driver's door has been opened even after the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned OFF.

### ■ Stopping seat position operation part-way through

Perform any of the following operations:

- Press the “SET” button.
- Press button “1”, “2” or “3”.
- Adjust the seat using the switches (only cancels seat position recall).

### ■ When the retractable table is in use (4-seat models)

The seat operation will stop if a front seat is going to contact the retractable table while the seat is being moved backward. (A warning message will be shown on the multi-information display.)

#### CAUTION

#### ■ Seat adjustment caution

Take care during seat adjustment so that the seat does not strike the rear passenger or squeeze your body against the steering wheel.

## 1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

### Rear seat position memory (if equipped)

The rear seat position can be memorized and recalled with the touch of a button.

#### ■ Entering a position to memory

**STEP 1** Switch to IGNITION ON mode.

**STEP 2** Adjust the rear seat to the desired position.

**STEP 3**



Press the “SET” button until the signal beeps.

If the preset is being used, the previously recorded seat position will be overwritten.

#### ■ Recalling the memorized position



Press the “M” button until the signal beeps.

Relaxation seat: The memorized position will only be recalled if the ottoman is in a position higher than the memorized position. It will not move in an upward direction.

### ■ Seat return function linked to the door opening operation

When the door is opened, the rear seat will automatically return to the neutral position. This function is available for 45 seconds after the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned OFF.

### ■ Operating the rear seat position memory after turning the engine OFF

The seat will automatically return to the neutral position as long as the door is opened within 45 seconds after the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned OFF.

### ■ Canceling the seat position recall or return function



Pressing the “C” button will disable the seat position recall or seat return function. The indicator light comes on when the function is disabled. Pressing the button again will enable the seat position recall or seat return function.

Performing either of the following cancels the seat returning operation:

- Press the “SET”, “M” or “C” button.
- Press any of the seat adjustment switches.

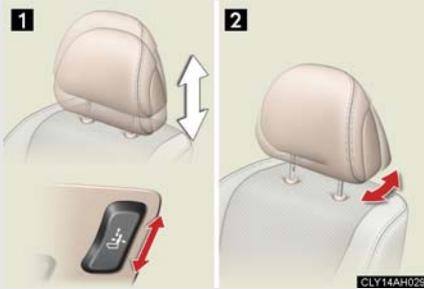
### ⚠ CAUTION

#### ■ Seat adjustment caution

Take care during seat adjustment so that the rear passengers do not strike the front seats.

# Head restraints

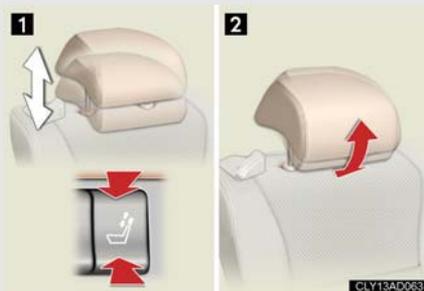
## ■ Front seats



- 1 Vertical adjustment  
→P. 59
- 2 Horizontal adjustment

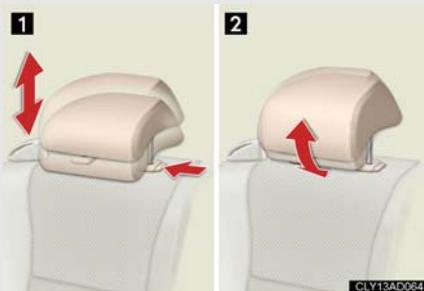
## ■ Outside rear seats

### ▶ Power type



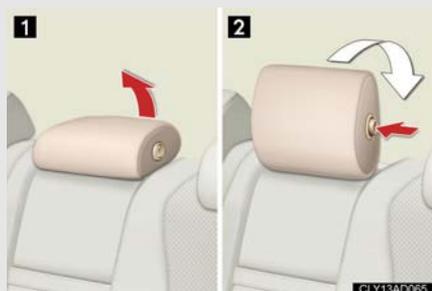
- 1 Vertical adjustment  
5-seat models: →P. 62  
4-seat models: →P. 65
- 2 Horizontal adjustment

### ▶ Manual type



- 1 Vertical adjustment  
Push and hold the lock release button when lowering.
- 2 Horizontal adjustment

### ■ Rear center seat (5-seat models)



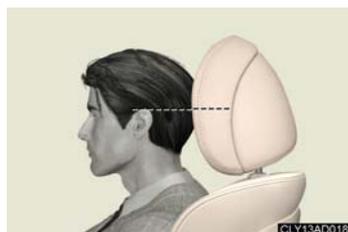
1 To use

2 To fold

### ■ Removing the head restraints

For removal and installation of the head restraint, contact your Lexus dealer.

### ■ Adjusting the height of the head restraints (except rear center seat)



Make sure that the head restraints are adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of your ears.

### ⚠ CAUTION

#### ■ Head restraint precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the head restraints. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Use the head restraints designed for each respective seat.
- Adjust the head restraints to the correct position at all times.
- Do not drive with the head restraints removed.

## Seat belts

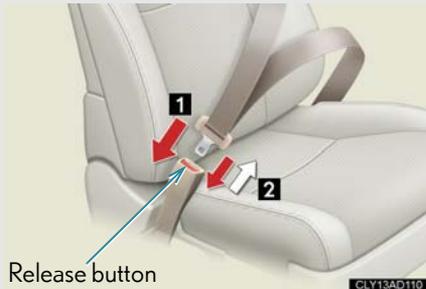
Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.

### ■ Correct use of the seat belts



- Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.
- Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.
- Adjust the position of the seatback. Sit up straight and well back in the seat.
- Do not twist the seat belt.

### ■ Fastening and releasing the seat belt



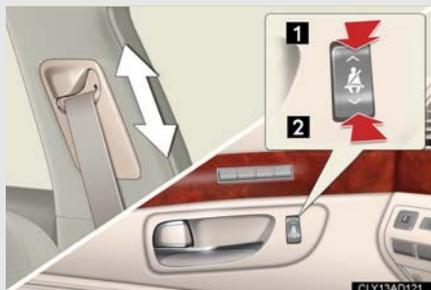
#### 1 Fastening the belt

Push the tab into the buckle until a clicking sound is heard.

#### 2 Releasing the belt

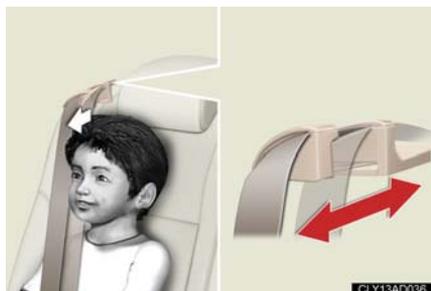
Press the release button.  
If the seat belt cannot be pulled out of the retractor, firmly pull the belt and release it.

### ■ Adjusting the seat belt shoulder anchor height (front seats)



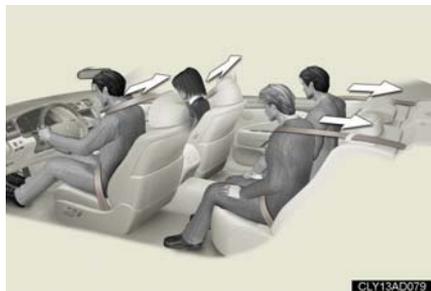
- 1 Up
- 2 Down

### Seat belt comfort guide (outside rear seats)



If the shoulder belt sits close to a person's neck, slide the seat belt comfort guide forward.

### Seat belt pretensioners (front and outside rear seats)



The pretensioner helps the seat belt to quickly restrain the occupant by retracting the seat belt when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal collision.

The pretensioner may not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a side impact or a rear impact.

### Pre-collision seat belts (front seats of vehicles with pre-collision system)

When the pre-collision sensor detects an obstacle and determines that a collision is unavoidable, the seat belts lessen collision injury by retracting the slack in the front seat belts before the collision, thus restraining the driver and passenger at an earlier stage.

The seat belts will also operate in the event of sudden braking.  
(→P. 215, 218)

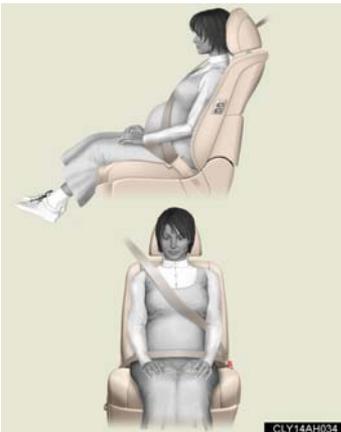
#### ■ Emergency locking retractor (ELR)

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It may also lock if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, easy motion will allow the belt to extend so that you can move around fully.

#### ■ Automatic locking retractor (ALR)

When a passenger's shoulder belt is completely extended and then retracted even slightly, the belt is locked in that position and cannot be extended. This feature is used to hold the child restraint system (CRS) firmly. To free the belt again, fully retract the belt and then pull the belt out once more. (→P. 128)

#### ■ Pregnant women



Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 77)

Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants. Extend the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and position the belt across the chest. Avoid belt contact over the round part of the abdominal area.

If the seat belt is not worn properly, not only the pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer death or serious injury as a result of sudden braking or a collision.

### ■ People suffering illness

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way.

### ■ Child seat belt usage

The seat belts of your vehicle were principally designed for persons of adult size.

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 123)
- When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, follow the instructions on P. 77 regarding seat belt usage.

### ■ Automatic adjustment of the seat belt shoulder anchor height

A desired seat belt shoulder anchor height can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory. (→P. 69)

### ■ Replacing the belt after the pretensioner has been activated

If the vehicle is involved in multiple collisions, the pretensioner will activate for the first collision, but will not activate for the second or subsequent collisions.

### ■ Seat belt extender



If your seat belts cannot be fastened securely because they are not long enough, a personalized seat belt extender is available from your Lexus dealer free of charge.

 **CAUTION**

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or an accident.

Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

**■ Wearing a seat belt**

- Ensure that all passengers wear a seat belt.
- Always wear a seat belt properly.
- Each seat belt should be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at once, including children.
- Lexus recommends that children be seated in the rear seat and always use a seat belt and/or an appropriate child restraint system.
- To achieve a proper seating position, do not recline the seat more than necessary. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and well back in the seats.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and snug across your hips.

**■ Seat belt pretensioners**

- Do not place anything, such as a cushion, on the front passenger's seat. Doing so will disperse the passenger's weight, which prevents the sensor from detecting the passenger's weight properly. As a result, the seat belt pretensioner for the front passenger's seat may not activate in the event of a collision.
- If the pretensioner has activated, the seat belt becomes locked: it cannot be further extended, nor will it return to the stowed position. The seat belt cannot be used again and must be replaced at your Lexus dealer.

### CAUTION

#### ■ Seat belt damage and wear

- Do not damage the seat belts by allowing the belt, plate, or buckle to be jammed in the door.
- Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Do not use a damaged seat belt until it is replaced. Damaged seat belts cannot protect an occupant from death or serious injury.
- Ensure that the belt and tab are locked and the belt is not twisted. If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.
- Replace the seat assembly, including the belts, if your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if there is no obvious damage.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. Have any necessary repairs carried out by your Lexus dealer. Inappropriate handling of the pretensioner may prevent it from operating properly resulting in death or serious injury.

#### ■ Precaution for pre-collision seat belts

Do not rely on the pre-collision system to avoid accidents. Always pay attention to the surrounding conditions, and drive safely and responsibly.

#### ■ Using a seat belt extender

- Do not wear the seat belt extender if you can fasten the seat belt without the extender.
- Do not use the seat belt extender when installing a child restraint system because the belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, increasing the risk of death or injury in the event of a collision.
- The personalized extender may not be safe on another vehicle, when used by another person, or at a different seating position other than the one originally intended.

 NOTICE

■ **When using a seat belt extender**

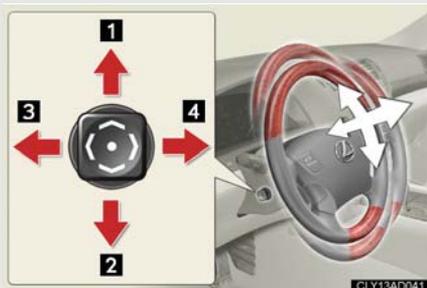
When releasing the seat belt, press on the buckle release button on the extender, not on the seat belt.

This helps prevent damage to the vehicle interior and the extender itself.

## 1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

### Steering wheel

The steering wheel can be adjusted to a comfortable position while the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.



- 1 Up
- 2 Down
- 3 Away from the driver
- 4 Toward the driver

### Auto tilt away



When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned OFF, the steering wheel returns to its stowed position by moving up and away to enable easier driver entry and exit.

Switching to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode will return the steering wheel to the original position.

### ■ Automatic adjustment of the steering position

A desired steering position can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory. (→P. 69)

 CAUTION

■ **Caution while driving**

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

1

Before driving

## 1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

### Anti-glare inside rear view mirror

In automatic mode, sensors are used to detect the headlights of vehicles behind and automatically reduce the reflected light.

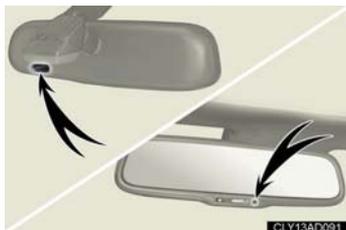


Turns automatic mode on/ off

The indicator comes on when automatic mode is turned on.

The mirror will revert to automatic mode each time the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

#### ■ To prevent sensor error



To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

##### ■ Caution while driving

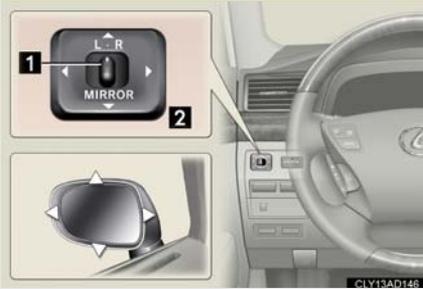
Do not adjust the position of the mirror while driving.

Doing so may lead to mishandling of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

## 1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

### Outside rear view mirrors

Mirror angle can be adjusted using the switch when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

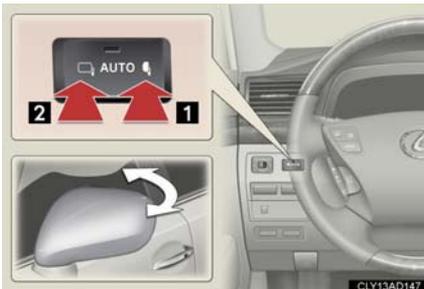


- 1 Selects a mirror to adjust (“L”: left or “R”: right)
- 2 Adjusts the mirror up, down, in, or out using the switch

1

Before driving

### Folding and extending the mirrors



- 1 Folds the mirrors
- 2 Extends the mirrors

Putting the outside rear view mirror folding switch in the neutral position sets the mirrors in automatic mode. Automatic mode allows the folding or extending of the mirrors to be linked to locking/unlocking of the doors.

#### ■ When the mirrors are fogged up

Turn on the mirror defoggers to defog the mirrors. (→P. 283)

#### ■ Automatic adjustment of the mirror angle

A desired mirror face angle can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory. (→P. 69)

### ■ Linked mirror function when reversing

The outside rear view mirrors will automatically angle downwards when the vehicle is reversing in order to give a better view of the ground. However, this function will not operate when the mirror select switch is in the neutral position (between "L" and "R").

### ■ Auto anti-glare function

When the anti-glare inside rear view mirror is set to automatic mode, the outside rear view mirrors will activate in conjunction with the anti-glare inside rear view mirror to reduce reflected light. (→P. 86)

### CAUTION

#### ■ When driving the vehicle

Observe the following precautions while driving.

Failing to do so may result in loss of control of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the mirrors while driving.
- Do not drive with the mirrors folded.
- Both the driver and passenger side mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.

#### ■ When a mirror is moving

To avoid personal injury and mirror malfunction, be careful not to get your hand caught by the moving mirror.

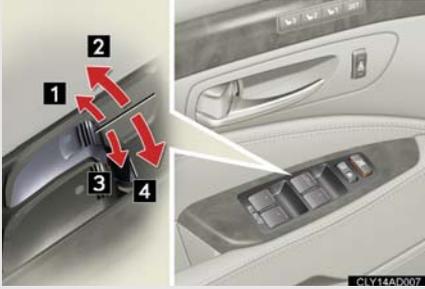
#### ■ When the mirror defoggers are operating

Do not touch the surface of the mirror, as it may be hot.

## 1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof

### Power windows

The power windows can be opened and closed using the following switches.



- 1 Closing
- 2 One-touch closing\*
- 3 Opening
- 4 One-touch opening\*

\*: Pushing the switch in the opposite direction will stop window travel partway.

1

Before driving

### Lock switch



Press the switch down to lock passenger window switches.

Use this switch to prevent children from accidentally opening or closing a passenger window.

#### ■ The power windows can be operated when

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

#### ■ Door lock linked window operation

- The power windows can be opened and closed using the mechanical key. (→P. 656)
- The power windows can be opened using the wireless remote control. (→P. 46)
- The power windows can be closed using the entry function. (→P. 33)

### ■ Operating the power windows after turning the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF

The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is switched to ACCESSORY mode or turned OFF. They cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

### ■ Jam protection function

If an object becomes caught between the window and the window frame, window travel is stopped and the window is opened slightly.

### ■ Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 692)

## CAUTION

### ■ Closing the windows

Observe the following precautions.

Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window is being operated.

- Do not allow children to operate the power windows.

Closing a power window on someone can cause serious injury, and in some instances, even death.

### ■ Jam protection function

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.

- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window fully closes.

# 1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof

## Moon roof (if equipped)

Use the overhead switches to open, close, and tilt the moon roof up and down.

### ■ Opening and closing



#### 1 Open

The moon roof stops slightly before the fully open position to reduce wind noise. Press the switch again to fully open.

#### 2 Close

Lightly press either of the moon roof switches to stop the moon roof partway.

### ■ Tilting up and down



#### 1 Tilt up

#### 2 Tilt down

Lightly press either of the roof switches to stop the moon roof partway.

### ■ The moon roof can be operated when

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

### ■ Moon roof open warning buzzer

The buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display in the instrument panel when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned OFF and the driver’s door is opened with the moon roof open.

### ■ Door lock linked moon roof operation

- The moon roof can be opened and closed using the mechanical key. (→P. 656)
- The moon roof can be opened using the wireless remote control. (→P. 46)
- The moon roof can be closed using the entry function. (→P. 33)

### ■ Operating the moon roof after turning the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF

The moon roof can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is switched to ACCESSORY mode or turned OFF. It cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

### ■ Jam protection function

If an object is detected between the moon roof and the frame while closing or tilting down, travel is stopped and the moon roof opens slightly.

### ■ When the moon roof does not close normally

Pressing and holding the “CLOSE” switch will close the moon roof.

### ■ Sunshade

The sunshade can be opened and closed manually. However, the sunshade will open automatically when the moon roof is opened.

### ■ Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 692)

 **CAUTION****■ Opening the moon roof**

Observe the following precautions.

Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not allow any passengers to put their hands or heads outside the vehicle while it is moving.
- Do not sit on top of the moon roof.

**■ Closing the moon roof**

Observe the following precautions.

Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when the moon roof is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the moon roof.  
Closing the moon roof on someone can cause death or serious injury.

**■ Jam protection function**

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the moon roof fully closes.

## 1-5. Refueling

### Opening the fuel tank cap

Perform the following steps to open the fuel tank cap:

#### ■ Before refueling the vehicle

Close all the doors and windows, and turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF.

#### ■ Opening the fuel tank cap



Press the opener switch.



Turn the fuel tank cap slowly to open.



Hang the fuel tank cap on the back of the fuel filler door.

## Closing the fuel tank cap



When replacing the fuel tank cap, turn it until a clicking sound is heard.

After releasing your hand, the cap will turn slightly to the opposite direction.

1

Before driving

### ■ Fuel types

Use unleaded gasoline. (91 Octane rating [Research Octane Number 96] or higher)

### ■ Fuel tank capacity

Approximately 22.1 gal. (84 L, 18.4 Imp. gal.)

### ■ When the fuel filler door opener is inoperable



The lever can be used to open the fuel filler door if the fuel filler door cannot be opened using the inside switch.

### CAUTION

#### ■ Refueling the vehicle

Observe the following precautions while refueling the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- After exiting the vehicle and before opening the fuel door, touch an unpainted metal surface to discharge any static electricity. It is important to discharge static electricity before refueling because sparks resulting from static electricity can cause fuel vapors to ignite while refueling.
- Always hold the grips on the fuel tank cap and turn it slowly to remove it. A whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. Wait until the sound cannot be heard before fully removing the cap. In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out the filler neck and cause injury.
- Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their bodies to come close to an open fuel tank.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel.  
Fuel contains substances that are harmful if inhaled.
- Do not smoke while refueling the vehicle.  
Doing so may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.
- Do not return to the vehicle or touch any person or object that is statically charged.  
This may cause static electricity to build up, resulting in a possible ignition hazard.

#### ■ When replacing the fuel cap

Do not use anything but a genuine Lexus fuel tank cap designed for your vehicle. Doing so may cause a fire or other incident which may result in death or serious injury.

### NOTICE

#### ■ Refueling

Do not spill fuel during refueling.

Doing so may damage the vehicle, such as causing the emission control system to operate abnormally or damaging fuel system components or the vehicle's painted surface.

## 1-6. Theft deterrent system

# Engine immobilizer system

The vehicle's keys have built-in transponder chips that prevent the engine from starting if the key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's on-board computer.

Never leave the keys inside the vehicle when you leave the vehicle.



The indicator light flashes after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned OFF to indicate that the system is operating.

### ■ System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type of the engine immobilizer system.

### ■ Conditions affecting operation

Depending on surrounding environment and conditions, the engine immobilizer system may not operate properly. This may prevent the engine from starting. (→P. 37)

### ■ Certifications for the engine immobilizer system

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID: NI4TMIMB-1

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

### CAUTION

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

### NOTICE

#### ■ To prevent damage to the key

Do not modify, remove or disable the engine immobilizer system. If any unauthorized changes or modifications are made, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

# Alarm

The system sounds the alarm and flashes lights when forcible entry is detected.

### ■ Triggering of the alarm

The alarm is triggered in the following situations:

- A locked door or trunk is unlocked or opened in any way other than using the entry function, wireless remote control or key. (The doors will lock again automatically.)
- The hood is opened while the vehicle is locked.

### ■ Setting the alarm system



Close the doors, trunk and hood, and lock all doors.

The system will be set automatically after 30 seconds.

The indicator light changes from being on to flashing when the system is set.

### ■ Deactivating or stopping the alarm

Do one of the following to deactivate or stop the alarm:

- Unlock the doors or trunk.
- Start the engine. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)

### ■ Items to check before locking the vehicle

To prevent unexpected triggering of the alarm and vehicle theft, make sure of the following:

- Nobody is in the vehicle.
- The windows and moon roof are closed before the alarm is set.
- No valuables or other personal items are left in the vehicle.

### ■ Triggering of the alarm

The alarm may be triggered in the following situations:  
(Stopping the alarm deactivates the alarm system.)

- The windows and moon roof are closed using a wireless remote control or mechanical key.
- A person inside the vehicle opens a door, the trunk or hood.
- The battery is recharged or replaced when the vehicle is locked.

### ■ Panic mode

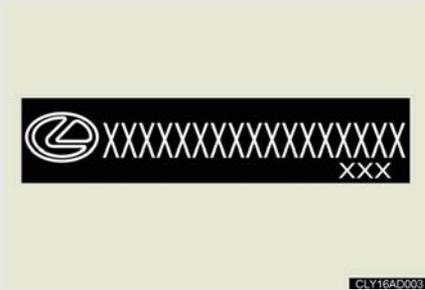


When  is pressed for longer than about one second, an alarm will sound for about 60 seconds and the vehicle lights flash to deter any person from trying to break into or damage your vehicle.

To stop the alarm, press any button on the wireless remote control.

## 1-6. Theft deterrent system

### Theft prevention labels (U.S.A.)



These labels are attached to the vehicle to reduce vehicle theft by facilitating the tracing and recovery of parts from stolen vehicles. Do not remove under penalty of law.

1

Before driving

### Correct driving posture

Drive in a good posture as follows:



- 1 Sit upright and well back in the seat. (→P. 59)
- 2 Adjust the position of the seat forward or backward to ensure the pedals can be reached and easily depressed to the extent required. (→P. 59)
- 3 Adjust the seatback so that the controls are easily operable.
- 4 Adjust the tilt and telescopic positions of the steering wheel downward so the SRS driver airbag is facing your chest. (→P. 84)
- 5 Adjust the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint closest to the top of your ears. (→P. 75)
- 6 Wear the seat belt correctly. (→P. 77)

 **CAUTION****■ While driving**

- Do not adjust the position of the driver's seat while driving.  
Doing so could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not place a cushion between the driver or passenger and the seatback.  
A cushion may prevent correct posture from being achieved, and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint, increasing the risk of death or serious injury to the driver or passenger.
- Do not place anything under the front seats.  
Objects placed under the front seats may become jammed in the seat tracks and stop the seat from locking in place. This may lead to an accident. The adjustment mechanism may also be damaged.

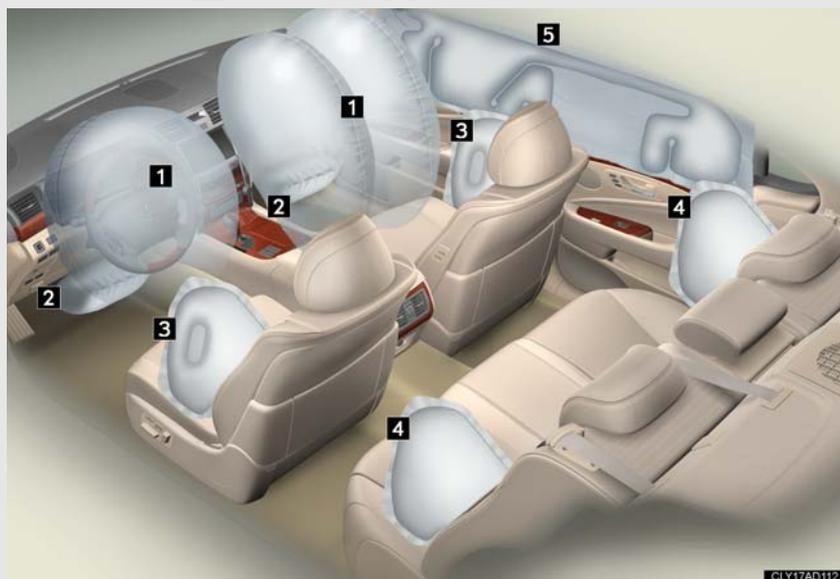
**■ Adjusting the seat position**

- Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other passengers are not injured by the moving seat.
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury.  
Fingers or hands may become jammed in the seat mechanism.

## 1-7. Safety information

# SRS airbags

The SRS airbags inflate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts that may cause significant injury to the occupants. They work together with the seat belts to help reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



### ► SRS front airbags

#### 1 SRS driver airbag/front passenger airbag

Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact with interior components

#### 2 Knee airbags

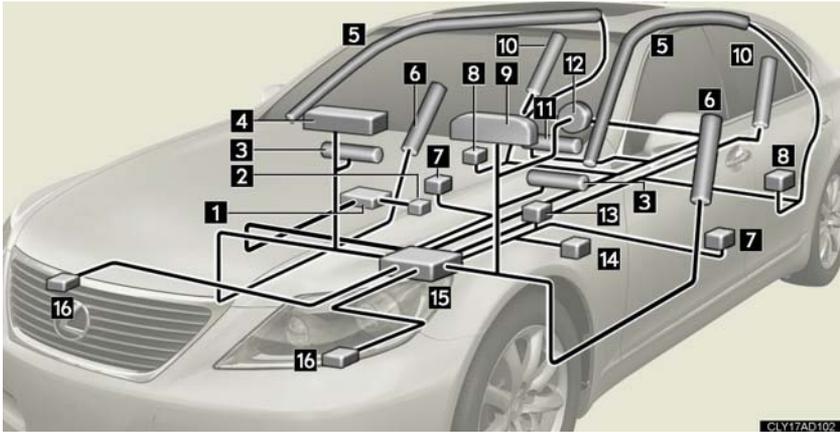
Can help provide driver and front passenger protection

- ▶ SRS side and curtain shield airbags
- 3 Front SRS side airbags  
Can help protect the torso of the front seat occupants
- 4 Rear SRS side airbags (with power rear seat only)  
Can help protect the torso of the outside rear seat occupants
- 5 SRS curtain shield airbags  
Can help protect primarily the head of outside occupants



- 6 SRS seat cushion airbag (with relaxation seat only)  
Can help restrain the relaxation seat occupant

**SRS airbag system components**



- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>1</b> Front passenger occupant detection sensor | <b>9</b> SRS warning light                 |
| <b>2</b> Front passenger's seat belt buckle switch | <b>10</b> Rear side airbags                |
| <b>3</b> Knee airbags                              | <b>11</b> Seat cushion airbag              |
| <b>4</b> Front passenger airbag                    | <b>12</b> Driver airbag                    |
| <b>5</b> Curtain shield airbags                    | <b>13</b> Driver's seat belt buckle switch |
| <b>6</b> Front side airbags                        | <b>14</b> Driver's seat position sensor    |
| <b>7</b> Side and curtain shield airbag sensors    | <b>15</b> Airbag sensor assembly           |
| <b>8</b> Curtain shield airbag sensors             | <b>16</b> Front airbag sensors             |

Your vehicle is equipped with **ADVANCED AIRBAGS** designed based on US motor vehicle safety standards (FMVSS208). The airbag system controls airbag deployment power for the driver and front passenger. The driver airbag system consists of the driver seat's position sensor etc. The front passenger's airbag system consists of the front passenger occupant classification sensor etc.

The main SRS airbag system components are shown above. The SRS airbag system is controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. The airbag sensor assembly consists of a safing sensor and an airbag sensor.

In certain types of severe frontal or side impacts, the SRS airbag system triggers the airbag inflators. A chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the motion of the occupants.

---

### ■ SRS warning light

This warning light system monitors the airbag sensor assembly, front airbag sensors, side and curtain shield airbag sensor assemblies, curtain shield airbag sensor assemblies, driver's seat position sensor, driver's seat belt buckle switch, front passenger occupant classification system, "AIR BAG ON" indicator light, "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light, front passenger's seat belt buckle switch, seat belt pretensioner assemblies, inflators, interconnecting wiring and power sources.  
(→P. 631)

### ■ If the SRS airbags deploy (inflate)

- Bruising and slight abrasions may result from contact with a deploying (inflating) SRS airbag.
- A loud noise and white powder will be emitted.
- Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, airbag cover and inflator) as well as the seats, and parts of the front pillar and roof side rail, may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
- The front windshield may crack.

### ■ Operating conditions (SRS front airbags and SRS seat cushion airbag)

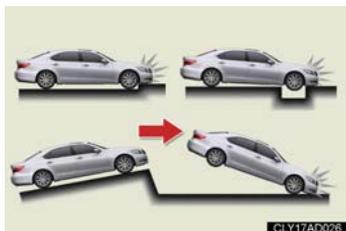
- The SRS front airbags and SRS seat cushion airbag will deploy if the severity of the frontal impact is above the designed threshold level, comparable to an approximate 15 mph (25 km/h) collision when the vehicle impacts straight into a fixed barrier that does not move or deform.

However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher if the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact, or if the vehicle is involved in an underride collision (e.g. a collision in which the front of the vehicle “underrides”, or goes under, the bed of a truck, etc.).

- It is possible that in some collisions where the forward deceleration of the vehicle is very close to the designed threshold level, the SRS front airbags, SRS seat cushion airbag and the seat belt pretensioners may not activate together.
- The SRS front passenger airbag will not activate if there is no passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the front passenger airbag may deploy if luggage is put in the seat, or the seat belt is fastened, even if the seat is unoccupied. (→P. 77)

### ■ Conditions under which the SRS airbags may deploy (inflate), other than a collision (SRS front airbags and SRS seat cushion airbag)

The SRS front airbags and SRS seat cushion airbag may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.



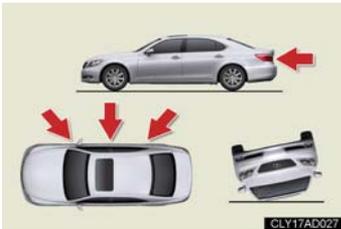
- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- Landing hard or vehicle falling

### ■ Operating conditions (SRS side and curtain shield airbags)

- The front SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags are designed to inflate when the passenger compartment is subjected to certain types of severe impacts from the side.
- The SRS side airbag on the passenger seat will not activate if there is no passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the front SRS side airbag on the passenger seat may deploy if luggage is put in the seat, even if the seat is unoccupied. (→P. 77)

### ■ Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbag (SRS front airbags and SRS seat cushion airbag)

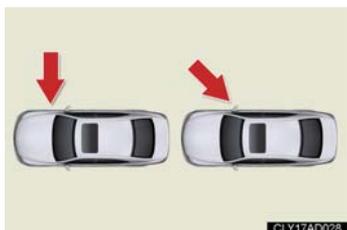
The SRS front airbags and SRS seat cushion airbag are generally not designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the SRS front airbags and SRS seat cushion airbag may occur.



- Collision from the side
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover

### ■ Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS side and curtain shield airbags)

The SRS side airbag and curtain shield airbag system may not activate if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment.



- Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment
- Collision from the side at an angle

The SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags are not generally designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a frontal or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.

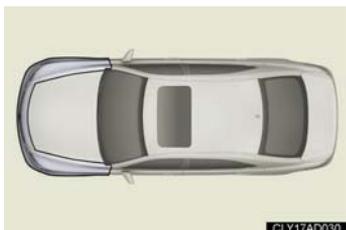


- Collision from the front
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover

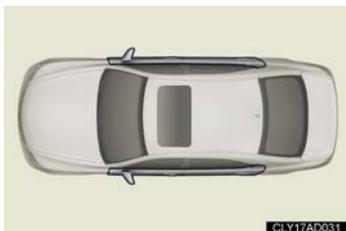
## ■ When to contact your Lexus dealer

In the following cases, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. Do not disconnect the battery cables before contacting them.

- Any of the SRS airbags has been inflated.



- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS airbags to inflate.



- A portion of the doors is damaged or deformed, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags to inflate.



- The pad section of the steering wheel, dashboard near the front passenger airbag or lower portion of the instrument panel is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



- With relaxation seat only: The seat cushion surface is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



- The surface of the seats with the side air-bag is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.
- The portion of the front pillars, rear pillars or roof side rail garnishes (padding) containing the curtain shield airbags inside is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

 CAUTION**■ SRS airbag precautions**

Observe the following precautions regarding the SRS airbags. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly. The SRS airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.
- The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (“NHTSA”) advises:

Since the risk zone for driver airbag is the first 2 - 3 in. (50 - 75 mm) of inflation, placing yourself 10 in. (250 mm) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 10 in. (250 mm) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Slightly recline the back of the seat.
 

Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 10 in. (250 mm) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.
- If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

The seat should be adjusted as recommended by NHTSA above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.

**! CAUTION**

**■ SRS airbag precautions**



- If the seat belt extender has been connected to the driver's seat belt buckle but the seat belt extender has not also been fastened to the latch plate of the driver's seat belt, the SRS driver's airbag system will judge that the driver is wearing the seat belt even though the seat belt has not been connected. In this case, the driver's airbag may not activate correctly in a collision, resulting in death or serious injury in the event of collision. Be sure to wear the seat belt with the seat belt extender.
- The SRS front passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the front passenger sits upright.
- Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by a deploying airbag. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are the safest for infants and children. (→P.123)

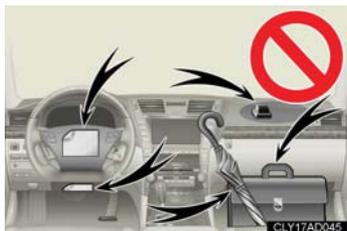
 CAUTION

**■ SRS airbag precautions**


- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.
- Do not allow a child to stand in front of the SRS front passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of a front passenger.
- Do not drive the vehicle while the driver or passenger have items resting on their knees.
- Do not lean against the door, the roof side rail or the front, side and rear pillars.
- Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seats toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.

**! CAUTION**

**■ SRS airbag precautions**



- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard, steering wheel pad or lower portion of the instrument panel.  
These items can become projectiles when SRS driver, front passenger and knee airbags deploy.
- Do not attach anything to areas such as the door, windshield glass, side door glass, front and rear pillars, roof side rail or assist grip.
- Do not hang coat hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. All of these items could become projectiles and seriously injure or kill you, should the SRS curtain shield airbag deploy.

- If the vinyl cover is put on the area where the SRS knee airbag will deploy, be sure to remove it.
- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the SRS side airbags and SRS seat cushion airbag inflate as they may interfere with inflation of the SRS airbags.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the SRS airbag components shown on P.106.  
Doing so can cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.
- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the SRS airbags have deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.
- If breathing becomes difficult after the SRS airbags have deployed, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.
- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel pad and front pillar garnish, are damaged or cracked, have them replaced by your Lexus dealer.

 **CAUTION****■ SRS airbag precautions**

- Do not place anything, such as a cushion, on the front passenger's seat. Doing so will disperse the passenger's weight, which prevents the sensor from detecting the passenger's weight properly. As a result, the SRS front passenger airbag may not deploy in the event of a collision.

**■ Modification and disposal of SRS airbag system components**

Do not dispose of your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting your Lexus dealer.

The SRS airbag may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the SRS airbags
- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, dashboard, seats or seat upholstery, front, side and rear pillars or roof side rails
- Repairs or modifications of the front fender, front bumper, or side of the occupant compartment
- Installation of snow plows, winches, etc. to the front grille (bull bars, kangaroo bar etc.)
- Modifications to the vehicle's suspension system
- Installation of electronic devices such as mobile two-way radios or CD players
- Modifications to your vehicle for a person with a physical disability.

## 1-7. Safety information

### Front passenger occupant classification system

Your vehicle is equipped with a front passenger occupant classification system. This system detects the conditions of the front passenger seat and activates or deactivates the devices for front passenger.



- 1 SRS warning light
- 2 Front passenger's seat belt reminder light
- 3 "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light
- 4 "AIR BAG ON" indicator light

## Condition and operation in the front passenger occupant classification system

### ■ Adult<sup>\*1</sup>

Indicator/ warning light	"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights	"AIR BAG ON"
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Flashing <sup>*2</sup>
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Activated
	Side airbag on the right side passenger seats	
	Curtain shield airbag in the front passenger side	
	Front passenger knee airbag	
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	

1

Before driving

### ■ Child<sup>\*3</sup> or child restraint system<sup>\*4</sup>

Indicator/ warning light	"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights	"AIR BAG OFF" <sup>*5</sup>
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Flashing <sup>*2</sup>
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Deactivated
	Side airbag on the right side passenger seats	
	Curtain shield airbag in the front passenger side	Activated
	Front passenger knee airbag	Deactivated
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	Activated

### ■ Unoccupied

Indicator/ warning light	"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights	Not illuminated
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Deactivated
	Side airbag on the right side passenger seats	
	Curtain shield airbag in the front passenger side	Activated
	Front passenger knee airbag	Deactivated
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	

### ■ There is a malfunction in the system

Indicator/ warning light	"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights	"AIR BAG OFF"
	SRS warning light	On
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Off
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Deactivated
	Side airbag on the right side passenger seats	
	Curtain shield airbag in the front passenger side	Activated
	Front passenger knee airbag	Deactivated
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	Activated

- \*1: The system judges a person of adult size as an adult. When a smaller adult sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as a child depending on his/her physique and posture.
- \*2: In the event the front passenger does not wear a seat belt.
- \*3: When a larger child who has outgrown a child restraint system sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as an adult depending on his/her physique or posture.

- \*4: Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat. A forward-facing child restraint system should only be installed on the front passenger seat when it is unavoidable. (→P. 123)
- \*5: In case indicator light is not illuminated, consult this manual on how to install the child restraint system properly. (→P. 128)

### CAUTION

#### ■ Front passenger occupant classification system precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding front passenger occupant classification system.

Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Wear the seat belt properly.
- Make sure the front passenger's seat belt tab has not been left inserted into the buckle before someone sits in the front passenger seat.
- Make sure the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is not illuminated when using the seat belt extender for the front passenger seat. If the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated, disconnect the extender tongue from the seat belt buckle, then reconnect the seat belt. Reconnect the seat belt extender after making sure the "AIR BAG ON" indicator light is illuminated. If you use the seat belt extender while the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated, the front passenger airbag, side airbag on the front passenger side and front passenger knee airbag may not activate correctly, which could cause death or serious injury in the event of collision.
- Do not put weight on the front passenger seat by putting your hands or feet on the front passenger seat seatback from the rear passenger seat.
- Do not let a rear passenger lift the front passenger seat with their feet or press on the seatback with their legs.
- Do not put objects under the front passenger seat.

 **CAUTION**

**■ Front passenger occupant classification system precautions**

- Do not recline the front passenger seatback so far that it touches a rear seat. This may cause the “AIR BAG OFF” indicator light to be illuminated, which indicates that the passenger’s airbags will not deploy in the event of a severe accident. If the seatback touches the rear seat, return the seatback to a position where it does not touch the rear seat. Keep the front passenger seatback as upright as possible when the vehicle is moving. Reclining the seatback excessively may lessen the effectiveness of the seat belt system.
- If an adult sits in the front passenger seat, the “AIR BAG ON” indicator light is illuminated. If the “AIR BAG OFF” indicator is illuminated, ask the passenger to sit up straight, well back in the seat, feet on the floor, and with the seat belt worn correctly. If the “AIR BAG OFF” indicator still remains illuminated, either ask the passenger to move to the rear seat, or if that is not possible, move the front passenger seat fully rearward.
- When it is unavoidable to install the forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, install the child restraint system on the front passenger seat in the proper order. (→P. 128)
- Do not modify or remove the front seats.
- Do not kick the front passenger seat or subject it to severe impact. Otherwise, the SRS warning light may come on to indicate a malfunction of the detection system. In this case, contact your Lexus dealer immediately.
- Child restraint systems installed on the rear seat should not contact the front seatbacks.
- Do not use a seat accessory, such as a cushion or seat cover, that covers the seat cushion surface.
- Do not modify or replace the upholstery of the front seat.

# Child restraint systems

A child restraint system for a small child or baby must itself be properly restrained on the seat with the lap portion of the lap/shoulder belt.

The laws of all 50 states of the U.S.A. and Canada now require the use of child restraint systems.

### Points to remember

Studies have shown that installing a child restraint on a rear seat is much safer than installing one to the front passenger seat.

- Choose a child restraint system appropriate to the age and size of the child.
- For installation details, follow the instructions provided with the child restraint system.  
General installation instructions are provided in this manual. (→P. 128)

### Types of child restraints

Child restraint systems are classified into the following 3 types according to the age and size of the child.

#### ► Infant seat



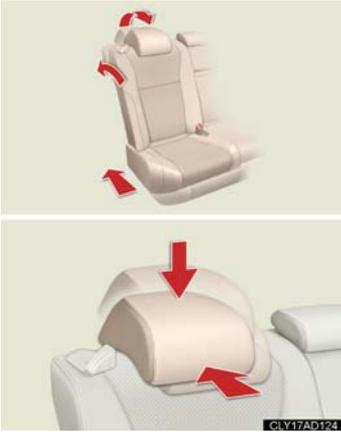
► Convertible seat



► Booster seat



■ When installing the child restraint system on a rear outboard seat (power rear seat only)



When you have to use a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, adjust the following:

- The upper seatback to the rearmost position
- 4-seat models: The seatback to the most upright position
- The seat cushion to the fully rearward position
- The head restraint to the lowmost and rearmost position

■ Selecting an appropriate child restraint system

Get an appropriate child restraint system for the child. If the child is too large for a child restraint system, sit the child on a rear seat and use the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 77)

### CAUTION

#### ■ Child restraint precautions

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system depending on the age and size of the child. Holding a child in your arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield, or between you and the vehicle's interior.
- Lexus strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.
- Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat even if "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated. In the event of an accident, the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child if the rear-facing child restraint system is installed on the front passenger seat.
- A forward-facing child restraint system should be allowed to be installed on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. Always move the seat as far back as possible even if "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated, because the front passenger airbag could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, the child may be killed or seriously injured.
- Do not use the seat belt extender when installing a child restraint system on the front or rear passenger seat. If installing a child restraint system with the seat belt extender connected to the seat belt, the seat belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, which could cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of collision.
- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front pillar or roof side rail from which the SRS side airbags or SRS curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the side airbags and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.
- Make sure you have complied with all installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and that the system is properly secured. If it is not secured properly, it may cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

 **CAUTION****■ When the child restraint system is not in use**

- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the restraint unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the trunk. This will prevent it from injuring passengers in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

## 1-7. Safety information

# Installing child restraints

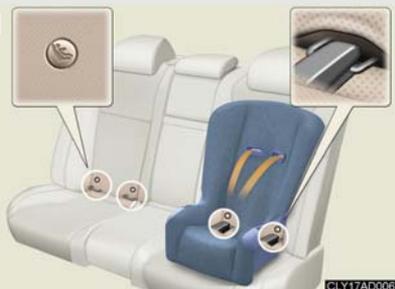
Follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions. Firmly secure child restraints to the outside rear seats using a seat belt or child restraint lower anchors. Attach the top strap when installing a child restraint.

1



1 Seat belts equipped with a child restraint locking mechanism (ALR/ELR belts except driver's seat belt) (→P. 77)

2



2 Child restraint lower anchor

Lower anchors are provided for the rear outside seats. (Buttons displaying the location of the anchors are attached to the seats.)

3



3 Anchor bracket (for top strap)

Anchor brackets are provided for each rear seat.

## Installing child restraints using a seat belt (child restraint lock function belt)

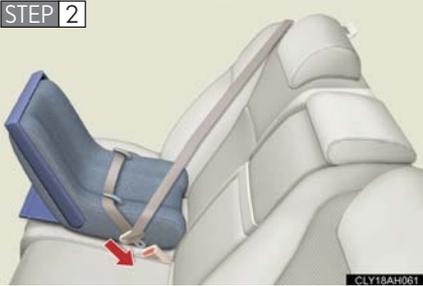
### ■ Rear-facing — Infant seat/convertible seat

STEP 1



Place the child restraint system on the rear seat facing the rear of the vehicle.

STEP 2



Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

STEP 3



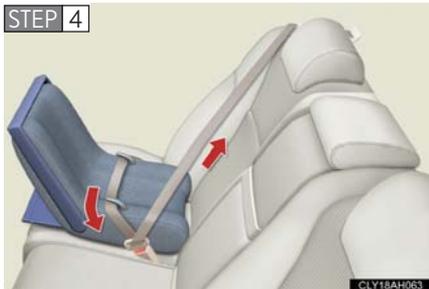
Fully extend the shoulder belt and then allow it to retract slightly in order to activate the ALR lock mode.

Lock mode allows the seat belt to retract only.

1

Before driving

STEP 4



While pushing the child restraint system down into the rear seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract until the child seat is securely in place.

After the shoulder belt has retracted to a point where there is no slack in the belt, pull the belt to check that it cannot be extended.

### ■ Forward-facing — Convertible seat

STEP 1



Place the child restraint system on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.

STEP 2



Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

STEP 3



Fully extend the shoulder belt and allow it to retract to put it in lock mode. In lock mode, the belt cannot be extended.

STEP 4



While pushing the child restraint system into the rear seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract until the child restraint system is securely in place.

After the shoulder belt has retracted to a point where there is no slack in the belt, pull the belt to check that it cannot be extended.

## ■ Booster seat

STEP 1



Place the booster seat on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.

STEP 2



Sit the child in the booster seat. Fit the seat belt to the booster seat according to the manufacturer's instructions and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

Check that the shoulder belt is correctly positioned over the child's shoulder, and that the lap belt is as low as possible. (→P. 77)

## Removing a child restraint installed with a seat belt



Push the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

## Installation with child restraint lower anchors



**STEP 1** Widen the gap between the seat cushion and seat-back slightly.

**STEP 2** Latch the hooks of the lower straps onto the anchors.

If the child restraint has a top strap, the top strap should be latched onto the anchors.

For owners in Canada:  
The symbol on a child restraint system indicates the presence of a lower connector system.

► Type A



► Type B

**STEP 1** Widen the gap between the seat cushion and seat-back slightly.

**STEP 2** Latch the buckles onto the anchors.

If the child restraint has a top strap, the top strap should be latched onto the anchors.

For owners in Canada:  
The symbol on a child restraint system indicates the presence of a lower connector system.

## Child restraint systems with a top strap



**STEP 1** Secure the child restraint using a seat belt or a lower anchors, and move the head restraint in place at the lowest position. (→P. 75)



Open the anchor bracket cover, latch the hook onto the anchor bracket and tighten the top strap.

Make sure the top strap is securely latched.

### ■ Laws and regulations pertaining to anchors

Anchors conform to FMVSS225 or CMVSS210.2.

Child restraint systems conforming to FMVSS213 or CMVSS213 specifications can be used.

This vehicle is designed to conform to the SAE J1819.

### ⚠ CAUTION

#### ■ When installing a booster seat

To prevent the belt from going into ALR lock mode, do not fully extend the shoulder belt. (→P. 79)

- ALR mode causes the belt to tighten only which could cause injury or discomfort to the child.
- Do not allow the child to play with the seat belt or the child could be killed or seriously injured.

## ⚠ CAUTION

### ■ When installing a child restraint system

Follow the directions given in the child restraint system installation manual and fix the child restraint system securely in place.

If the child restraint system is not correctly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking or an accident.



- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand rear seat.



- Only put a forward-facing child restraint system on the front seat when unavoidable. When installing a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible even if "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury if the airbags deploy (inflate).

- When a booster seat is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury in the event of an accident or sudden braking.
- Ensure that the belt and tab are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Push and pull the child restraint system in different directions to be sure it is secure.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

 **CAUTION**

■ **Do not use a seat belt extender**

If a seat belt extender is used when installing a child restraint system, the seat belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, which could cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of a collision.

■ **To correctly attach a child restraint system to the anchors**

When using the lower anchors, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchors and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child restraint. Make sure the child restraint system is securely attached, or it may cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

<b>2-1. Driving procedures .....</b>	<b>138</b>	<b>2-4. Using other driving</b>	<b>182</b>
Driving the vehicle.....	138	<b>systems .....</b>	<b>182</b>
Engine (ignition) switch .....	146	Cruise control.....	182
Automatic Transmission.....	150	Dynamic radar cruise	
Turn signal lever .....	155	control .....	185
Parking brake .....	156	Intuitive parking	
Brake Hold .....	159	assist-sensor .....	195
<b>2-2. Instrument cluster .....</b>	<b>161</b>	Electronically modulated	
Gauges and meters .....	161	air suspension.....	204
Indicators and warning		Rear view monitor	
lights .....	164	system.....	206
Multi-information		Driving assist systems .....	209
display .....	168	Pre-Collision System.....	215
<b>2-3. Operating the lights and</b>		Pre-Collision System with	
<b>windshield wipers.....</b>	<b>172</b>	camera sensor .....	218
Headlight switch.....	172	<b>2-5. Driving information.....</b>	<b>227</b>
Fog light switch .....	175	Cargo and luggage .....	227
Windshield wipers and		Vehicle load limits.....	230
washer .....	176	Winter driving tips .....	232
Headlight cleaner switch.....	181	Trailer towing .....	236
		Dinghy towing.....	237

## 2-1. Driving procedures

# Driving the vehicle

The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving.

### ■ Starting the engine (→P. 146)

#### ■ Driving

**STEP 1** With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to “D”.  
(→P. 150)

**STEP 2** Release the parking brake. (→P. 156)

**STEP 3** Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

#### ■ Stopping

**STEP 1** With the shift lever in “D”, depress the brake pedal.

**STEP 2** If necessary, set the parking brake.

When the vehicle is stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift lever to “P” or “N”.  
(→P.150)

#### ■ Parking the vehicle

**STEP 1** With the shift lever in “D”, depress the brake pedal.

**STEP 2** Set the parking brake. (→P.156)

**STEP 3** Shift the shift lever to “P”. (→P.150)

**STEP 4** Press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch and stop the engine.

**STEP 5** Lock the door, making sure that you have the electronic key on your person.

### Starting on a steep uphill

**STEP 1** Set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to “D”.

**STEP 2** Gently depress the accelerator pedal.

**STEP 3** Release the parking brake.

### ■ Driving in the rain

- Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, the windows may become fogged-up, and the road will be slippery.
- Drive carefully when it starts to rain, because the road surface will be especially slippery.
- Refrain from high speeds when driving on an expressway in the rain, because there may be a layer of water between the tires and the road surface, preventing the steering and brakes from operating properly.

### ■ Breaking in your new Lexus

To extend the life of the vehicle, the following precautions are recommended to observe:

- For the first 186 miles (300 km):  
Avoid sudden stops.
- For the first 621 miles (1000 km):
  - Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
  - Avoid sudden acceleration.
  - Do not drive continuously in the low range in the “S” position.
  - Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

### ■ Drum-in-disc type parking brake system

Your vehicle has a drum-in-disc type parking brake system. This type of brake system needs bedding-down of the brake shoes periodically or whenever the parking brake shoes and/or drum are replaced. Have your Lexus dealer perform the bedding down.

### ■ Operating your vehicle in a foreign country

Comply with the relevant vehicle registration laws and confirm the availability of the correct fuel. (→P. 670)

### ■ Normal characteristics after turning off the engine

Approximately five hours after the engine is turned off, you may hear sound coming from under the vehicle for several minutes. This is because fuel evaporation leakage check is performed. It does not indicate a malfunction.

### CAUTION

#### ■ When starting the vehicle

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the engine running. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

#### ■ When driving the vehicle

- Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the location of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.
  - Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.
  - When backing up, you may twist your body around, leading to a difficulty in operating the pedals. Make sure to operate the pedals properly.
  - Make sure to keep a correct driving posture even when moving the vehicle only slightly, allowing you to depress the brake and accelerator pedals properly.
  - Depress the brake pedal using your right foot. Depressing the brake pedal using your left foot may delay response in an emergency, resulting in an accident.
- Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials.
- Do not let the vehicle roll backwards while the shift lever is in a driving position, or roll forward while the shift lever is in “R”.  
Doing so may result in an accident or damage to the vehicle.
- If the smell of exhaust is noticed inside the vehicle, open the windows and check that the trunk is closed. Large amounts of exhaust in the vehicle can cause driver drowsiness and an accident, resulting in death or a serious health hazard. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.
- Do not under any circumstances shift the shift lever to “P” or “R” while the vehicle is moving.  
Doing so can cause significant damage to the transmission system and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to “N” while the vehicle is moving.  
Doing so may cause insufficient engine braking and lead to an accident.
- Do not turn the engine off while driving.  
The power steering system will not operate properly if the engine is not running.

 **CAUTION**

- Use engine braking (downshift) to maintain a safe speed when driving down a steep hill.  
Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness. (→P. 151)
- When stopped on an inclined surface, use the brake pedal and parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling backward or forward and causing an accident.
- Do not adjust the position of the steering wheel, the seat, or the inside or outside rear view mirrors while driving.  
Doing so may result in a loss of vehicle control that can cause accidents that may result in death or serious injury.
- Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their body are not outside the vehicle, as this may result in death or serious injury.
- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit. Even if the legal speed limit permits it, do not drive over 85 mph (140 km/h) unless your vehicle has high-speed capability tires. Driving over 85 mph (140 km/h) may result in tire failure, loss of control and possible injury. Be sure to consult a tire dealer to determine whether the tires on your vehicle are high-speed capability tires or not before driving at such speeds.

**■ When driving on slippery road surfaces**

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control the vehicle, resulting in an accident.
- Sudden changes in engine speed, such as engine braking caused by up-shifting or down-shifting, may cause the vehicle to skid, resulting in an accident.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress the brake pedal to make sure that the brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake pads may prevent the brakes from functioning properly. If the brakes on only one side are wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected, resulting in an accident.

**■ When shifting the shift lever**

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed. This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

### CAUTION

#### ■ When the vehicle is stopped

- Do not race the engine.

If the vehicle is in any gear other than “P” or “N”, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, and may cause an accident.

- Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running for a long time.

If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and check that exhaust fumes do not enter the vehicle interior.

- Always keep a foot on the brake pedal while the engine is running to prevent an accident caused by the vehicle moving.

#### ■ When the vehicle is parked

- Do not leave glasses, cigarette lighters, spray cans, or soft drink cans in the vehicle when it is in the sun.

Doing so may result in the following:

- Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or spray can, and may lead to a fire.
- The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of eye glasses to deform or crack.
- Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle’s electrical components.

- Always apply the parking brake, shift the shift lever to “P”, stop the engine and lock the vehicle.

Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the engine is running.

- Do not touch the exhaust pipes and the rear bumper diffusers while the engine is running or immediately after turning the engine off.

Doing so may cause burns.

- Do not leave the engine running in an area with snow build-up, or where it is snowing. If snowbanks build up around the vehicle while the engine is running, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

 **CAUTION**
**■ Exhaust gases**

Exhaust gases include harmful carbon monoxide (CO) that is colorless and odorless. Inhaling exhaust gases may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

- If the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area, stop the engine. In a closed area, such as a garage, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.
- The exhaust should be checked occasionally. If there is a hole or crack caused by corrosion, damage to a joint or abnormal exhaust noise, be sure to have the vehicle inspected and repaired by your Lexus dealer. Failure to do so may allow exhaust gases to enter the vehicle, resulting in death or a serious health hazard.

**■ When taking a nap in the vehicle**

Always turn the engine off. Otherwise, you may accidentally move the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, which could cause an accident or fire due to engine overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle, leading to death or a serious health hazard.

**■ When braking the vehicle**

- When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously.  
Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and may cause one side of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side. Also the parking brake may not securely hold the vehicle.
- If the electronically controlled brake system does not operate, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid downhills or sharp turns that require braking.  
In this case, even though the brakes still operate, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual. Braking distance also becomes longer.
- The brake system consists of 3 individual hydraulic systems: if one of the systems fails, the others will still operate. In this case, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and braking distance becomes longer. If this happens, do not continue to drive the vehicle. If the brake system warning light (red indicator) comes on together with buzzer sound while driving, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

### NOTICE

#### ■ When driving the vehicle

Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time to hold the vehicle on a hill.

#### ■ When parking the vehicle

Always put the shift lever in "P". Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

#### ■ Avoiding damage to vehicle parts

- Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and hold it there for a long time.  
Doing so may damage the power steering motor.
- When driving over bumps in the road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc.

#### ■ If you get a flat tire while driving

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually press the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle.

- It may be difficult to control your vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal sounds.
- The vehicle will behave abnormally.

Replace a flat tire with a new one. (→P. 642)

 NOTICE**■ When encountering flooded roads**

Do not drive on a road that has flooded after heavy rain etc. Doing so may cause the following serious damage to the vehicle:

- Engine stalling
- Short in electrical components
- Engine damage caused by water immersion

In the event that you drive on a flooded road and the vehicle is flooded, be sure to have your Lexus dealer check the following:

- Brake function
- Changes in quantity and quality of oil and fluid used for the engine, transmission, differential, etc.
- Lubricant condition for the propeller shaft, bearings and suspension joints (where possible) and the function of all joints, bearings, etc.

## 2-1. Driving procedures

### Engine (ignition) switch

Modes can be switched by pressing the “ENGINE START STOP” switch when carrying the electronic key on your person. (The engine can be started in any mode by operating the switch at the same time as depressing the brake pedal.)

#### ■ Starting the engine

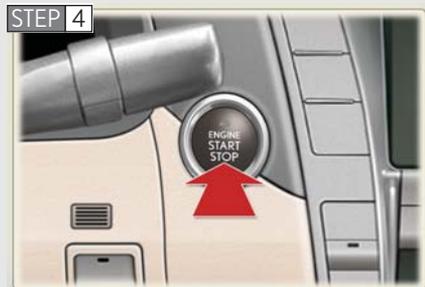
**STEP 1** Check that the parking brake is set.

**STEP 2** Check that the shift lever is set in “P”.

**STEP 3** Sit in the driver’s seat and firmly depress the brake pedal.

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch indicator turns green.

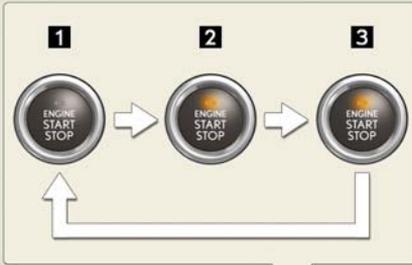
**STEP 4**



Press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch.



## ■ Changing “ENGINE START STOP” switch mode



### 1 OFF\*

Emergency flashers can be used.

### 2 ACCESSORY mode

Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used.

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch indicator turns amber.

### 3 IGNITION ON mode

All electrical components can be used.

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch indicator turns amber.

\*: If the shift lever is in a position other than “P” when turning off the engine, the “ENGINE START STOP” switch will be switched to ACCESSORY mode, not to OFF.

## ■ If the engine does not start

The engine immobilizer system may not have been deactivated. (→P. 97)

### ■ When the steering lock cannot be released



The green indicator light on the “ENGINE START STOP” switch will flash and a message will be shown on the multi-information display. Press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch again while turning the steering wheel left and right.

### ■ When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch indicator flashes in amber

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

### ■ Auto power off function

If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode for more than an hour with the shift lever in “P”, the “ENGINE START STOP” switch will automatically turn OFF.

### ■ Electronic key battery depletion

→P. 39

### ■ When the electronic key battery is discharged

→P. 587

### ■ Conditions affecting operation

→P. 37

### ■ Note for the entry function

→P. 40

## ⚠ CAUTION

### ■ When starting the engine

Always start the engine while sitting in the driver’s seat. Do not depress the accelerator pedal while starting the engine under any circumstances. Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

 CAUTION**■ Stopping the engine in an emergency**

If you want to stop the engine in an emergency while driving the vehicle, push and hold the “ENGINE START STOP” switch for more than 3 seconds.

However, do not touch the “ENGINE START STOP” switch while driving except in an emergency. If the engine stops while the vehicle is being driven, this could lead to an unexpected accident.

 NOTICE**■ To prevent the battery from being discharged**

Do not leave the “ENGINE START STOP” switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods of time without the engine running.

**■ When starting the engine**

- Do not race a cold engine.
- If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, have the engine checked immediately by your Lexus dealer.

## 2-1. Driving procedures

# Automatic Transmission

Select a shift position appropriate for the driving conditions.

### ■ Shifting the shift lever



While the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode, depress the brake pedal and move the shift lever.

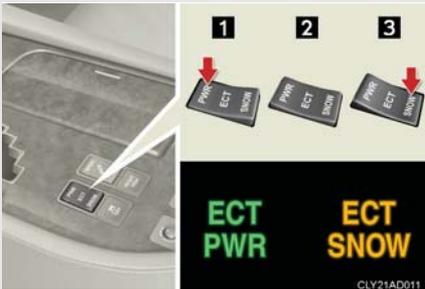
## ■ Shift position uses

Shift position	Function
P	Parking the vehicle or starting the engine
R	Reversing
N	Neutral
D	Normal driving* <sup>1</sup>
S	"S" mode driving* <sup>2</sup> (→P.152)

- \*1: To improve fuel consumption and reduce noises, set the shift lever in the "D" position for normal driving.
- \*2: Selecting shift ranges using "S" mode restricts the upper limit of the possible gear ranges, controls engine braking forces, and prevents unnecessary upshifting.

## ■ Selecting a driving mode

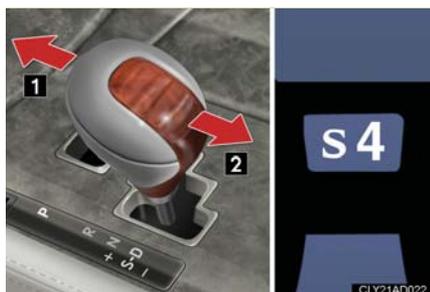
The following patterns can be selected to suit current driving and operating conditions.



- 1 Power mode**  
For powerful acceleration and driving in mountainous regions
- 2 Normal mode**
- 3 Snow mode**  
For accelerating and driving on slippery road surfaces, such as on snow  
Press "SNOW" to return to normal mode.

### Changing shift ranges in “S” mode

Shift the shift lever to the “S” position and operate the shift lever.



- 1 Upshifting
- 2 Downshifting

The initial shift range in “S” mode is automatically set to “4”, “5”, “6” or “7” according to vehicle speed. However, the initial shift range may be set to “2” or “3” if the AI-SHIFT has operated while the shift lever was in the “D” position. (→P. 154)

## ■ Shift ranges and their functions

Shift range	Function
8	Automatically selecting gears between “1” and “8” according to vehicle speed and driving conditions
7	Automatically selecting gears between “1” and “7” according to vehicle speed and driving conditions
6	Automatically selecting gears between “1” and “6” according to vehicle speed and driving conditions
5	Automatically selecting gears between “1” and “5” according to vehicle speed and driving conditions
4	Automatically selecting gears between “1” and “4” according to vehicle speed and driving conditions
3	Automatically selecting gears between “1” and “3” according to vehicle speed and driving conditions
2	Automatically selecting gears between “1” and “2” according to vehicle speed and driving conditions
1	Setting the gear at “1”

A lower shift range will provide greater engine braking forces than a higher shift range.

### ■ “S” mode

- When the shift range is “6” or lower, holding the shift lever toward “+” sets the shift range to “8.”
- When the shift range is “6” or higher, moving the shift lever toward “-” may change down by 2 shift ranges or more depending on driving conditions.
- To prevent the engine from over-revving, upshifting may automatically occur.

### ■ Downshifting restrictions warning buzzer (in the “S” mode)

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever is operated. (The warning buzzer will sound twice.)

### ■ When driving with the cruise control system

Engine brake will not operate in the “S” mode, even when downshifting to “7”, “6”, “5” or “4”. (→P. 182, 185)

### ■ Snow mode automatic deactivation

Snow mode is automatically deactivated if the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned OFF after driving in snow mode.

### ■ If the shift lever cannot be shifted from “P”

→P. 652

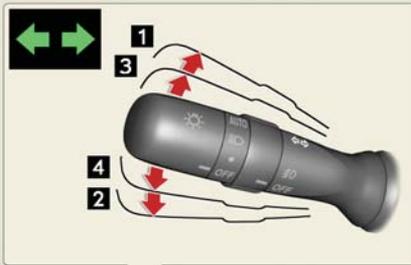
### ■ AI-SHIFT

The AI-SHIFT automatically shifts the gear to the optimal position according to the driver performance and driving conditions.

The AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the shift lever is in the “D” position. (Shifting the shift lever to the “S” position cancels the function.)

## 2-1. Driving procedures

### Turn signal lever



- 1 Right turn
- 2 Left turn
- 3 Move and hold the lever part-way to signal a lane change.

The right hand signal will flash until you release the lever.

- 4 Move and hold the lever part-way to signal a lane change.

The left hand signal will flash until you release the lever.

2

When driving

#### ■ Turn signals can be operated when

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

#### ■ If the indicators flash faster than usual

Check that a light bulb in the front or rear turn signal lights has not burned out.

## 2-1. Driving procedures

# Parking brake

For the parking brake, an electrical parking brake system is adopted.

### ■ Manual mode



#### 1 Sets the parking brake

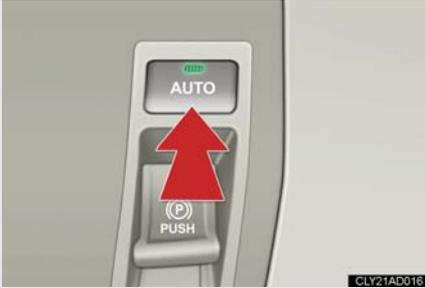
If the parking brake switch is operated when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is not in IGNITION ON mode, the parking brake indicator light will come on and stay on for a while.

Press and hold the parking brake switch if an emergency occurs and it is necessary to operate the parking brake while driving.

#### 2 Releases the parking brake

Operate the parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal. Make sure that the parking brake indicator light goes off.

## ■ Automatic mode



### On/off

The parking brake is set automatically according to shift lever operation.

Operate the shift lever with the brake pedal depressed.

- When the shift lever is moved out of “P”  
The parking brake will be released.
- When the shift lever is moved into “P”  
The parking brake will be set.

## ■ Parking brake operation

- When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is not in IGNITION ON mode, the parking brake cannot be released using the parking brake switch.
- When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is not in IGNITION ON mode, automatic mode (automatic brake setting and releasing) is not available.
- If the parking brake is operated repeatedly over a short period of time, the system may restrict operation to prevent overheating. If this happens, refrain from operating the parking brake. Normal operation will return after about 1 minute.

## ■ Parking brake indicator light

When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned OFF with the parking brake set, the parking brake indicator light will stay on for about 15 seconds. This does not indicate a malfunction.

## ■ Parking brake operation sound

When the parking brake operates, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

### ■ When there is a malfunction in the system

Warning lights and/or warning messages will turn on or flash. (→P. 630, 639)  
Depending on the condition, the parking brake indicator light may flash.

#### NOTICE

### ■ When parking the vehicle

Before you leave the vehicle, set the parking brake, shift the shift lever to “P” and make sure that the vehicle does not move.

### ■ When the system malfunctions

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and check the warning messages.

### ■ When the parking brake cannot be released due to a malfunction

Use the parking brake release tool to manually release the parking brake.  
(→P. 653)

Driving the vehicle with the parking brake set will lead to brake components overheating, which may affect braking performance and increase brake wear.

## 2-1. Driving procedures

# Brake Hold

The brake hold system keeps the brake applied when the shift lever is in “D”, “S” or “N” with the system on and the brake pedal has been depressed to stop the vehicle. The system releases the brake when the accelerator pedal is depressed with the shift lever in “D” or “S” to allow smooth start off.



Turns the brake hold system on.

The brake hold standby indicator comes on. While the system is holding the brake, the brake hold operated indicator light comes on.

### ■ Brake hold system operating conditions

The brake hold system cannot be turned on in the following conditions:

- The trunk or hood is not closed.
- The driver's door is not closed.
- The driver is not wearing the seat belt.

If any of the conditions above are detected when the brake hold system is enabled, the system will turn off and the brake hold operated indicator light will go off. In addition, if any of the conditions are detected while the system is holding the brake, a warning buzzer will sound and a message will be shown on the multi-information display. The parking brake will then be set automatically.

### ■ Brake hold function

- If the brake pedal is left released for a period of about 3 minutes after the system has started holding the brake, the parking brake will be set automatically. In this case, a warning buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display.
- To turn the system off while the system is holding the brake, firmly depress the brake pedal and press the button again.
- The brake hold function may not hold the vehicle when the vehicle is on a steep incline. In this situation, it may be necessary for the driver to apply the brakes. The multi-information display will inform the driver of this situation.

### ■ When the parking brake is set automatically while the system is holding the brakes

The parking brake will not be released automatically. Release the parking brake by operating the parking brake switch, making sure that the parking brake indicator light goes off. (→P. 156)

### ■ When there is a malfunction in the system

Warning lights and/or warning messages will turn on or flash. (→P. 630, 639)

### CAUTION

#### ■ When stopped on a slippery road

The system cannot stop the vehicle when the gripping ability of the tires has been exceeded. Do not use the system when stopped on a slippery road.

### NOTICE

#### ■ When parking the vehicle

The brake hold system is not designed for use when parking the vehicle for a long period of time. Turning the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF while the system is holding the brake may release the brake, which would cause the vehicle to move. When operating the “ENGINE START STOP” switch, depress the brake pedal, set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to “P”.

## 2-2. Instrument cluster

# Gauges and meters



The units used on the speedometer and the tachometer gauge display may differ depending on the model/type.

The following gauges, meters and display illuminate when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

### 1 Tachometer

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute

### 2 Multi-information display

→P.168

### 3 Speedometer

Displays the vehicle speed

### 4 Fuel gauge

Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank

### 5 Trip meter and trip meter reset buttons

### 6 Odometer

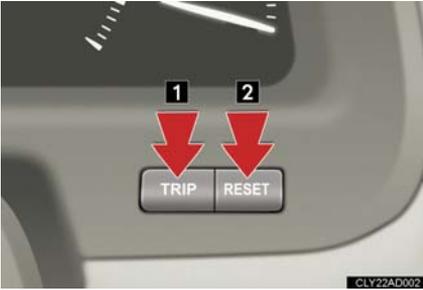
Displays the total distance the vehicle has been driven

### 7 Trip meter

Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters “A” and “B” can be used to record and display different distances independently.

- 8 Instrument panel light control buttons
- 9 Engine coolant temperature gauge  
Displays the engine coolant temperature

### Trip meter and trip meter reset buttons



- 1 Changes the display
- 2 Resets the trip meter currently displayed to "0"

### Instrument panel light control buttons

The brightness of the instrument panel lights can be adjusted.



- 1 Darker
- 2 Brighter

 NOTICE**■ To prevent damage to the engine and its components**

- Do not let the indicator needle of the tachometer enter the red zone, which indicates the maximum engine speed.
- The engine may be overheating if the temperature gauge is in the red zone (H). In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and check the engine after it has cooled completely. (→P. 663)

## 2-2. Instrument cluster

# Indicators and warning lights

The indicator and warning lights on the instrument cluster and center panel inform the driver of the status of the vehicle's various systems.

### ► Instrument cluster



The units used on the speedometer and the tachometer gauge display may differ depending on the model/type.

### ► Center panel (without touch screen)



## ► Center panel (with touch screen)



### ■ Indicators

The indicators inform the driver of the operating state of the vehicle's various systems.



Turn signal indicator  
(→P. 155)



Cruise control indicator  
(→P. 182, 185)



Headlight high beam indicator (→P. 172)



\* "AFS OFF" indicator  
(→P. 173)



Headlight indicator  
(U.S.A.)  
(→P. 172)



\* Slip indicator  
(→P. 210)



Tail light indicator  
(CANADA)  
(→P. 172)



\* Brake hold standby indicator (→P. 159)



Front fog light indicator  
(→P. 175)



\* Brake hold operated indicator (→P. 159)



“ECT PWR” indicator  
(→P. 151)



“ECT SNOW” indicator  
(→P. 151)



(if equipped)

“SPORT” mode indicator  
(→P. 204)



(if equipped)

“COMFORT” mode indicator  
(→P. 204)



(if equipped)

“HEIGHT HIGH” indicator  
(→P. 204)



(U.S.A.)

Parking brake indicator  
(→P. 156)



(CANADA)

Parking brake indicator  
(→P. 156)



(without touch screen)

SRS airbag on-off indicator  
(→P. 118)

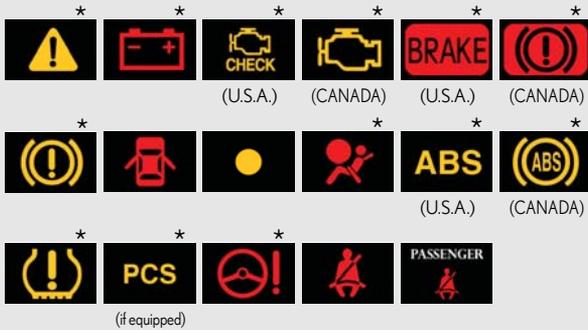


(with touch screen)

SRS airbag on-off indicator  
(→P. 118)

## ■ Warning lights

Warning lights inform the driver of malfunctions in any of the vehicle's systems. (→P. 630)



\*: These lights turn on when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or if the lights do not turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

### ⚠ CAUTION

#### ■ If a safety system warning light does not come on

Should a safety system light such as ABS and the SRS airbag warning light not come on when you start the engine, this could mean that these systems are not available to help protect you in an accident, which could result in death or serious injury. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately if this occurs.

# Multi-information display

The multi-information display presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data, including the current outside air temperature.



- Trip information (→P. 169)

Displays cruising range, fuel consumption and other cruising related information.

- Shift position and shift range (→P. 150)

- Intuitive parking assist-sensor display (if equipped) (→P. 195)

Automatically displayed when using intuitive parking assist-sensor.

- Dynamic radar cruise control display (if equipped) (→P. 185)

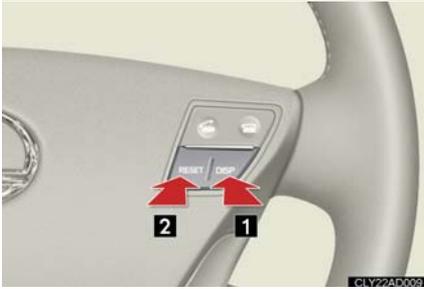
Automatically displayed when using dynamic radar cruise control.

- Warning messages (→P. 639)

Automatically displayed when a malfunction occurs in one of the vehicle's systems.

## Trip information

### ▶ Type A

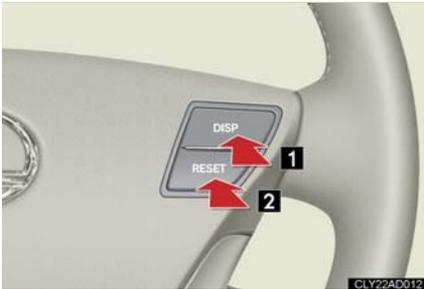


#### 1 "DISP" switch

Display items can be switched by pushing the "DISP" switch.

#### 2 "RESET" switch

### ▶ Type B



### ■ Outside temperature

Displays the outside air temperature

The temperature range that can be displayed is from -40°F (-40°C) to 122°F (50°C).

### ■ Cruising range

Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining

- This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.
- When only a small amount of fuel is added to the tank, the display may not be updated.

### ■ Average fuel consumption

Displays the average fuel consumption since the function was reset

The function can be reset by pressing the “RESET” switch when the average fuel consumption is displayed.

### ■ Current fuel consumption

Displays the current rate of fuel consumption

### ■ Average fuel consumption after refueling

Displays the average fuel consumption since the vehicle was last refueled

### ■ Distance after refueling

Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the vehicle was last refueled

### ■ Elapsed time

Displays the elapsed time since it was last reset

The function can be reset by pressing the “RESET” switch when the elapsed time is displayed.

### ■ Average vehicle speed

Displays the average vehicle speed since the engine was started or the function was reset

The function can be reset by pressing the “RESET” switch when the average vehicle speed is displayed.

### ■ Tire inflation pressure

Displays inflation pressure of each tire. There is no correlation between the order of the displayed values and the tire positions

It may take a few minutes to display the tire inflation pressure after the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode. It may also take a few minutes to display the tire inflation pressure after inflation pressure has been adjusted.

### ■ System check display

After switching the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to IGNITION ON mode, “SYSTEM CHECK” is displayed while system operation is checked. When the system check is complete, the normal screen will return.

### ■ To turn off the background images on the trip information screen

Tire inflation pressure changes with temperature. The displayed values may also be different from the values measured using other gauges.

### ■ Tire inflation pressure

Tire inflation pressure changes with temperature. The displayed values may also be different from the values measured using other gauges.

### ■ Liquid crystal display

Small spots or light spots may appear on the display. This phenomenon is characteristic of liquid crystal displays, and there is no problem to continue using the display.

### ■ Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer

Setting of available languages can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 692)

## NOTICE

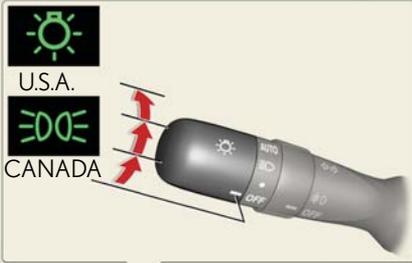
### ■ The multi-information display at low temperatures

Allow the interior of the vehicle to warm up before using the liquid crystal information display. At extremely low temperatures, the information display monitor may respond slowly, and display changes may be delayed.

## 2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

### Headlight switch

The headlights can be operated manually or automatically.

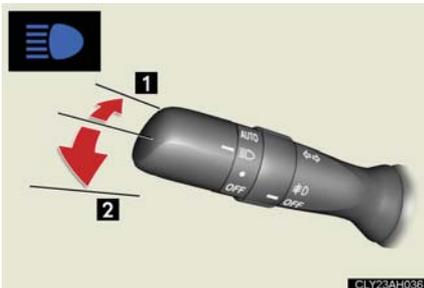


● The side marker, parking, tail, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.

☰ The headlights and all lights listed above turn on.

**AUTO** The headlights, other exterior lights and instrument panel lights turn on and off automatically. (When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode)

### Turning on the high beam headlights



1 With the headlights on, push the lever away from you to turn on the high beams.

Pull the lever toward you to the center position to turn the high beams off.

2 Pull the lever toward you to turn on the high beams.

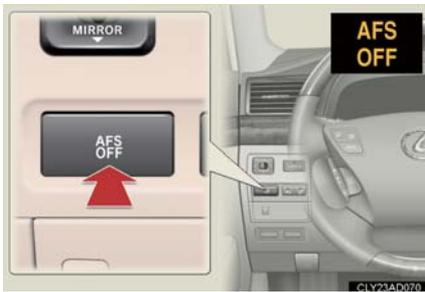
Release to turn them off. You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.

## AFS

AFS (Adaptive Front-lighting System) improves visibility at intersections and on curves by automatically adjusting the direction of light axis of the headlights according to vehicle speed and the degree of the tire angle that are controlled by steering input.

Operates at speeds of 6 mph (10 km/h) or higher.

### ■ Deactivating AFS



On/off

The indicator turns on when the AFS is deactivated.

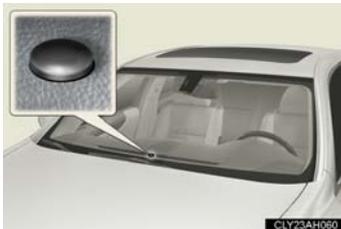
2

When driving

### ■ Daytime running light system

To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers, the headlights turn on automatically (at a reduced intensity) whenever the engine is started and the parking brake is released. Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.

### ■ Headlight control sensor



The sensor may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield.

Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the level of ambient light and may cause the automatic headlight system to malfunction.

### ■ Automatic light off system

- When the headlights come on: The headlights turn off 30 seconds after a door is opened and closed if the “ENGINE START STOP” switch has been switched to ACCESSORY mode or turned OFF. (The lights turn off immediately if  on the key is pressed after all doors are locked.)
- When only the tail lights come on: The tail lights turn off automatically if the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is switched to ACCESSORY mode or turned OFF and driver’s door is opened.

To turn the lights on again, switch to IGNITION ON mode, or turn the light switch OFF once and then back to the ● or  position.

### ■ Automatic headlight leveling system

The level of the headlights is automatically adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle to ensure that the headlights do not interfere with other road users.

### ■ If the “AFS OFF” indicator flashes

It may indicate a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

### ■ Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer

Settings (e.g. light sensor sensitivity) can be changed.  
(Customizable features →P. 692)

#### NOTICE

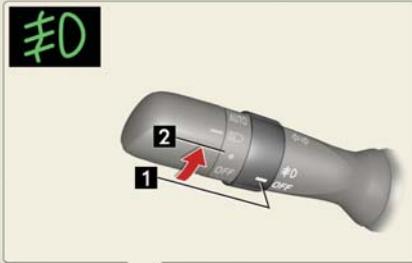
### ■ To prevent the battery from being discharged

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

## 2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

### Fog light switch

The fog lights improve visibility in difficult driving conditions, such as in rain or fog. The fog lights can be turned on only when the headlights are on low beam.



- 1 To turn the front fog lights off
- 2 To turn the front fog lights on

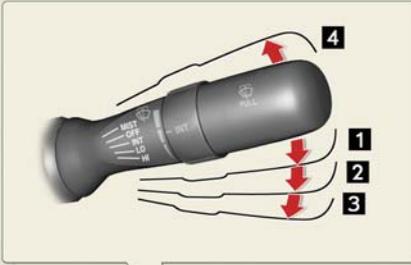


## 2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

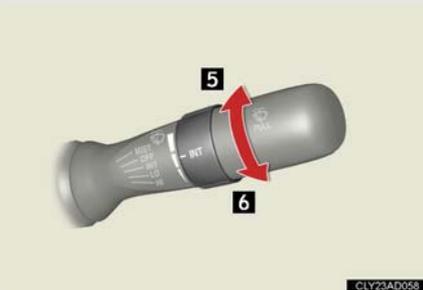
### Windshield wipers and washer

#### ■ Intermittent wiper with interval adjuster (if equipped)

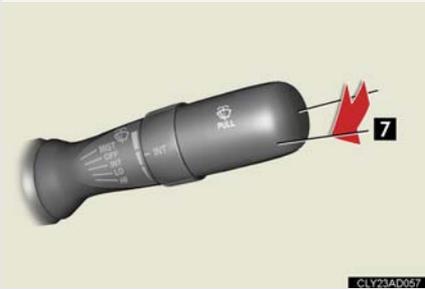
Wiper intervals can be adjusted for intermittent operation (when "INT" is selected).



- 1 Intermittent windshield wiper operation
- 2 Low speed windshield wiper operation
- 3 High speed windshield wiper operation
- 4 Temporary operation



- 5 Intermittent windshield wiper interval adjustment (increase)
- 6 Intermittent windshield wiper interval adjustment (decrease)

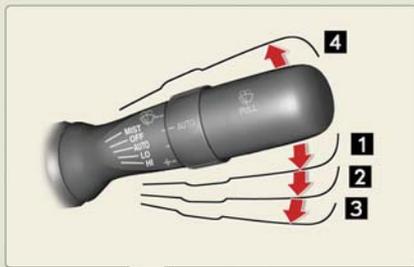


### 7 Wash/wipe operation

Wipers operate automatically. (After operating several times, the wipers operate one more time after a short delay to prevent dripping.)

### ■ Rain-sensing windshield wipers (if equipped)

With "AUTO" selected, the wipers will operate automatically when the sensor detects falling rain. The system automatically adjusts wiper timing in accordance with rain volume and vehicle speed.



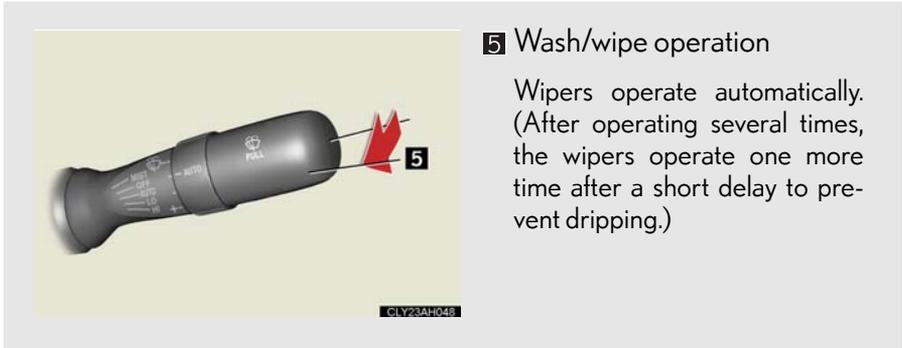
### 1 Rain-sensing wiper operation

### 2 Low speed wiper operation

### 3 High speed wiper operation

### 4 Temporary operation





### 5 Wash/wipe operation

Wipers operate automatically. (After operating several times, the wipers operate one more time after a short delay to prevent dripping.)

### ■ The windshield wiper and washer can be operated when

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

### ■ Effects of vehicle speed on wiper operation

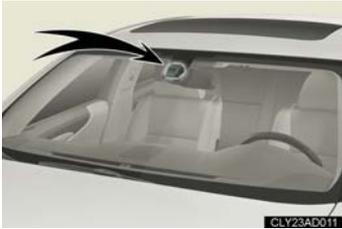
Vehicle speed affects the following even when the wipers are not in “AUTO” mode.

- Intermittent wiper interval (“INT” mode)
- Wiper operation when the washer is being used (delay until drip prevention wiper sweep occurs)

With “LO” selected, wiper operation will be switched from low speed to intermittent wiper operation only when the vehicle is stationary.

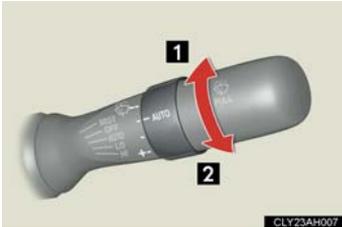
(However, the mode cannot be switched when the adjustment dial for the intermittent wiper interval or sensor sensitivity is set to the lowest position.)

### ■ “AUTO” mode (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)



The raindrop sensor judges the amount of raindrops.

An optical sensor is adopted. It may not operate properly when sunlight from the rising or setting of the sun intermittently strikes the windshield, or if bugs etc. are present on the windshield.



The sensitivity of sensor can be adjusted by turning the knob.

1 Decreases the sensitivity (-)

2 Increases the sensitivity (+)

If the wiper switch is turned to “AUTO” position while the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the wiper will operate once to show that “AUTO” mode is activated.

### ■ If no windshield washer fluid sprays

Check that the washer nozzles are not blocked and if there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

### ■ Headlight cleaner linked operation (if equipped on headlight cleaner)

When the windshield washer is operated with the headlights on, the headlight cleaner will operate once.

## ⚠ CAUTION

### ■ Caution regarding the use of windshield wipers in “AUTO” mode

The windshield wipers may operate unexpectedly if the sensor is touched or the windshield is subject to vibration in “AUTO” mode. Take care that your fingers or anything else do not become caught in the windshield wipers.

 NOTICE

■ **When the windshield is dry**

Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the windshield.

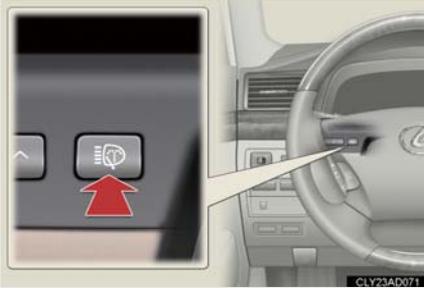
■ **When the washer fluid tank is empty**

Damage to the washer fluid pump may be caused if the lever is pulled toward you and held continually.

## 2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

### Headlight cleaner switch (if equipped)

Washer fluid can be sprayed on the headlights.



Press the switch to clean the headlights.

2

When driving

#### ■ The headlight cleaner can be operated when

When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode and the headlight switch is turned on.

#### ■ Windshield washer linked operation

When the windshield washer is operated with the “ENGINE START STOP” switch in IGNITION ON mode and the headlights on, the headlight cleaner will operate once. (→P. 176)

#### NOTICE

#### ■ When the washer fluid tank is empty

Damage to the washer fluid pump may be caused if the switch is pressed continually.

## 2-4. Using other driving systems

### Cruise control (if equipped)

Use the cruise control to maintain a set speed without using the accelerator.



#### ■ Set the vehicle speed



Press the "ON-OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Press the button once more to deactivate the cruise control.



Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed and push the lever down to set the speed.

### ■ Adjusting the speed setting



- 1 Increase speed.
- 2 Decrease speed.

Hold the lever until the desired speed setting is obtained.

Fine adjustment of the set speed can be made by lightly pushing the lever up or down and releasing it.

### ■ Canceling and resuming regular acceleration



- 1 Cancel

Push the lever towards you to cancel cruise control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brakes are applied.

- 2 Resume

To resume cruise control and return to the set speed, push the lever up.

Resuming is available when vehicle speed is approximately 25 mph (40 km/h) or more.

### ■ Cruise control can be set when

- The shift lever is in "D" or the "4", "5", "6", "7" or "8" range of "S" position.
- Vehicle speed is between approximately 25 mph (40 km/h) and 125 mph (200 km/h).

### ■ Accelerating

The vehicle can be accelerated normally.

### ■ Automatic cruise control cancellation

The cruise control will stop maintaining the vehicle speed in any of the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed falls more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below the preset vehicle speed.  
At this time, the memorized set speed is not retained.
- Actual vehicle speed is below approximately 25 mph (40km/h).
- VSC is activated.

### ■ If the cruise control indicator light flashes

Press the "ON-OFF" button once to deactivate the system, and then press the button again to reactivate the system.

If the cruise control speed cannot be set or if the cruise control cancels immediately after being activated, there may be a malfunction in the cruise control system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

### CAUTION

#### ■ To avoid operating the cruise control by mistake

Keep the "ON-OFF" button off when not in use.

#### ■ Situations unsuitable for cruise control

Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations.

Doing so may result in control of the vehicle being lost and could cause serious or fatal accident.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On winding roads
- On steep hills

Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.

## 2-4. Using other driving systems

### Dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped)

Dynamic radar cruise control supplements conventional cruise control with a vehicle-to-vehicle distance control. In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates or decelerates in order to maintain a set following distance from vehicles ahead.



#### ■ Set the vehicle speed



Press the "ON-OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Press the button once more to deactivate the cruise control.

Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed and push the lever down to set the speed.

### Selecting conventional constant speed control mode



1 Press the “ON-OFF” button to activate the cruise control.

Press the button once more to deactivate the cruise control.

2 Switch to constant speed control mode.

(Push the lever away from you and hold for approximately one second.)

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is always reset when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is switched to IGNITION ON mode.

### ■ Adjusting the speed setting



1 Increase speed.

2 Decrease speed.

Hold the lever until the desired speed setting is displayed.

Fine adjustment of the set speed can be made by lightly pushing the lever up or down and releasing it.

## ■ Canceling and resuming the speed setting



### 1 Cancel

Push the lever towards you to cancel cruise control.

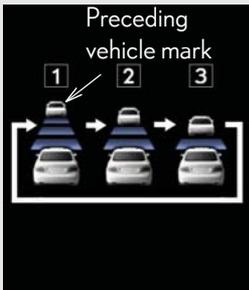
The setting is also canceled when the brakes are applied.

### 2 Resume

To resume cruise control and return to the set speed, push the lever up.

Resuming is available when vehicle speed is approximately 28 mph (45 km/h) or more.

## ■ Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance



Each press of the switch changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance

### 1 Long

### 2 Medium

### 3 Short

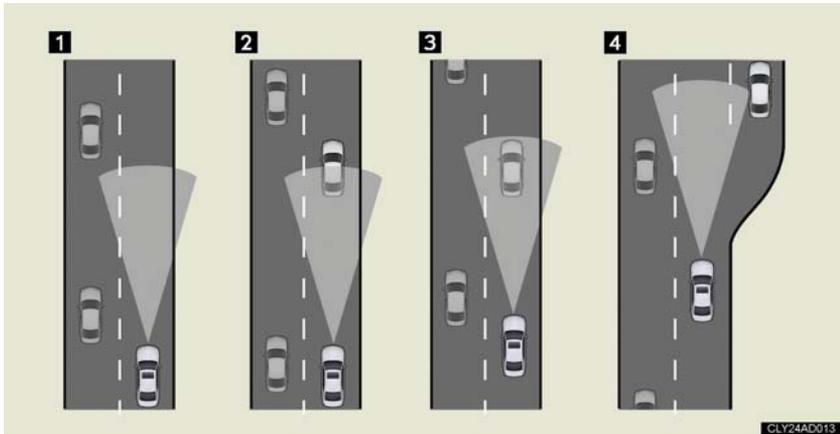
The vehicle-to-vehicle distance is set automatically to the long mode when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is switched to IGNITION ON mode.

A mark will be displayed to indicate the presence of the vehicle if a vehicle is running ahead of you.

## Driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

This mode employs a radar sensor to detect the presence of vehicles within approximately 400 ft. (120 m) ahead and to judge the distance between your vehicle and those vehicles.

Note that vehicle-to-vehicle distance will close in when traveling on long downhill slopes.



### 1 Example of constant speed cruising

When there are no vehicles ahead

The vehicle travels at the speed set by the driver. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can also be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch.

### 2 Example of deceleration cruising

When the vehicle ahead is driving slower than the set speed

When a vehicle is detected running ahead of you, in the same lane, the system automatically decelerates your vehicle. When a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the system applies the brakes. A warning tone warns you if the system cannot decelerate sufficiently to prevent your vehicle from closing on the vehicle ahead.

**3** Example of follow-up cruising

When following a vehicle driving slower than the set speed

The system continues follow-up cruising while adjusting for changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver.

**4** Example of acceleration

When there are no longer vehicles driving slower than the set speed in the lane ahead

When the vehicle ahead of you executes a lane change, the system slowly accelerates until the set vehicle speed is reached. The system then returns to fixed speed cruising.

**Approach warning**

When your vehicle is too close to a vehicle ahead, and sufficient automatic deceleration via the cruise control is not possible, the display will flash and buzzer will sound to alert the driver. An example of this would be if another driver cuts in front of you while you are following a vehicle. Apply the brakes to ensure an appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.

**■ Warning lights and messages for dynamic radar cruise control**

Warning lights and messages are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. (→P. 639)

**■ Switching modes**

The mode cannot be switched to constant speed control mode if vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode has been used. The mode also cannot be switched from constant speed control to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode. Turn the system off by pressing the "ON-OFF" button, and turn it on again.

**■ The dynamic radar cruise can be set when**

- The shift lever is in "D" or the "4", "5", "6", "7" or "8" range of "S" position.
- Vehicle speed is between approximately 27 mph (43 km/h) and 87 mph (139 km/h).

**■ Accelerating**

The vehicle can be accelerated normally.

### ■ Automatically canceling vehicle-to-vehicle distance control

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled in the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed falls below 25 mph (40 km/h)
- VSC is activated
- The sensor cannot operate correctly because it is covered in some way.
- The windshield wipers are operating at high speed.
- The driving mode select switch is set to snow mode.

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled for any other reason, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

### ■ Automatic cancelation of constant speed control

The cruise control will stop maintaining the vehicle speed in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed is more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below the preset vehicle speed.  
At this time, the memorized set speed is not retained.
- Actual vehicle speed falls below 25 mph (40 km/h).
- VSC is activated.

### ■ Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings

Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 50 mph (80 km/h). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed.

Distance options	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance
Long	Approximately 164 ft. (50 m)
Medium	Approximately 132 ft. (40 m)
Short	Approximately 100 ft. (30 m)

### ■ Radar sensor and grille

Always keep the sensor and grille clean to ensure that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control operates properly. (Some obstructions, such as snow, ice or plastic objects, cannot be detected by the obstruction sensor.)

Dynamic radar cruise control is canceled if an obstruction is detected.



Radar sensor

### ■ Approach warning

In the following instances, there is a possibility that the warnings will not occur:

- When the speed of the vehicle ahead matches or exceeds your vehicle's speed
- When the vehicle ahead is traveling at an extremely slow speed
- Immediately after the cruise control speed has been set
- At the instant the accelerator is applied

### ■ Certification

- ▶ For vehicles sold in U.S.A.

#### FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

#### FCC RF exposure information

This device complies with the FCC RF exposure requirements.

- ▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

Operation is subject to the following two conditions;

- (1) This device may not cause interference, and
- (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

### CAUTION

#### ■ Before using dynamic radar cruise control

Do not overly rely on vehicle-to-vehicle distance control.

Be aware of the set vehicle speed. If automatic deceleration/acceleration is not appropriate, adjust the vehicle speed, as well as the distance between your vehicle and vehicles ahead by applying the brakes etc.

#### ■ To avoid operating dynamic radar cruise control by mistake

Keep the "ON-OFF" button off when not in use.

 **CAUTION**
**■ Situations unsuitable for dynamic radar cruise control**

Do not use dynamic radar cruise control in any of the following situations. Doing so may result in inappropriate control of speed and could cause serious or fatal accident.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep downhills, or where there are sudden changes between sharp up and down gradients  
Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- At entrances to expressways
- When weather conditions are bad enough that they may prevent the sensors from functioning correctly (fog, snow, sandstorm, etc.)
- When the approach warning buzzer can be heard often

**■ When the radar sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead**

Apply the brakes as necessary when any of the following types of vehicles are in front of you.

As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the approach warning (→P. 189) will not be activated, and an accident may result.

- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles traveling at low speeds
- Vehicles that are not moving
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board etc.)
- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane

### CAUTION

#### ■ Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control may not function correctly

Apply the brakes as necessary in the following conditions as the radar sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, and an accident may result:

- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the functioning of the radar sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the trunk etc.)
- When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow
- When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable
- When the vehicle ahead of you decelerates suddenly

#### ■ To ensure the radar sensor functions correctly

Do not do the following to the sensor or grille as doing so may cause the sensor not to function correctly and could result in an accident:

- Stick or attach anything to it
- Leave it dirty
- Disassemble, subject it to strong shocks
- Modify or paint it
- Replace it with a non-genuine part

#### ■ Handling the radar sensor

Observe the following to ensure the cruise control system can function effectively:

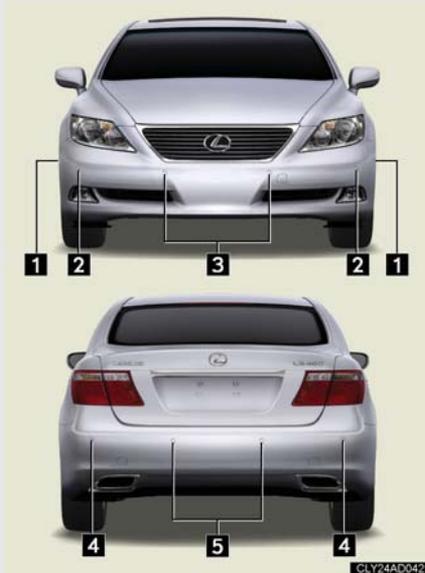
- Keep the sensor and front grille clean at all times.  
Clean the sensor and front grille with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.
- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.  
If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area is subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by a Lexus dealer.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille or surrounding area.
- Do not modify or paint the sensor and grille.

## 2-4. Using other driving systems

### Intuitive parking assist-sensor (if equipped)

The distance to obstacles measured by the sensors is communicated via the multi-information display and a buzzer when parallel parking or maneuvering into a garage. Always check the surrounding area when using this system.

#### ■ Types of sensors



- 1 Front side sensors
- 2 Front corner sensors
- 3 Front center sensors
- 4 Rear corner sensors
- 5 Rear center sensors

#### ■ Intuitive parking assist switch



#### On/off

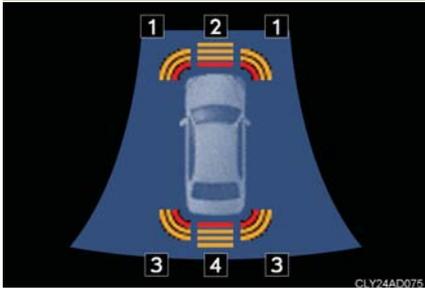
When on, the indicator light comes on and the buzzer sounds to inform the driver that the system is operational.

Press the button to switch the on/off mode.

## Display

When the sensors detect an obstacle, the graphic is shown on the multi-information display and touch screen (if equipped) according to position and distance to the obstacle.

### ■ Multi-information display



- 1 Front side sensors and front corner sensors operation
- 2 Front center sensors operation
- 3 Rear corner sensors operation
- 4 Rear center sensors operation

### ■ Touchscreen (if equipped)



When the vehicle is moving forward

The graphic is automatically displayed when an obstacle is detected. The screen can be set so that the graphic is not displayed. (→P. 201)



When the vehicle is moving backward

A simplified image is displayed on the right upper corner when an obstacle is detected.

## The distance display and buzzer

When a sensor detects an obstacle, the direction of and the approximate distance to the obstacle are displayed and the buzzer sounds.

### Center sensors

Level	1	2	3	4
Display example of front center sensor				
Buzzer	Slow	Medium	Fast	Continuous

2

When driving

### Corner sensors and side sensors

Level	1	2	3	4
Display example of front right sensor	-			
Buzzer	-	Medium	Fast	Continuous

■ Detection level and approximate distance to an obstacle

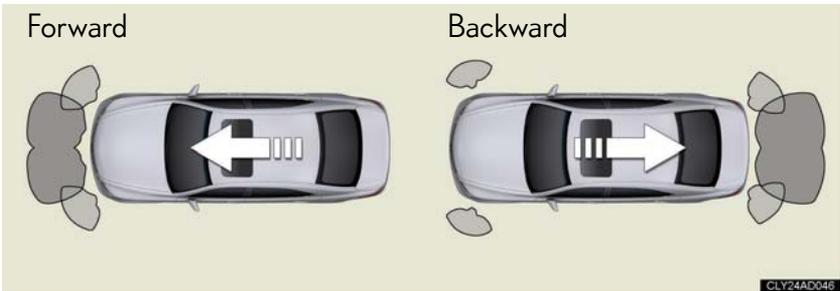
Level	1	2	3	4
Front side sensors	-	1.5 to 11 ft. (50 to 37.5 cm)	11 to 1.0 ft. (37.5 to 30 cm)	1.0 ft. (30 cm) or less
Front corner sensors	-	1.8 to 11 ft. (60 to 37.5 cm)	11 to 1.0 ft. (37.5 to 30 cm)	1.0 ft. (30 cm) or less
Front center sensors	3.0 to 1.5 ft. (100 to 50 cm)	1.5 to 11 ft. (50 to 37.5 cm)	11 to 1.0 ft. (37.5 to 30 cm)	1.0 ft. (30 cm) or less
Rear corner sensors	-	1.8 to 11 ft. (60 to 37.5 cm)	11 to 0.8 ft. (37.5 to 25 cm)	0.8 ft. (25 cm) or less
Rear center sensors	4.5 to 2.0 ft. (150 to 60 cm)	2.0 to 1.4 ft. (60 to 45 cm)	1.4 to 1.1 ft. (45 to 35 cm)	1.1 ft. (35 cm) or less

## Sensors that operate and detection range

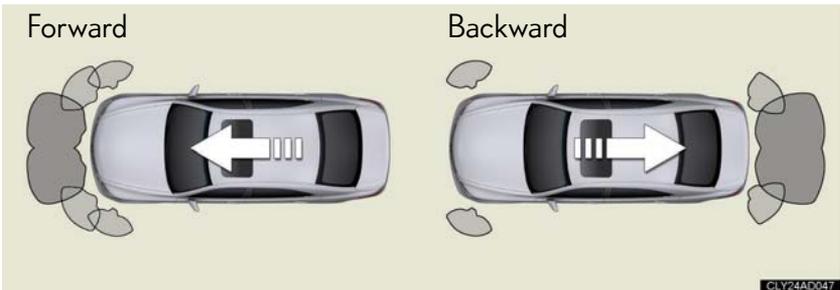
The following diagrams show the sensor detection range. Note that sensors may not be able to detect obstacles that are extremely close to the vehicle.

### ■ Sensors that operate

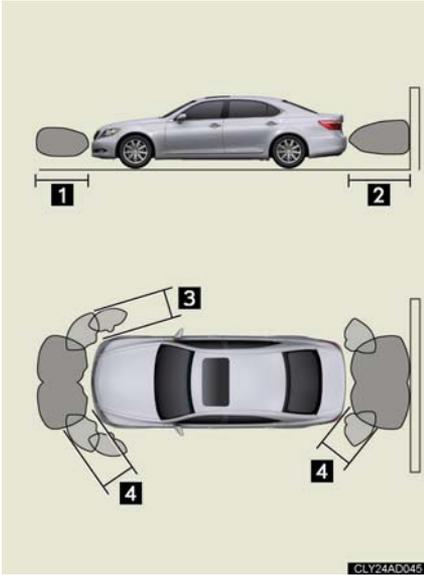
#### ▶ Vehicles with advanced parking guidance system



#### ▶ Vehicles without advanced parking guidance system



■ Detection range of the sensors



- 1 Approx. 3.0 ft. (100 cm)
- 2 Approx. 4.5 ft. (150 cm)
- 3 Approx. 1.5 ft. (50 cm)
- 4 Approx. 2.0 ft. (60 cm)

The diagram shows the detection range of the sensors. Note that the sensors may not be able to detect obstacles that are extremely close to the vehicle.

The range of the sensors may change depending on the shape of the object etc.

## Customization of the intuitive parking assist-sensor

### ► Vehicles with a touch screen

The buzzer volume, display and buzzer timing and display of the graphic on the screen can be customized.

Press  to display the information screen, and touch .

### ■ Buzzer volume

**STEP 1** Touch .

**STEP 2** Touch a switch (from  to ) to adjust the buzzer volume, and touch .

### ■ Display and buzzer timing

**STEP 1** Touch .

**STEP 2** Set the display and buzzer timing for the front and the rear center sensors. When  or  is touched, the triangle marks move between green (turns on at level 1) and orange (turns on at level 2) to select the timing.

### ■ Display of the graphic on the screen when the vehicle is moving forward

Touch . When this switch is touched, display setting switches between on and off.

### ■ Sensor detection information

● Certain vehicle conditions and the surrounding environment may affect the ability of a sensor to correctly detect an obstacle. Particular instances where this may occur are listed below.

- There is dirt, snow or ice on a sensor.
- A sensor is frozen.
- A sensor is covered in any way.
- The vehicle is leaning considerably to one side.
- On an extremely bumpy road, on an incline, on gravel, or on grass
- The vicinity of the vehicle is noisy due to vehicle horns, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other loud noises producing ultrasonic waves.
- There is another vehicle equipped with parking assist sensors in the vicinity.
- A sensor is coated with a sheet of spray or heavy rain.
- The vehicle is equipped with a fender pole or radio antenna.
- Towing eyelets are installed.
- A bumper or sensor receives a strong impact.
- The vehicle is approaching a tall or right-angled curb.
- In harsh sunlight or intense cold weather.
- A non-genuine Lexus suspension (lowered suspension, etc.) is installed.

In addition to the examples above, there are instances in which, because of their shapes, signs and other objects may be judged by a sensor to be closer than they are.

● The shape of the obstacle may prevent a sensor from detecting it. Pay particular attention to the following obstacles:

- Wires, fences, ropes, etc.
- Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb radio waves
- Sharply-angled objects
- Low obstacles
- Tall obstacles with upper sections projecting outwards in the direction of your vehicle

### ■ If the display flashes and a message is displayed

→P. 630, 639

### ■ Certification (Canada only)

This ISM device complies with Canadian ICES-001.

**■ Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer (without a touch screen)**

Settings (e.g. buzzer volume) can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 692)

**⚠ CAUTION****■ Caution when using the intuitive parking assist-sensor**

Observe the following precautions.

Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely and possibly cause an accident.

- Do not use the sensor at speeds in excess of 6 mph (10 km/h).
- Do not attach any accessories within the sensor range.

**⚠ NOTICE****■ Notes when washing the vehicle**

Do not apply intensive bursts of water or steam to the sensor area.  
Doing so may result in the sensor malfunctioning.

## 2-4. Using other driving systems

### Electronically modulated air suspension (if equipped)

The vehicle adjusts the damping of the shock absorbers and maintains vehicle height automatically in response to driving conditions to help provide enhanced driving comfort and vehicle control.

#### ■ Vehicle height adjustment

The vehicle's height is maintained at the selected level regardless of the number of occupants and luggage weight.



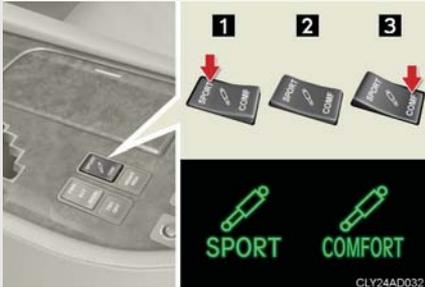
Turn the "HEIGHT HIGH" switch on.

The indicator light comes on.

Press the switch once more to cancel the high mode.

#### ■ Damping mode selection

You can select the damping mode of the shock absorbers.



**1** Sport  
The indicator light comes on.

**2** Normal

**3** Comfort  
The indicator light comes on.

#### ■ Operating sound of the air suspension compressor

When the vehicle height is lowered, such as when entering or loading the vehicle, or high mode is selected, the compressor may operate and a whirring sound may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

 CAUTION

■ Be sure to stop the engine in the following situations in order to stop operation of the electronically modulated air suspension:

- The vehicle is parked on a curb.
- Any of the wheels is stuck in a ditch.
- It is necessary to jack up the vehicle.
- It is necessary to tow the vehicle with part of it lifted.

If the "ENGINE START STOP" switch remains in IGNITION ON mode, the vehicle height may change, resulting in an accidental damage.

## 2-4. Using other driving systems

### Rear view monitor system (if equipped)

The rear view monitor system assists the driver by displaying an image of the area behind the vehicle. The image is displayed in reverse on the screen. This reversed image is a similar image to the one on the inside rear view mirror.

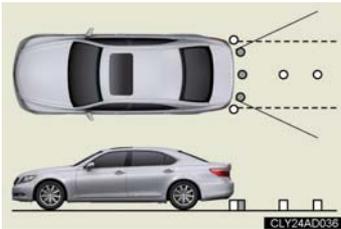
For the advanced parking guidance system, refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.



The rear view image is displayed when the shift lever is in the “R” position.

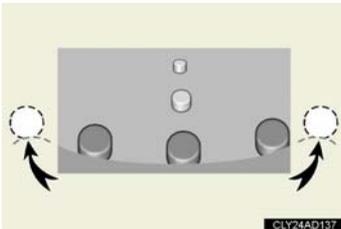
If the shift lever is shifted out of R, the screen returns to the previous one.

#### ■ Displayed area



The area covered by the camera is limited. Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper cannot be seen on the screen.

The area displayed on the screen may vary according to vehicle orientation or road conditions.



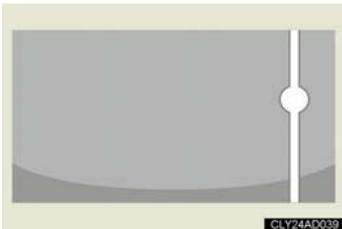
### ■ Rear view monitor system camera



In the following cases, it may become difficult to see the images on the screen, even when the system is functioning correctly:

- The vehicle is in a dark area, such as at night.
- The temperature near the lens is extremely high or low.
- Water droplets are on the camera lens or humidity is high, such as when it rains.
- Foreign matter, such as snow or mud, adheres to the camera lens.
- The sun or headlights are shining directly into the camera lens.

### ■ Smear effect



If a bright light, such as sunlight reflected off the vehicle body, is picked up by the camera, a smear effect\* characteristic to the camera may occur.

\*: Smear effect — A phenomenon that occurs when a bright light is picked up by the camera; when transmitted by the camera, the light source appears to have a vertical streak above and below it.

### CAUTION

- **When using the rear view monitor system, observe the following precautions to avoid an accident that could result in death or serious injuries:**
  - Never depend solely on the monitor system when reversing.
  - Always check visually and with the mirrors to confirm your intended path is clear.
  - Depicted distances between objects and flat surfaces differ from actual distances.
  - Do not use the system if the trunk is open.
- **Conditions which may affect the rear view monitor system**
  - If the back of the vehicle has been hit, the camera's position and mounting angle may have changed. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
  - Rapid temperature changes, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, may cause the system to function abnormally.
  - If the camera lens is dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. Rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If extremely dirty, wash with a mild cleanser and rinse.
  - The displayed image may be darker and moving images may be slightly distorted when the system is cold.

# Driving assist systems

To help enhance driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.

### ■ ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)

Helps to prevent wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface

### ■ Brake assist

Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed, when the system detects a panic stop situation

### ■ VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)

Helps the driver to control skidding when swerving suddenly or turning on slippery road surfaces

### ■ TRAC (Traction Control)

Maintains drive power and prevents the rear wheels from spinning when starting the vehicle or accelerating on slippery roads

### ■ Hill-start assist control

Prevents the vehicle from rolling backwards when starting on an incline or slippery slope

### ■ VGRS (Variable Gear Ratio Steering) (if equipped)

Adjusts the wheel turning angle in accordance with the vehicle speed and steering wheel movement

### ■ EPS (Electric Power Steering)

Employs an electric motor to reduce the amount of effort needed to turn the steering wheel

### ■ VDIM (Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management)

Provides integrated control of the ABS, brake assist, TRAC, VSC, hill-start assist control, EPS, and VGRS (if equipped) systems

Maintains vehicle stability when swerving on slippery road surfaces by controlling the brakes and engine output, steering assist, and if equipped with VGRS, steering ratio

### ■ PCS (Pre-Collision System) (if equipped)

→P. 215, 218

## When the VSC/TRAC/hill-start assist control systems are operating



If the vehicle is in danger of slipping, rolling backward when starting on an incline, or if the rear wheels spin, the slip indicator light flashes to indicate that the VSC/TRAC/hill-start assist control systems have been engaged.

A buzzer (intermittent) sounds to indicate that VSC is operating.

The stop lights and high mounted stoplight turn on when the hill-start assist control system is operating.

The slip indicator light flashes as well when ABS is operating.

## Disabling TRAC and/or VSC

If the vehicle gets stuck in fresh snow or mud, TRAC and VSC may reduce power from the engine to the wheels. You may need to turn the system off to enable you to rock the vehicle in order to free it.



### ● Turning off TRAC

Quickly press and release the switch to turn off TRAC.

The slip indicator light should come on.

Press the switch again to turn the system back on.

### ● Turning off TRAC and VSC

Press and hold the switch for more than 3 seconds while the vehicle is stopped to turn off TRAC and VSC.

The slip indicator light will come on and message will be shown on the multi-information display.

Press the switch again to turn the system back on.

### ■ Automatic reactivation of TRAC and VSC

Turning the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF after turning off the TRAC and VSC systems will automatically re-enable them.

### ■ Automatic TRAC reactivation

If only the TRAC system is turned off, the TRAC system will turn on when vehicle speed increases.

### ■ Automatic TRAC/VSC reactivation

If the TRAC/VSC systems are turned off, the systems will not turn on even when vehicle speed increases.

### ■ Sounds and vibrations caused by the ABS, brake assist, VSC, TRAC, hill-start assist control and VGRS systems

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in any of these systems.

- Any of the following conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. None of these indicates that a malfunction has occurred.

- Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
- A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.

### ■ Hill-start assist control is operational when

- The shift lever is in the “D” or “S” position.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.

### ■ EPS operation sound

When the steering wheel operates, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

### ■ VGRS is disabled in the following situations

The center position of the steering wheel may change when VGRS is disabled. However, the position will return to normal after VGRS is re-enabled.

- When the steering wheel has been operated for an extended period of time while the vehicle is stopped or is moving very slowly
- When the steering wheel has been held fully to the left or right
- When the battery is low or the voltage temporarily drops
- After the engine is started at lower than -22°F (-30°C).

### ■ Reduced effectiveness of EPS

The effectiveness of EPS is reduced to prevent the system from overheating when there is frequent steering input over an extended period of time. The steering wheel may feel heavy as a result. Should this occur, refrain from excessive steering input or stop the vehicle and turn the engine off. The system should return to normal within 10 minutes.

### CAUTION

#### ■ The ABS does not operate effectively when

- The limits of tire gripping performance have been exceeded.
- The vehicle hydroplanes while driving at high speed on a wet or slick road.

#### ■ Stopping distance when the ABS is operating will exceed that of normal conditions

The ABS is not designed to shorten the vehicle's stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you in the following situations:

- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads
- When driving with tire chains
- When driving over bumps in the road
- When driving over roads with potholes or roads with uneven roads

#### ■ TRAC may not operate effectively when

Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the TRAC system is operating.

Do not drive the vehicle in conditions where stability and power may be lost.

#### ■ If hill-start assist control does not operate effectively

The hill-start assist control may not operate effectively on steep inclines and roads covered in ice.

### CAUTION

#### ■ When the VSC is activated

The slip indicator light flashes and a warning buzzer sounds. Always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident. Exercise particular care when the indicator light flashes and a buzzer sounds.

#### ■ When TRAC and VSC are off

Be especially careful and drive at a speed appropriate to the road conditions. As these are systems to ensure vehicle stability and driving force, do not turn off TRAC and VSC unless necessary.

#### ■ Replacing tires

Make sure that all tires are of the same size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressure level.

The ABS and VSC systems will not function correctly if different tires are fitted on the vehicle.

Contact your Lexus dealer for further information when replacing tires or wheels.

#### ■ Handling of tires and suspension

Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the driving assist systems, and may cause the system to malfunction.

## 2-4. Using other driving systems

### Pre-Collision System (if equipped)

Safety systems such as the brakes and seat belts are automatically engaged to lessen impact and injuries to occupants as well as vehicle damage when the radar sensor detects an unavoidable frontal collision.

#### ■ Pre-collision seat belts

The front seat belts are immediately retracted as the effect of the pretensioner is increased (→P. 79) to help prepare the driver and front passenger. In the event of sudden braking or skidding, the system will operate even if no obstacle has been detected.

However, the system will not operate in the event of skidding when the TRAC/VSC systems are disabled.

#### ■ Pre-collision brake assist

Applies greater braking force in relation to how strongly the brake pedal is depressed.

2

When driving

#### Radar sensor



Detects vehicles or other obstacles on or near the road ahead and determines whether a collision is imminent based on the position, speed, and heading of the obstacles.

#### ■ Obstacles not detected

The sensor cannot detect plastic obstacles such as pylons. There may also be occasions when the sensor cannot detect pedestrians, animals, bicycles, motorcycles, trees, or snowdrifts.

### ■ The pre-collision system is operational when

- Pre-collision seat belt:
  - Vehicle speed is above 3 mph (5 km/h).
  - The relative speed difference between your vehicle and another vehicle that is forward of your vehicle, or the speed at your vehicle is approaching an obstacle is greater than 18 mph (30 km/h).
  - The front occupants are wearing a seat belt.
- Pre-collision brake assist:
  - Vehicle speed is above 18 mph (30 km/h).
  - The relative speed difference between your vehicle and another vehicle that is forward of your vehicle, or the speed at your vehicle is approaching an obstacle is greater than 18 mph (30 km/h).
  - The brake pedal is depressed.

### ■ Conditions that may trigger the system even if there is no danger of collision

- When there is an object by the roadside at the entrance to a curve
- When passing an oncoming vehicle on a curve
- When driving over a narrow iron bridge
- When there is a metal object on the road surface
- When driving on an uneven road surface
- When passing an oncoming vehicle on a left-turn
- When your vehicle rapidly closes on the vehicle in front

When the system is activated in the situations described above there is also a possibility that the seat belts will retract quickly and the brakes will be applied with a force greater than normal. When the seat belt is locked in the retracted position, stop the vehicle in a safe place, release the seat belt and refasten.

### ■ When there is a malfunction in the system

Warning lights and/or warning messages will turn on or flash. (→P. 630, 639)

## ■ Certification

- ▶ For vehicles sold in U.S.A.

### FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

### FCC RF exposure information

This device complies with the FCC RF exposure requirements.

- ▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

Operation is subject to the following two conditions;

- (1) This device may not cause interference, and
- (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

## ⚠ CAUTION

### ■ Handling the radar sensor

Observe the following to ensure the pre-collision system can function effectively:

- Keep the sensor and front grille clean at all times.  
Clean the sensor and front grille with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.
- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.  
If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area is subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by a Lexus dealer.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille or surrounding area.
- Do not modify or paint the sensor and grille.

### ■ Limitations of the pre-collision system

Do not rely on the pre-collision system. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and checking for any obstacles or other road hazards.

## 2-4. Using other driving systems

### Pre-Collision System with camera sensor (if equipped)

Safety systems such as the brakes and seat belts are automatically engaged to lessen impact and injuries to occupants as well as vehicle damage when the radar sensor detects an unavoidable frontal collision.

#### ■ Pre-collision seat belts

The front seat belts are immediately retracted as the effect of the pretensioner is increased (→P. 79) to help prepare the driver and front passenger. In the event of sudden braking or skidding, the system will operate even if no obstacle has been detected.

However, the system will not operate in the event of skidding when the TRAC/VSC systems are disabled.

#### ■ Pre-collision brake assist

When there is a high possibility of a frontal collision, the system applies greater braking force in relation to how strongly the brake pedal is depressed

#### ■ Pre-collision braking

When there is a high possibility of a frontal collision, the system warns the driver using a warning light, warning display and buzzer. If the system determines that a collision is unavoidable, the brakes are automatically applied to reduce the collision speed. Pre-collision braking can be disabled using the pre-collision braking off button. (→P. 219)

#### ■ Suspension control

When the system determines that a collision is unavoidable, the suspension switches to "SPORT" mode to help prevent the front of the vehicle from dropping when the brakes are applied suddenly

#### ■ Steering gear control (VGRS)

When the system determines that a collision is unavoidable, the steering gear ratio is changed to help improve the response to steering input

#### ■ Driver monitor system

When the system determines that there is a possibility of a collision, and the driver is not facing forward, PCS warnings are given in advance to warn the driver. In some circumstances, the brakes will be applied briefly to give a sensory warning to the driver (pre-collision alert braking). (→P. 220)

## Disabling pre-collision braking



- 1 Pre-collision braking disabled
- 2 Pre-collision braking enabled

The “PCS” warning light flashes when pre-collision braking is disabled.

## Radar sensor



Detects vehicles or other obstacles on or near the road ahead and determines whether a collision is imminent based on the position, speed, and heading of the obstacles

## Camera sensors



Detect pedestrians and other three-dimensional objects on or near the road ahead together with the radar sensor while the vehicle is moving. When the headlights are on, near-infrared rays are projected to ensure proper detection performance in the night time.

- 1 Camera sensors
- 2 Near-infrared ray transmitters

## Driver monitor sensor



Detects the direction the driver is facing. The system determines whether the driver is facing forward.

### ■ Obstacles not detected

The sensor cannot detect plastic obstacles such as pylons. There may also be occasions when the radar sensor cannot detect pedestrians, animals, bicycles, motorcycles, trees, or snowdrifts.

### ■ A camera sensor cannot detect obstacles in the following situations:

- A camera sensor is directly receiving intense light, such as sunlight.
- Visibility is poor because of bad weather or other reasons.
- The sensor temperature is extremely high.

### ■ The pre-collision system is operational when

- Pre-collision seat belts:
  - Vehicle speed is above 3 mph (5 km/h).
  - The relative speed difference between your vehicle and another vehicle that is forward of your vehicle, or the speed at which your vehicle is approaching an obstacle is greater than 18 mph (30 km/h).
  - The front occupants are wearing a seat belt.
- Pre-collision brake assist:
  - Vehicle speed is above 18 mph (30 km/h).
  - The relative speed difference between your vehicle and another vehicle that is forward of your vehicle, or the speed at which your vehicle is approaching an obstacle is greater than 18 mph (30 km/h).
  - The brake pedal is depressed.
- Pre-collision braking:
  - The pre-collision braking off button is not pressed.
  - Vehicle speed is above 9 mph (15 km/h).
  - The relative speed difference between your vehicle and another vehicle that is forward of your vehicle, or the speed your vehicle is approaching an obstacle is greater than 12 mph (20 km/h).
- Suspension control:
  - Vehicle speed is above 3 mph (5 km/h).
  - The relative speed difference between your vehicle and another vehicle that is forward of your vehicle, or the speed at which your vehicle is approaching an obstacle is greater than 18 mph (30 km/h).

- Steering gear control (VGRS):
  - Vehicle speed is above 18 mph (30 km/h).
  - The relative speed difference between your vehicle and another vehicle that is forward of your vehicle, or the speed at which your vehicle is approaching an obstacle is greater than 18 mph (30 km/h).
- Pre-collision alert braking:
  - The pre-collision braking off button is not pressed.
  - The system determines that the driver is not facing forward.
  - Vehicle speed is above 24 mph (40 km/h).
  - The relative speed difference between your vehicle and another vehicle that is forward of your vehicle, or the speed at which your vehicle is approaching an obstacle is greater than 24 mph (40 km/h).
  - The steering is not being turned.

### ■ Conditions that may trigger the system even if there is no danger of collision

- When there is an object by the roadside at the entrance to a curve
- When passing an oncoming vehicle on a curve
- When driving over a narrow iron bridge
- When there is a metal object on the road surface
- When driving on an uneven road surface
- When passing an oncoming vehicle on a left-turn
- When your vehicle rapidly closes on the vehicle in front
- When your vehicle is skidding with the TRAC/VSC system off

When the system is activated in the situations described above, there is also a possibility that the seat belts will retract quickly and the brakes will be applied with a force greater than normal. When the seat belt is locked in the retracted position, stop the vehicle in a safe place, release the seat belt and refasten it.

### ■ When there is a malfunction in the system

Warning lights and/or warning messages will turn on or flash. (→P. 630, 639)

**■ Certification**

- For vehicles sold in U.S.A.

**FCC WARNING**

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**FCC RF exposure information**

This device complies with the FCC RF exposure requirements.

- For vehicles sold in Canada

Operation is subject to the following two conditions;

- (1) This device may not cause interference, and
- (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

### CAUTION

#### ■ Handling the radar sensor

Observe the following to ensure the pre-collision system can function effectively:

- Keep the sensor and front grille clean at all times.  
Clean the sensor and front grille with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.
- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.  
If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area are subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by a Lexus dealer.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille or surrounding area.
- Do not modify or paint the sensor and grille.

#### ■ Handling the driver monitor sensor

Observe the following to ensure the driver monitor sensor can function effectively.

Failure to do so may result in a malfunction or may prevent the system from correctly determining the direction the driver is facing.

- Do not disassemble, damage, lift or pull on the sensor.
- Do not touch the sensor while driving.
- Do not wet or spill water on the sensor.
- Do not drop anything on or allow anything to hit against the sensor. Do not subject the sensor to an impact.
- Make sure that there are no scratches, dirt or stickers on the side of the sensor that faces the driver.
- Do not place any objects in front of the side of the sensor that faces the driver or cover the sensor.

 **CAUTION****■ Handling the camera sensors**

Observe the following to ensure that the PCS functions correctly:

- Keep the windshield clean at all times.  
PCS effectiveness may be reduced due to the presence of raindrops, condensation, ice or snow on the windshield.
- Do not change the installation position of a camera sensor, or remove and reinstall it. The direction of a camera sensor is precisely adjusted.
- When it is cold, using the heater with air blowing to the feet may allow the upper part of the windshield to fog up. This will have a negative effect on the images. In such a case, use the windshield defogger to provide warm, dry air to the windshield.
- Do not place anything on the dashboard.  
Images reflected on the windshield may reduce the effectiveness of a camera sensor.
- Do not attach a sticker or other items to the windshield near a camera sensor.

**■ Determining the direction the driver is facing**

The direction the driver is facing may not be determined correctly if any of the following conditions exist:

- There is an object between the driver monitor sensor and the driver's face, such as when the sensor is blocked.
- A part of the driver's face is covered.
- The sensor or the driver's face is exposed to intense light such as sunlight.
- The driving posture is improper.

**■ Headlights**

The near-infrared ray transmitter projects strong energy that is not visible. Although the transmitter normally turns off when the vehicle is stopped, never look into the headlights for your safety.

**■ Limitations of the pre-collision system**

Do not rely on the pre-collision system. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and checking for any obstacles or other road hazards.

### NOTICE

#### ■ Camera sensors

Observe the following to ensure that the PCS functions correctly:

- Do not subject a camera sensor to a strong impact or force, and do not disassemble a camera sensor.
- Do not scratch camera lens, or let it get dirty.

#### ■ Headlights

Observe the following to ensure proper near-infrared ray projection:

- Keep the headlights clean at all times.
- The detection performance may deteriorate if the high beams are misaligned or the high beams are inoperative.

#### ■ Precautions for cleaning the driver monitor sensor

- Gently wipe the sensor with a soft cloth to prevent damage.
- Wipe any excess dirt with a cloth dampened with neutral detergent, all liquids having been wringed out of the cloth. After that, wipe again with a dry cloth.
- Do not use benzene, thinner, glass cleaners, wax, etc.

Take notice of the following information about storage precautions, cargo capacity and load.

- Stow cargo and luggage in the trunk whenever possible. Be sure all items are secured in place.
- Be careful to keep the vehicle level. Placing the weight as far forward as possible helps maintain vehicle balance.
- For better fuel economy, do not carry unnecessary weight.

### Capacity and distribution

Cargo capacity depends on the total weight of the occupants.

(Cargo capacity) = (Total load capacity) – (Total weight of occupants)

#### Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit—

- (1) Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs.” on your vehicle’s placard.
- (2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
- (3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
- (4) The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity.

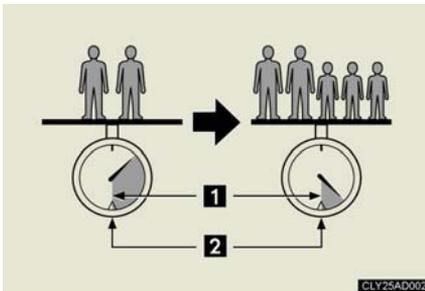
For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400 – 750 (5 × 150) = 650 lbs.)

- (5) Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

(6) If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Lexus does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle. Your vehicle is not designed for trailer towing.

### Example based on your vehicle



- 1 Cargo capacity
- 2 Total load capacity

When 2 people with the combined weight of 366 lb. (166 kg) are riding in your vehicle, which has a total load capacity of 825 lb. (375 kg), the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity will be as follows:

$$825 \text{ lb.} - 366 \text{ lb.} = 459 \text{ lb.} \quad (375 \text{ kg} - 166 \text{ kg} = 209 \text{ kg})$$

In this condition, if 3 more passengers with the combined weight of 388 lb. (176 kg) get on, the available cargo and luggage load will be reduced as follows:

$$459 \text{ lb.} - 388 \text{ lb.} = 71 \text{ lb.} \quad (209 \text{ kg} - 176 \text{ kg} = 33 \text{ kg})$$

As shown in the example above, if the number of occupants increases, the cargo and luggage load will be reduced by an amount that equals the increased weight due to the additional occupants. In other words, if an increase in the number of occupants causes an excess of the total load capacity (combined weight of occupants plus cargo and luggage load), you must reduce the cargo and luggage on your vehicle.

 **CAUTION****■ Things that must not be carried in the trunk**

The following things may cause a fire if loaded in the trunk:

- Receptacles containing gasoline
- Aerosol cans

**■ Storage precautions**

- Do not place anything on the package tray behind the rear seatback. Such items may be thrown about and possibly injure people in the vehicle during sudden braking or in an accident.
- Do not drive with objects on top of the instrument panel. They may interfere with the driver's field of view or move during sharp acceleration or turning, thus impairing the driver's control of the vehicle. In an accident, they may injure the vehicle occupants.
- Secure all items in the occupant compartment, as they may shift and injure someone during an accident or sudden braking.

**■ Capacity and distribution**

- Do not exceed the maximum axle weight rating or the total vehicle weight rating.
- Even if the total load of occupant's weight and the cargo load is less than the total load capacity, do not apply the load unevenly. Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control which may cause death or serious injury.

### Vehicle load limits

Vehicle load limits include total load capacity, seating capacity, towing capacity and cargo capacity.

#### ■ Total load capacity:

##### ▶ 4-seat models

675 lb (305 kg)

##### ▶ 5-seat models

825 lb (375 kg)

Total load capacity means the combined weight of occupants, cargo and luggage.

#### ■ Seating capacity:

##### ▶ 4-seat models

4 occupants (Front 2, Rear 2)

##### ▶ 5-seat models

5 occupants (Front 2, Rear 3)

Seating capacity means the maximum number of occupants whose estimated average weight is 150 lb. (68 kg) per person.

#### ■ Towing capacity

Lexus does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle.

#### ■ Cargo capacity

Cargo capacity may increase or decrease depending on the weight and the number of occupants.

---

#### ■ Total load capacity and seating capacity

These details are also described on the tire and loading information label.  
(→P. 578)

 **CAUTION****■ Overloading the vehicle**

Do not overload the vehicle.

It may not only cause damage to the tires, but also degrade steering and braking ability, resulting in an accident.

# Winter driving tips

Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Always drive the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the prevailing weather conditions.

### ■ Pre-winter preparations

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the prevailing outside temperatures.
  - Engine oil
  - Engine coolant
  - Washer fluid
- Have a service technician inspect the level and specific gravity of battery electrolyte.
- Have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires or purchase a set of tire chains for the rear tires.

Ensure that all tires are the same size and brand, and that chains match the size of the tires.

### ■ Before driving the vehicle

Perform the following according to the driving conditions:

- Do not try to forcibly open a window or move a wiper that is frozen. Pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice. Wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing.
- To ensure proper operation of the climate control system fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air inlet vents in front of the windshield.
- Remove any ice that has accumulated on the vehicle chassis.
- Periodically check for and remove any excess ice or snow that may have accumulated in the wheel well or on the brakes.

### ■ When driving the vehicle

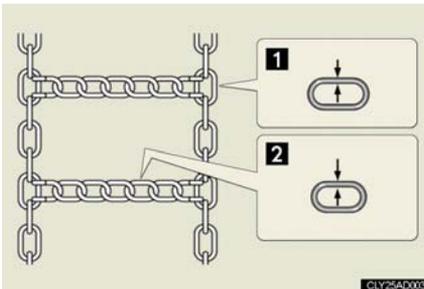
Accelerate the vehicle slowly and drive at a reduced speed suitable to road conditions.

### ■ When parking the vehicle

Park the vehicle and move the shift lever to “P” without setting the parking brake. The parking brake may freeze up, preventing it from being released.

## Selecting snow chains

Use the correct snow chain size when mounting the snow chains. Chain size is regulated for each tire size.



- 1 Side chain  
(0.12 in. [3 mm] in diameter)
- 2 Cross chain  
(0.16 in. [4 mm] in diameter)

## Regulations on the use of snow chains

- Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary according to location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing chains.
- Install the chains on the rear tires.
- Retighten the chains after driving 1/4 - 1/2 mile (0.5 - 1.0 km).

### ■ Snow chain installation

Observe the following precautions when installing and removing chains:

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe location.
- Install tire chains on the rear tires only. Do not install tire chains on front tires.
- Install the tire chains on rear tires as tightly as possible. Retighten chains after driving 1/4 - 1/2 mile (0.5 - 1.0 km).
- Install tire chains following the instructions provided in the accompanying instructions.

### CAUTION

#### ■ Driving with snow tires

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.

Failing to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury.

- Use tires of the size specified for your vehicle.
- Maintain the recommended level of air pressure.
- Do not drive in excess of 75 mph (120 km/h), regardless of the type of snow tires being used.
- Use snow tires on all, not just some wheels.

#### ■ Driving with snow chains

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.

Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit specified for the tire chains being used, or 30 mph (50 km/h), whichever is lower.
- Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
- Avoid sudden turns and braking, as use of chains may adversely affect vehicle handling.
- Slow down sufficiently before entering a curve to ensure that vehicle control is maintained.

 NOTICE**■ Repairing or replacing snow tires**

Request repairs and obtain replacement of snow tires from Lexus dealers or legitimate tire retailers.

This is because the removal and attachment of snow tires affects the operation of the tire air pressure sensor.

**■ Fitting tire chains**

The tire air pressure sensor may not function correctly when tire chains are fitted.

## 2-5. Driving information

### Trailer towing

Lexus does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle. Lexus also does not recommend the installation of a tow hitch or the use of a tow hitch carrier for a wheelchair, scooter, bicycle, etc. Your Lexus is not designed for trailer towing or for the use of tow hitch mounted carriers.

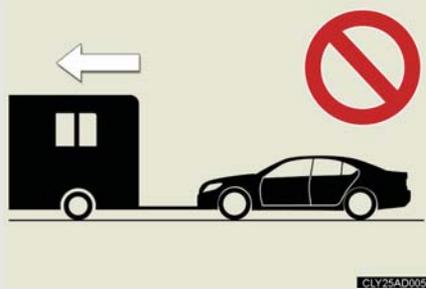


CLY25AD004

## 2-5. Driving information

### Dinghy towing

Your vehicle is not designed to be dinghy towed (with 4 wheels on the ground) behind a motor home.



#### NOTICE

■ **To avoid serious damage to your vehicle**

Do not tow your vehicle with four wheels on the ground.

<b>3-1. Using the touch screen</b> .....	<b>240</b>
Touch screen (without navigation system) .....	240
Setting the touch screen.....	243
<b>3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger</b> .....	<b>248</b>
Front air conditioning system (without touch screen).....	248
Front air conditioning system (touch screen without rear air conditioning system) ....	257
Front air conditioning system (touch screen with rear air conditioning system) ....	266
Rear air conditioning system .....	276
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers .....	283
Windshield wiper de-icer .....	284
<b>3-3. Using the audio system</b> .....	<b>286</b>
Audio system (without touch screen).....	286
Using the radio.....	288
Using the CD player .....	292
Playing back MP3 and WMA discs.....	298
Optimal use of the audio system .....	304
Using the AUX adapter.....	306
Using the steering wheel audio switches.....	307
Audio system (touch screen without navigation system) .....	309
Using the radio .....	312
Using the CD player .....	317
Playing MP3 and WMA discs .....	325
Using the DVD player .....	332
Playing DVD video/audio.....	335
Playing a video CD.....	348
DVD player and DVD video disc information.....	352
Optimal use of the audio/video system.....	356
Using the AUX adapter.....	360
Using the rear seat audio controls .....	361
Using the steering wheel audio switches.....	365
<b>3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system</b> .....	<b>367</b>
Rear seat entertainment system features.....	367
Using the radio .....	376
Using the front DVD player .....	377
Using the rear DVD player .....	378

- Playing an audio
    - CD/CD text ..... 380
  - Playing WMA
    - (front DVD player only)/
    - MP3 discs ..... 381
  - Playing the HDD audio
    - (vehicles with navigation
    - system) ..... 382
  - Playing a DVD
    - video/audio ..... 383
  - Playing a video CD ..... 396
  - DVD player and DVD video
    - disc information ..... 400
  - Using the video mode ..... 409
  - Changing other setting ..... 411
- 3-5. Using the hands-free system**
- (for cellular phone) ..... 413**
  - Hands-free system
    - (for cellular phone) ..... 413
  - Using the Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>
    - phone ..... 418
  - Setting the hands-free system
    - (for cellular phone) ..... 431
- 3-6. Using the interior lights** ..... 457
- Interior lights list ..... 457
  - Interior lights ..... 458
  - Personal lights ..... 458
- 3-7. Using the storage features** ..... 460
- List of storage features ..... 460
  - Glove box ..... 463
  - Coin holder ..... 464
  - Door pockets ..... 465
  - Cup holders ..... 466
  - Console box ..... 468
  - Cool box ..... 470
  - Auxiliary boxes ..... 474
- 3-8. Other interior features** ..... 476
- Sun visors ..... 476
  - Vanity mirror ..... 477
  - Clock ..... 478
  - Outside temperature
    - display ..... 480
  - Ashtrays ..... 481
  - Cigarette lighter ..... 482
  - Power outlet ..... 484
  - Heated steering wheel ..... 487
  - Climate control seats/
    - seat heaters ..... 489
  - Armrest (5-seat models) ..... 493
  - Rear seat relaxation system
    - (4-seat models) ..... 494
  - Retractable table
    - (4-seat models) ..... 496
  - Rear sunshade ..... 498
  - Rear door sunshades ..... 501
  - Trunk storage extension ..... 504
  - Coat hooks ..... 506
  - Floor mat ..... 507
  - Trunk features ..... 508
  - Garage door opener ..... 511
  - Compass ..... 517
  - Lexus Link System ..... 521

### 3-1. Using the touch screen

## Touch screen (without navigation system)

By touching the screen with your finger, you can control the audio system and air conditioning, and adjust the screen display, etc.

Press  to display the "Information" screen.

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".



Button/switch	Page
"CLIMATE"	P. 257, 266
"AUDIO"	P. 309
"INFO" (Displaying the "Information" screen)	P. 240
"DISP" (Adjusting the display)	P. 243
"Telephone"	P. 418
"LEXUS Park Assist"	P. 195
"Screen Setting"	P. 245
"Beep Off"	P. 243
"Adjust Clock"	P. 478

## The initial screen



If the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is set to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the initial screen will be displayed for a few seconds as the system starts up.

### ■ To avoid damaging the touch screen

- Touch the screen lightly with your finger. If there is no response, remove your finger from the screen and try again.
- Remove any dirt on the screen by wiping with a soft cloth. Do not use detergent.

### ■ When using the touch screen

- If the screen is cold, the display may be dark, or the system may seem to be operating slightly slower than normal.
- The screen may seem dark and hard to see when viewed through sunglasses. Change your angle of viewing, adjust the display on the “Display” screen, or remove your sunglasses.

## 3-1. Using the touch screen

# Setting the touch screen

You can change the touch screen to your desired settings.

### Turning off the beep sound

The beep that sounds when a touch screen button is touched can be turned off.

**STEP 1** Press  .



Touch  .

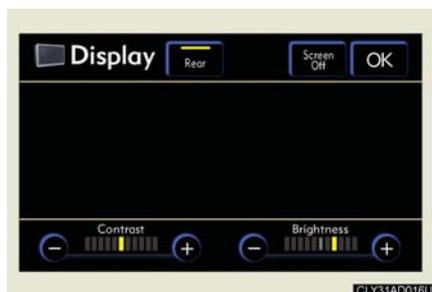
### Adjusting the display

**STEP 1** Press  .

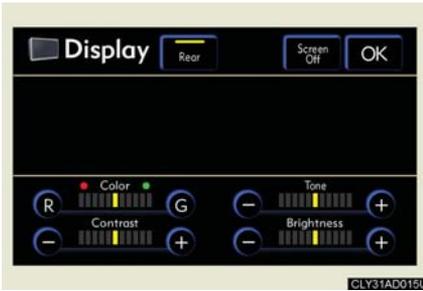
**STEP 2** Adjust the display as desired using  /  and  /  .

If you do not touch the screen for 20 seconds, the system will return to the previous screen.

► With CD mode

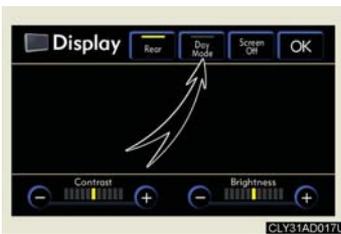


► With DVD mode



"Color"	Red	Green
"Tone"	Lighter	Darker
"Contrast"	Weaker	Stronger
"Brightness"	Darker	Brighter

■ "Day Mode"



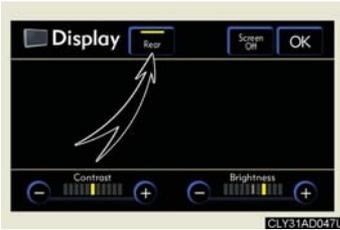
When the headlights are turned on, the screen dims. However, the screen can be switched to "Day Mode".

The screen will stay in "Day Mode" when the headlights are turned on until is touched again.

■ To turn off the picture display

If is touched, the screen display is turned off, and guidance is by voice only.

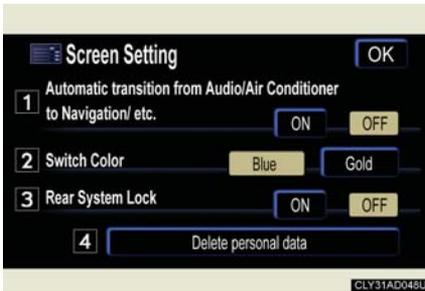
### ■ Opening or closing the rear display (if equipped)



Touching **Rear** opens or closes the rear display.

## Screen settings

The following screen settings can be changed:



- 1 Automatic transition  
20 seconds after audio system use, the system will return the display to the previous screen.
- 2 Switch color  
You can select the switch color.
- 3 Rear system lock (if equipped)  
The operation lock on the rear seat entertainment system can be turned on or off.
- 4 Personal data deletion  
The following personal data is deleted:
  - User selection settings
  - Phone book data
  - Dialed numbers and received calls
  - Speed dial
  - Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> phone data
  - Security code

### ■ Setting automatic transition

**STEP 1** Press  .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  or  on the “Screen Setting” screen.

**STEP 4** Touch  .

### ■ Setting the switch color

**STEP 1** Press  .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  or  on the “Screen Setting” screen.

**STEP 4** Touch  .

### ■ Setting the rear system lock

**STEP 1** Press  .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  or  on the “Screen Setting” screen.

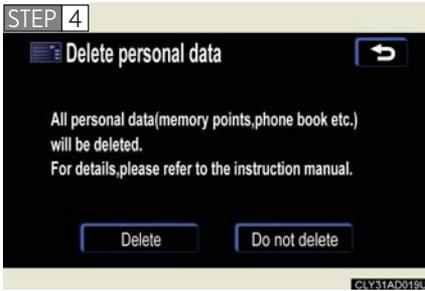
**STEP 4** Touch  .

## ■ To delete personal data

**STEP 1** Press  .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Screen Setting” screen.



Touch  .

Check carefully beforehand, as data cannot be retrieved once deleted.

## ■ When deleting personal data

Data can only be deleted when the vehicle is stopped.

## ■ When selling the vehicle

Be sure to delete both the call history and personal data.

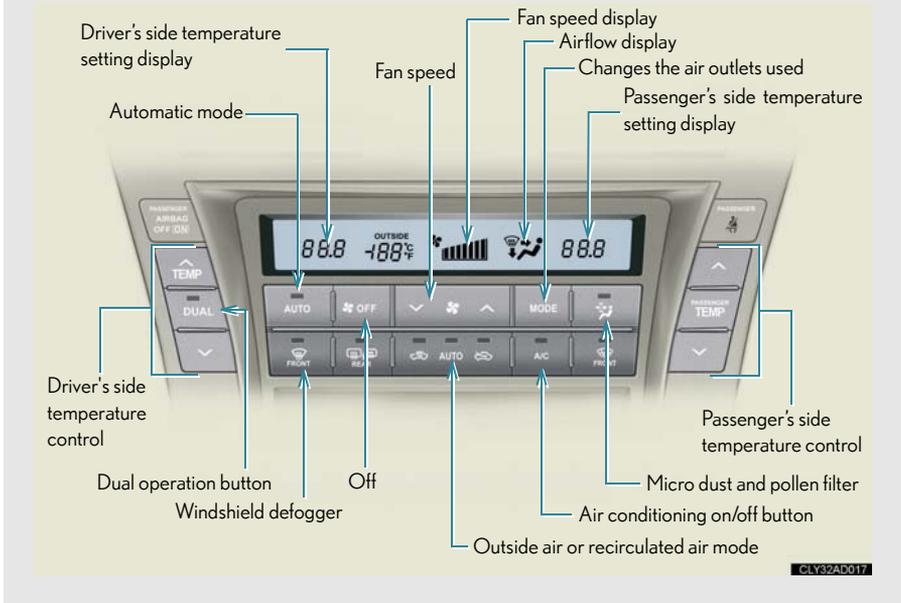
## ■ If you touch

The display returns to the previous screen.

## 3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

### Front air conditioning system (without touch screen)

Airflow and outlets are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.



### Using the automatic mode

**STEP 1** Press .

➔ The air conditioning system will begin to operate. Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

**STEP 2** Press  to switch to automatic air intake mode.

➔ The air conditioning system automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

- STEP 3** Press  $\wedge$  on  to increase the temperature and  $\vee$  to decrease the temperature.
- The temperature for the driver and passenger seats can be set separately.

## Adjusting the settings

### ■ Adjusting the temperature setting

- Press  $\wedge$  on  to increase the temperature and  $\vee$  to decrease the temperature.

The air conditioning system switches between dual and simultaneous modes each time  is pressed.

Dual mode (the indicator on  is on.): The temperature for the left-hand seat and right-hand seat can be adjusted separately. Operating the passenger's side temperature control will enter dual mode.

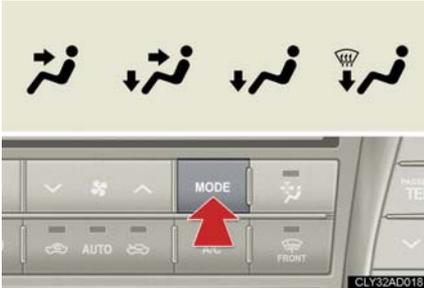
Simultaneous mode (the indicator on  is off.): Only  (driver's side) can be used to adjust the temperature for all seats.

### ■ Adjusting the fan speed

Press  $\wedge$  (increase) or  $\vee$  (decrease) on .

Press  to turn the fan off.

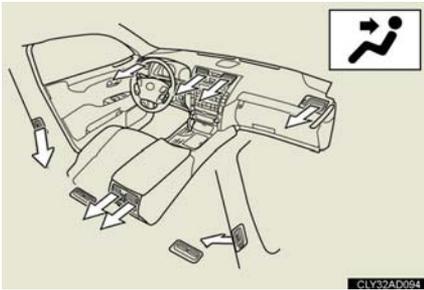
### ■ Changing the air outlets



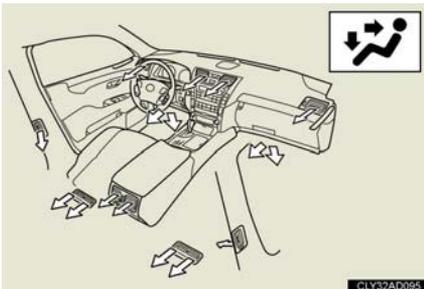
Press  .

The air outlets switch each time the button is pressed.

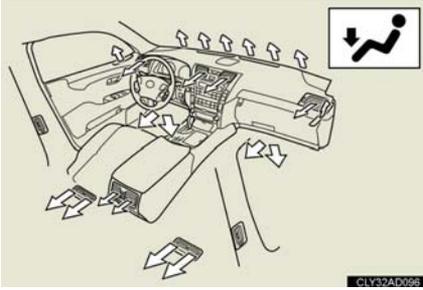
Air flows as shown below according to the mode selected.



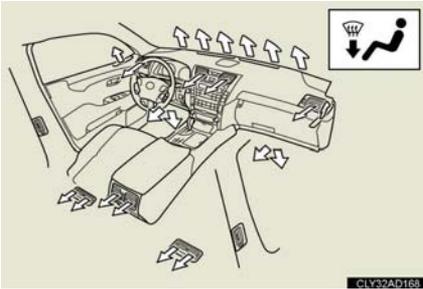
Upper body



Upper body and feet



Feet



Feet and front windshield

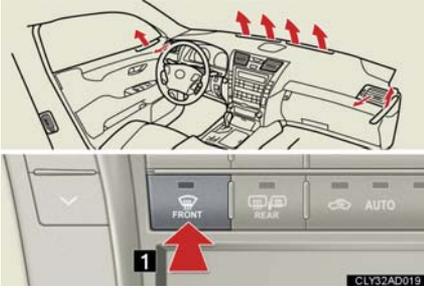
### ■ Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

Press .

The mode switches between (recycles air inside the vehicle), “AUTO” and (introduces air from outside the vehicle) modes each time the button is pressed.

When the air intake control system is switched to automatic mode, it operates automatically.

## Defogging the front windshield



Press .

The air conditioning system control operates automatically.

## Micro dust and pollen filter



Press .

Outside air mode switches to  (recirculated air) mode. Pollen is removed from the air and the air flows to the upper part of the body.

Usually the system will turn off automatically after approximately 3 minutes.

To stop the operation, press  again.

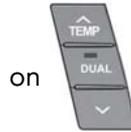
### Adjusting the sensitivity of the air intake control in automatic mode



Press  for 2 or more seconds.



Press  $\wedge$  (increase) or  $\vee$  (decrease)

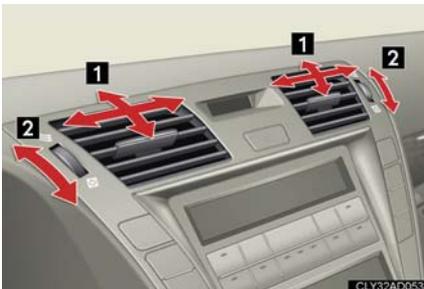


on

From -3 (low) to 3 (high) can be set.

### Adjusting the position and opening and closing the air outlets

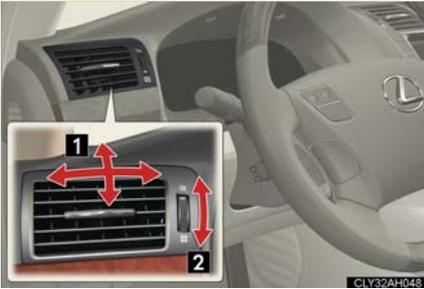
#### ► Front center outlets



- 1** Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
- 2** Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

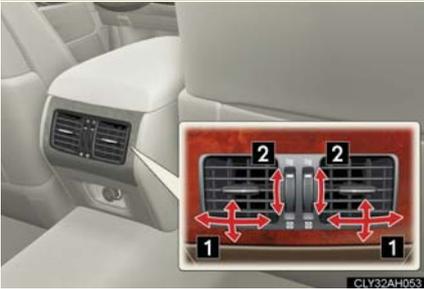
## 3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

### ► Front side outlets



- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
- 2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

### ► Rear center outlets



- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
- 2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

### ► Rear side outlets



- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
- 2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

### ■ Using the automatic mode

Fan speed is adjusted automatically in accordance with the temperature setting and ambient conditions. As a result, the following may occur:

- The system may switch automatically to recirculated mode when the coolest temperature setting is selected in summer.
- Immediately after  is pressed, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow.
- Cool air may flow to the area around the upper body when the heater is on.

### ■ Using the system in recirculated air mode

The windows will fog up more easily if the recirculated air mode is used for an extended period.

### ■ Window defogger feature

Recirculated air mode may automatically switch to  (outside air) mode in situations where the windows need to be defogged.

### ■ When outside temperature approaches 32°F (0°C)

The air conditioning system may not operate even when  is pressed.

### ■ Automatic mode for air intake control

In automatic mode, the system detects exhaust gas and other pollutants and automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

### ■ Micro dust and pollen filter

- In order to prevent the windows from fogging up when the outside air is cold, the following may occur:
  - Outside air mode does not switch to .
  - The air conditioning system operates automatically.
  - The operation cancels after 1 minute.
- In rainy weather, the windows may fog up. Press .

 CAUTION

■ **To prevent the windshield from fogging up**

Do not use  during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.

 NOTICE

■ **To prevent the battery from being discharged**

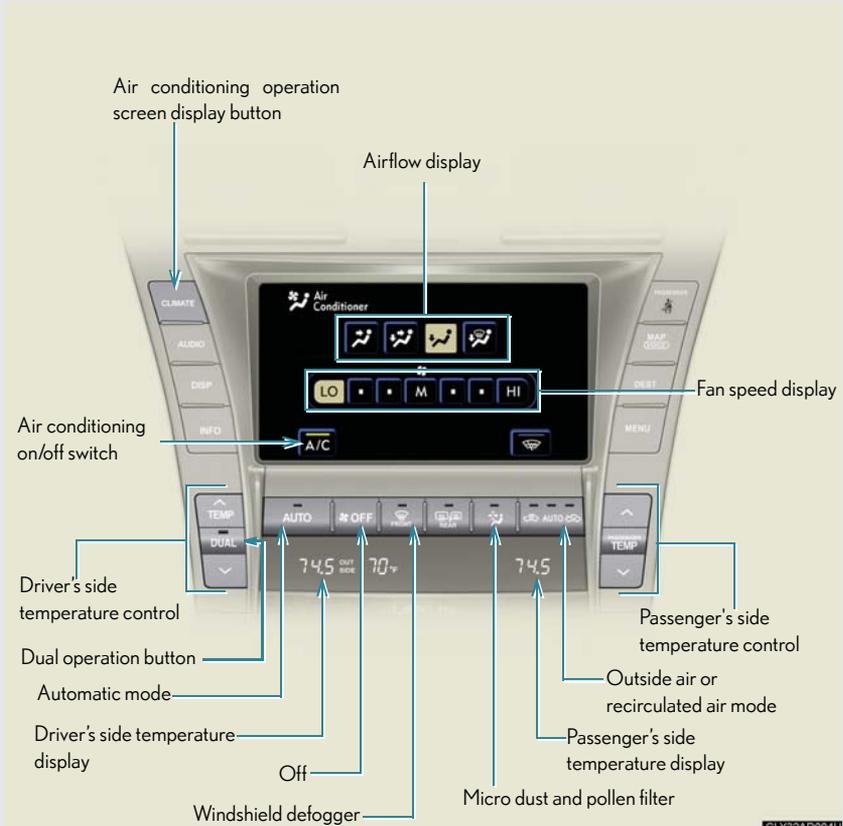
Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

## 3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

### Front air conditioning system (touch screen without rear air conditioning system)

Airflow and outlets are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

Press  to display the air conditioning operation screen.



The above illustration is for a vehicle equipped with the navigation system. The position of  may differ slightly for vehicles not equipped with the navigation system.

### Using the speech command system



Pull  to operate the speech command system. (→“Navigation System Owner’s Manual”)

### Using the automatic mode

**STEP 1** Press  .

➔ The air conditioning system will begin to operate. Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

**STEP 2** Press  to switch to automatic air intake mode.

➔ The air conditioning system automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

**STEP 3** Press  to increase the temperature and  to decrease

the temperature.

The temperature for the driver and passenger seats can be set separately.

## Adjusting the settings

### ■ Adjusting the temperature setting

Press  to increase the temperature and  to decrease the temperature.

The air conditioning system switches between dual and simultaneous modes each time  is pressed.

Dual mode (the indicator on  is on.): The temperature for the left-hand seat and right-hand seat can be adjusted separately. Operating the passenger's side temperature control will enter dual mode.

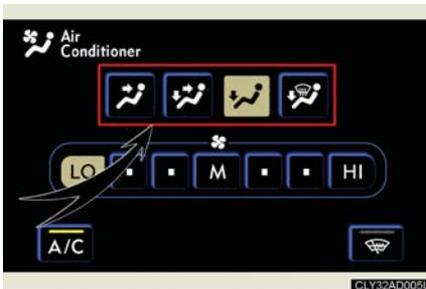
Simultaneous mode (the indicator on  is off.): Only  (driver's side) can be used to adjust the temperature for all seats.

### ■ Adjusting the fan speed

Touch any switch of  (decrease  $\leftrightarrow$  increase) on the operation screen.

Press  to turn the fan off.

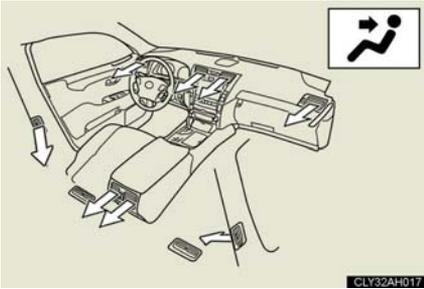
### ■ Changing the air outlets



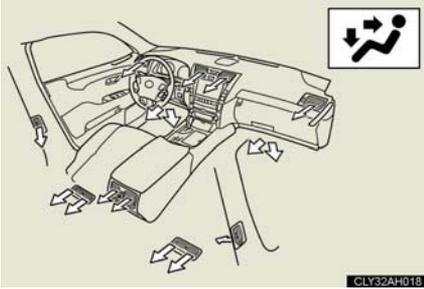
Touch any mode on the operation screen.

### 3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

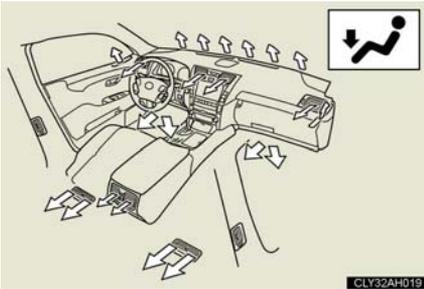
Air flows as shown below according to the mode selected.



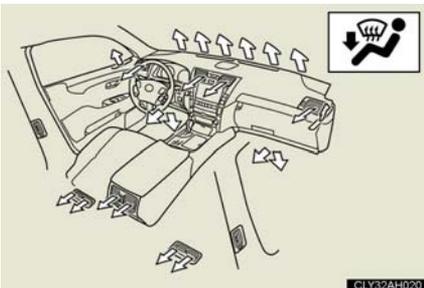
Upper body



Upper body and feet



Feet



Feet and front windshield

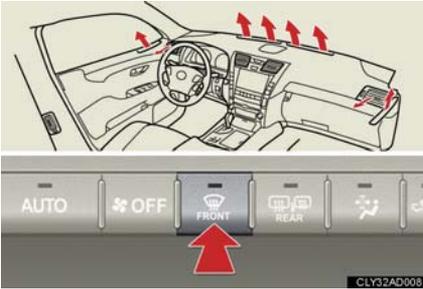
## ■ Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

Press .

The mode switches between  (recycles air inside the vehicle), “AUTO” and  (introduces air from outside the vehicle) modes each time the button is pressed.

When the air intake control system is switched to automatic mode, it operates automatically.

## Defogging the windshield



Press .

The air conditioning system control operates automatically.

## Micro dust and pollen filter



Press .

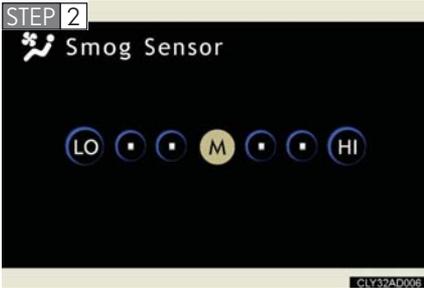
Outside air mode switches to  (recirculated air) mode. Pollen is removed from the air and the air flows to the upper part of the body.

Usually the system will turn off automatically after approximately 3 minutes.

To stop the operation, press  again.

## Adjusting the sensitivity of the air intake control in automatic mode

**STEP 1** Press  until the “Smog Sensor” screen appears while the vehicle is stopped.



Touch any switch of  (lower sensitivity ↔ higher sensitivity) on the operation screen.

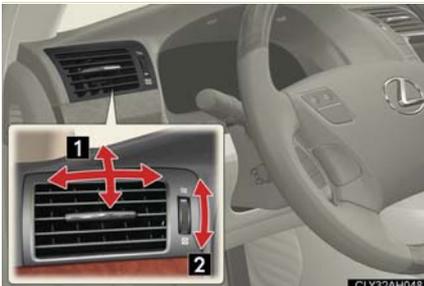
## Adjusting the position and opening and closing the air outlets

### ► Front center outlets



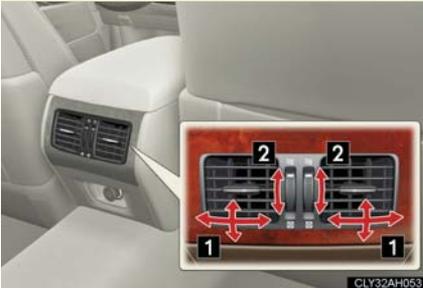
- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
- 2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

### ► Front side outlets



- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
- 2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

► Rear center outlets



- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
- 2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

► Rear side outlets



- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
- 2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

■ Using the automatic mode

Fan speed is adjusted automatically in accordance with the temperature setting and ambient conditions. As a result, the following may occur:

- The system may switch automatically to recirculated mode when the coolest temperature setting is selected in summer.
- Immediately after  is pressed, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow.
- Cool air may flow to the area around the upper body when the heater is on.

### ■ Using the system in recirculated air mode

The windows will fog up more easily if the recirculated air mode is used for an extended period.

### ■ Window defogger feature

Recirculated air mode may automatically switch to  (outside air) mode in situations where the windows need to be defogged.

### ■ When outside temperature approaches 32°F (0°C)

The air conditioning system may not operate even when  is touched.

### ■ Automatic mode for air intake control

In automatic mode, the system detects exhaust gas and other pollutants and automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

When the air conditioning is off, and the fan is operating, turning the "AUTO" mode on will activate the air conditioning system.

### ■ Micro dust and pollen filter

● In order to prevent the windows from fogging up when the outside air is cold, the following may occur:

- Outside air mode does not switch to .
- The air conditioning system operates automatically.
- The operation cancels after 1 minute.

● In rainy weather, the windows may fog up. Press .

 CAUTION

■ To prevent the windshield from fogging up

Do not use  during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.

 NOTICE

■ To prevent the battery from being discharged

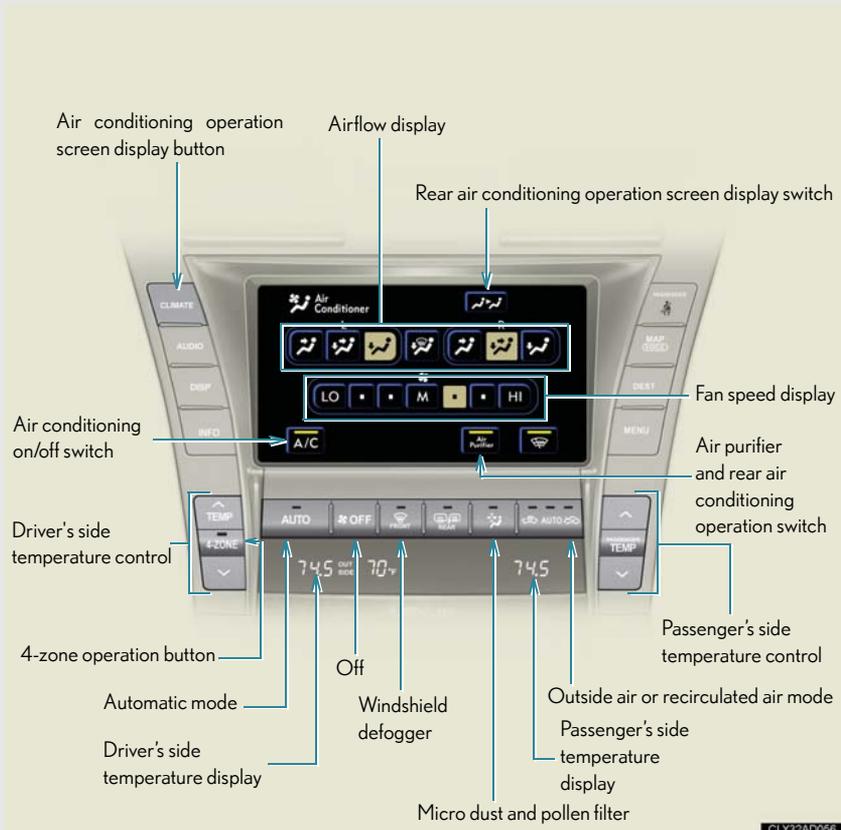
Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

## 3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

### Front air conditioning system (touch screen with rear air conditioning system)

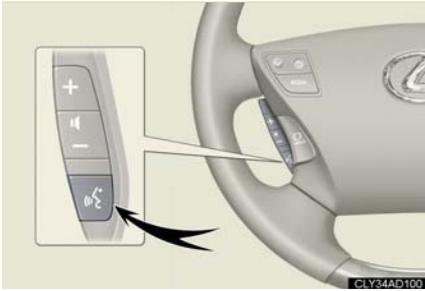
Airflow and outlets are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

Press  to display the air conditioning operation screen.



The above illustration is for a vehicle equipped with the navigation system. The position of  may differ slightly for vehicles not equipped with the navigation system.

## Using the speech command system



Pull  to operate the speech command system. (→ “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”)

## Using the automatic mode

**STEP 1** Press .

➔ The air conditioning system will begin to operate. Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

**STEP 2** Press  to switch to automatic air intake mode.

➔ The air conditioning system automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

**STEP 3** Press  on  to increase the temperature and  to decrease the temperature.

Air outlets and fan speed for the right-hand and left-hand seats may be set separately depending on the temperature setting.

## Adjusting the settings

### ■ Adjusting the temperature setting

Press  $\wedge$  on  to increase the temperature and  $\vee$  to decrease the temperature.

The air conditioning system switches between individual and simultaneous modes each time  is pressed.

Individual mode (the indicator on  is on.): The temperature for the driver's, front passenger's and rear seats ( $\rightarrow$ P. 276) can be adjusted separately. Operating the passenger's side temperature control will enter individual mode.

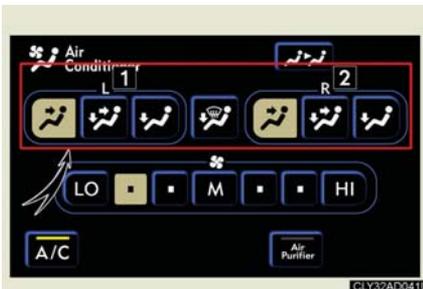
Simultaneous mode (the indicator on  is off.): Only  (driver's side) can be used to adjust the temperature for all seats.

### ■ Adjusting the fan speed

Touch any switch of  (decrease  $\leftrightarrow$  increase) on the operation screen.

Press  to turn the fan off.

### ■ Changing the air outlets

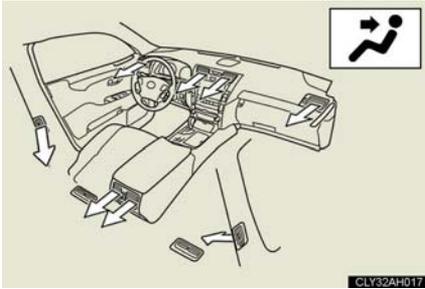


Touch any mode on the operation screen.

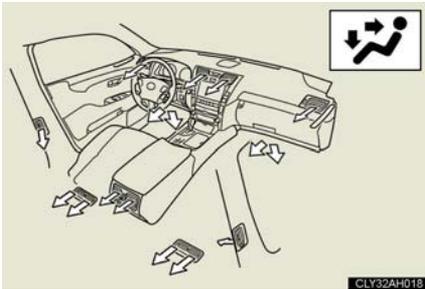
- 1 L: Left-hand front seat
- 2 R: Right-hand front seat

Different air outlets for the left-hand and right-hand front seats can be chosen.

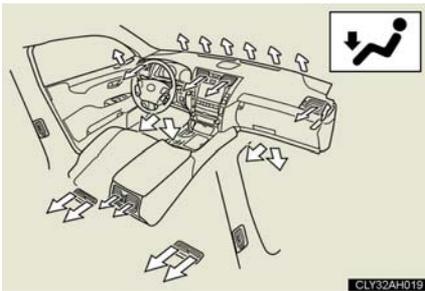
Air flows as shown below according to the mode selected.



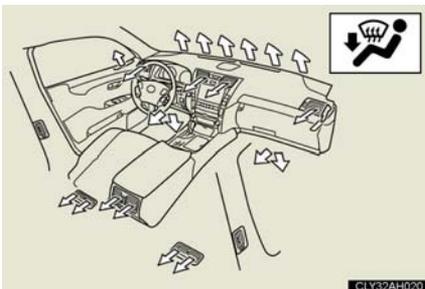
Upper body



Upper body and feet



Feet



Feet and front windshield

### ■ Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

Press  .

The mode switches between  (recycles air inside the vehicle), “AUTO” and  (introduces air from outside the vehicle) modes each time the button is pressed.

When the air intake control system is switched to automatic mode, it operates automatically.

### Turning the air purifier off

Touch  on the operation screen.

The air purifier will turn off when the indicator on the switch goes off. Air will not flow from the roof vents.

To turn the air purifier on, touch  again.

## Changing the rear seat settings

### ■ Adjusting the temperature setting

**STEP 1** Touch .



Touch  (increase) or  (decrease) on the operation screen. Operating the switch will enter individual mode.

**1** L: Left-hand rear seat

**2** R: Right-hand rear seat

The air conditioning system switches between individual and simultaneous modes each time  is pressed.

### ■ Adjusting the fan speed (air purifier and cooler from the roof vents)

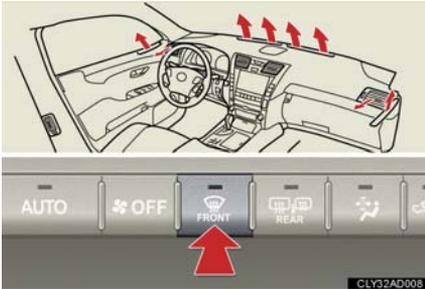
**STEP 1** Touch .

**STEP 2** Touch any switch of  (decrease ↔ increase) on the operation screen.

According to the air outlets currently selected, the fan speed of either the cool air from the roof vents or air purifier will be adjusted. (→P. 279)

Press  to turn the fan off.

## Defogging the windshield



Press .

The air conditioning system control operates automatically.

## Micro dust and pollen filter



Press .

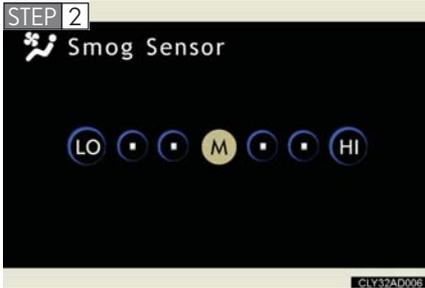
Outside air mode switches to  (recirculated air) mode. Pollen is removed from the air and the air flows to the upper part of the body.

Usually the system will turn off automatically after approximately 3 minutes.

To stop the operation, press  again.

### Adjusting the sensitivity of the air intake control in automatic mode

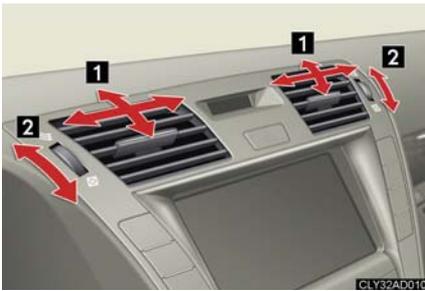
**STEP 1** Press  until the “Smog Sensor” screen appears while the vehicle is stopped.



Touch any switch of  (lower sensitivity ↔ higher sensitivity) on the operation screen.

### Adjusting the position and opening and closing the air outlets

#### ► Front center outlets



- 1** Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
- 2** Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

#### ► Front side outlets



- 1** Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
- 2** Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

Air outlets of the rear seat. (→P. 280)

### ■ Using the automatic mode

Fan speed is adjusted automatically in accordance with the temperature setting and ambient conditions. As a result, the following may occur:

- The system may switch automatically to recirculated mode when the coolest temperature setting is selected in summer.
- Immediately after  is pressed, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow.
- Cool air may flow to the area around the upper body when the heater is on.

### ■ Using the system in recirculated air mode

The windows will fog up more easily if the recirculated air mode is used for an extended period.

### ■ Window defogger feature

Recirculated air mode may automatically switch to  (outside air) mode in situations where the windows need to be defogged.

### ■ When outside temperature approaches 32°F (0°C)

The air conditioning system may not operate even when  is touched.

### ■ Automatic mode for air intake control

In automatic mode, the system detects exhaust gas and other pollutants and automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

When the air conditioning is off, and the fan is operating, turning the "AUTO" mode on will activate the air conditioning system.

### ■ Micro dust and pollen filter

- In order to prevent the windows from fogging up when the outside air is cold, the following may occur:
  - Outside air mode does not switch to .
  - The air conditioning system operates automatically.
  - The operation cancels after 1 minute.
- In rainy weather, the windows may fog up. Press .

### ■ Air purifier

The air purifier will turn on when turning the rear air conditioning system on.

 CAUTION

■ **To prevent the windshield from fogging up**

Do not use  during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.

 NOTICE

■ **To prevent the battery from being discharged**

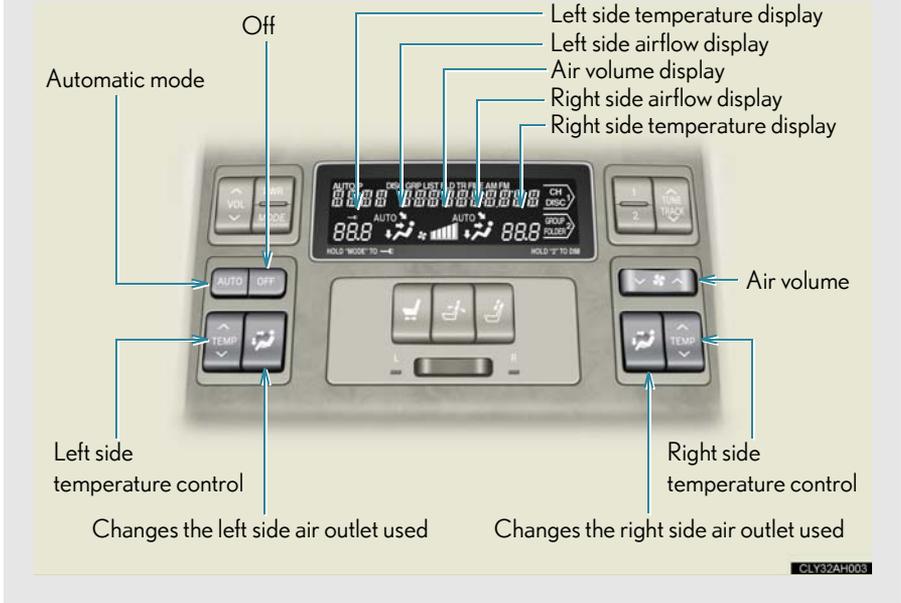
Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

## 3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

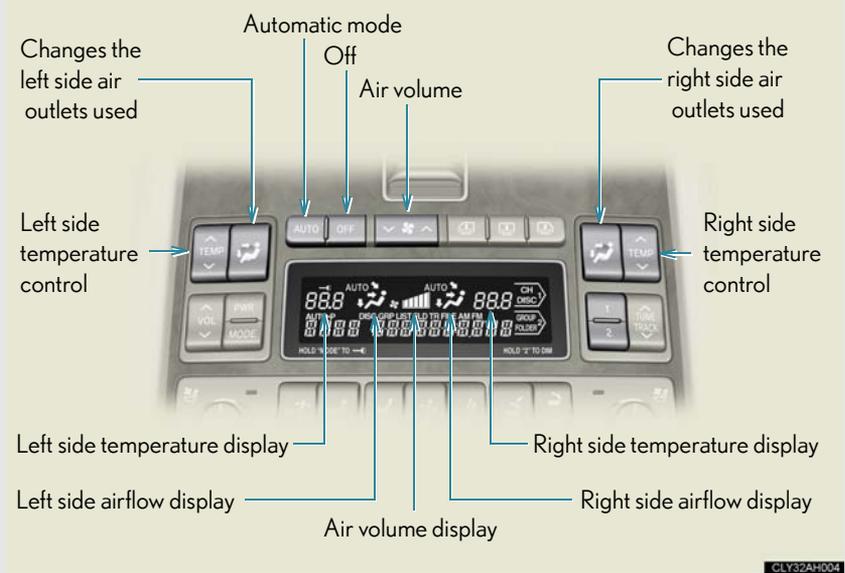
### Rear air conditioning system (if equipped)

Airflow and outlets are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

#### ► 5-seat models



## ► 4-seat models



## Using the automatic mode

**STEP 1** Press  .

➔ The air conditioning system and air purifier will operate, and air outlets and fan speed will be set automatically.

“AUTO” will be displayed on the control panel.

**STEP 2** Press   $\wedge$  on  to increase the temperature and  $\vee$  to decrease the temperature.

Air outlets and fan speed for the right-hand and left-hand seats may be set separately depending on the temperature setting.

## Adjusting the settings

### ■ Adjusting the temperature setting

Press  $\wedge$  on  to increase the temperature and  $\vee$  to decrease the temperature.

Air outlets and fan speed for the right-hand and left-hand seats may be set separately depending on the temperature setting.

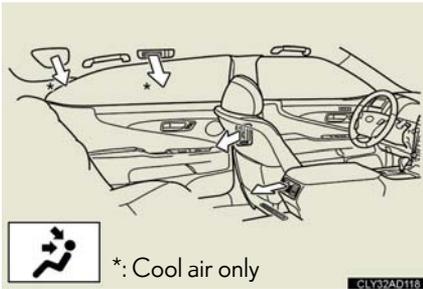
### ■ Changing the air outlets

Press .

The air outlets change as follows each time  is pressed.

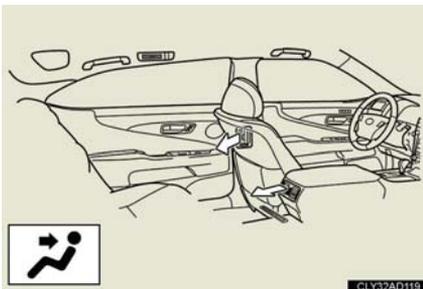
Different air outlets for the right-hand and left-hand rear seats can be chosen.

Air flows as shown below according to the mode selected.



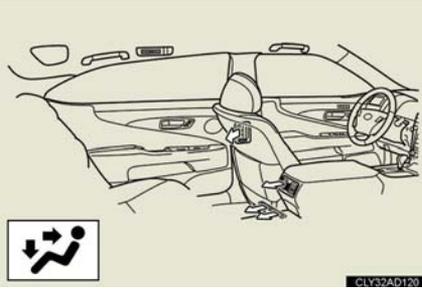
#### Upper body

When the indicator on  (on the front operation screen) is on

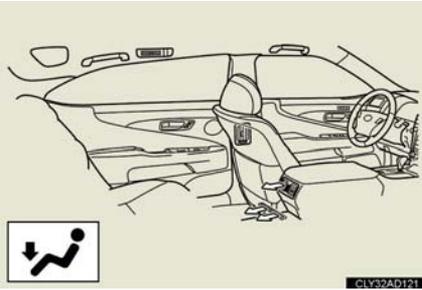


#### Upper body

When the indicator on  (on the front operation screen) is off



Upper body and feet

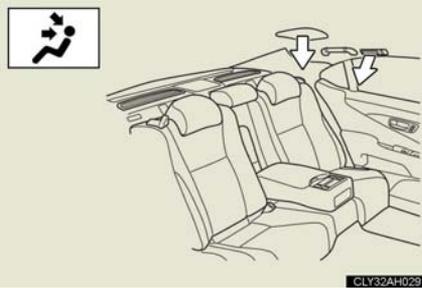


Feet

### ■ Adjusting the air volume

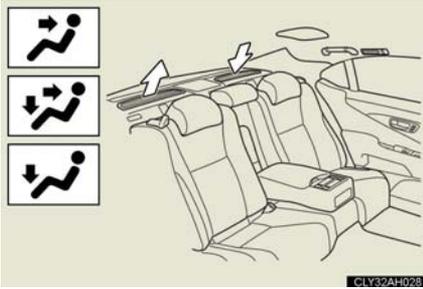
The volume of cool air or air from the air purifier can be adjusted according to the mode selected.

Press  $\wedge$  (increase) or  $\vee$  (decrease) on .



Cool air flows from roof vents.

### 3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

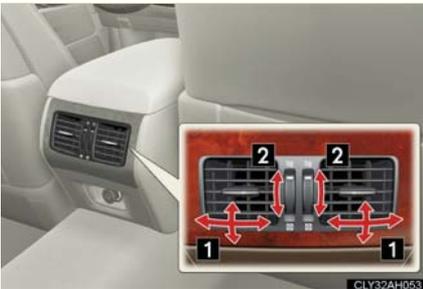


Air purifier operation (air flows from the rear package tray.)

Press **OFF** to turn the fan off.

### Adjusting the position and opening and closing the air outlets

#### ► Rear center outlets



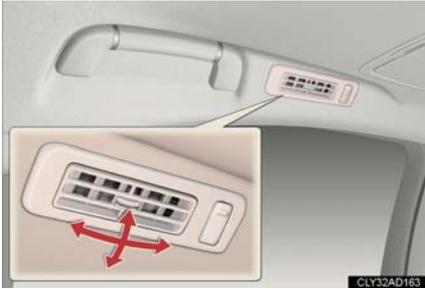
- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
- 2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

#### ► Rear side outlets



- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
- 2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

► Roof side outlets



Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

■ Button lock function

► 5-seat models



To prevent inadvertent operation, the buttons on the rear armrest can be locked. Press **MODE** until you hear a beep to lock the buttons. Pressing **MODE** again until you hear a beep will release the lock.

► 4-seat models



The indicator appears on the display when the buttons are locked.

### ■ Rear control panel illumination off function

#### ▶ 5-seat models



Control panel illumination on the rear armrest can be turned off. Press  until you hear a beep to turn the illumination off. Pressing  again until you hear a beep will turn the illumination on.

#### ▶ 4-seat models



### ■ Replacing the rear air conditioning filter

Replacing the air filter when using rear air conditioning or air purifier reduces air flow or deodorizing performance. (→P. 584).

#### NOTICE

#### ■ To prevent the battery from being discharged

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

## 3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers

These features are used to defog the rear window, and to remove raindrops, dew and frost from the outside rear view mirrors.

### ► Vehicles without touch screen



### On/off

Press the button to turn on the rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers. The defoggers will automatically turn off after approximately 15 minutes. Pressing the button again also turns the defoggers off.

### ► Vehicles with touch screen



### ⚠ CAUTION

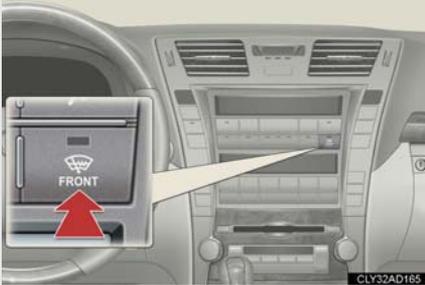
#### ■ When the outside rear view mirror defoggers are on

Do not touch the outside surface of the rear view mirrors, as they can become very hot and burn you.

## 3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger Windshield wiper de-icer (if equipped)

This feature is used to prevent ice from building up on the windshield and wiper blades.

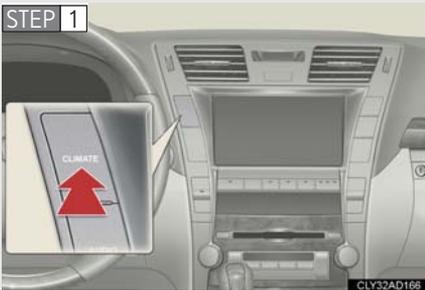
- ▶ Vehicles without touch screen



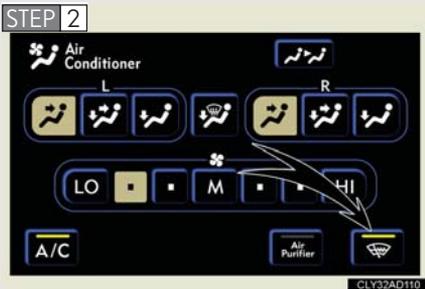
On/off

Press the button to turn on the windshield wiper de-icer. The windshield wiper de-icer will automatically turn off after approximately 15 minutes. Pressing the button again also turns the de-icer off.

- ▶ Vehicles with touch screen—without navigation system



Press  to display the air conditioning operation screen.



On/off

Touch the switch to turn on the windshield wiper de-icer. The windshield wiper de-icer will automatically turn off after approximately 15 minutes. Touching the switch again also turns the de-icer off.

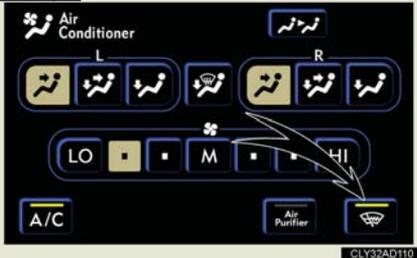
► Vehicles with touch screen—with navigation system

STEP 1



Press  to display the air conditioning operation screen.

STEP 2



On/off

Touch the switch to turn on the windshield wiper de-icer. The windshield wiper de-icer will automatically turn off after approximately 15 minutes. Touching the switch again also turns the de-icer off.

 CAUTION

■ When the windshield wiper de-icer is on

Do not touch the glass at the lower part of the windshield or to the side of the front pillars as the surfaces can become very hot and burn you.

### 3-3. Using the audio system

## Audio system (without touch screen)

CD player with changer and AM/FM radio



Title	Page
Using the radio	P. 288
Using the CD player	P. 292
Playing back MP3 and WMA discs	P. 298
Optimal use of the audio system	P. 304
Using the AUX adapter	P. 306
Using the steering wheel audio switches	P. 307

#### ■ Using cellular phones

Interference may be heard through the audio system's speakers if a cellular phone is being used inside or close to the vehicle while the audio system is operating.

 CAUTION**■ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A. and Canada****● Part 15 of the FCC Rules**

## FCC Warning:

Any unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment will void the user's authority to operate this device.

**● Laser products**

- Do not take this unit apart or attempt to make any changes by yourself. This is an intricate unit that uses a laser pickup to retrieve information from the surface of compact discs. The laser is carefully shielded so that its rays remain inside the cabinet. Therefore, never try to disassemble the player or alter any of its parts since you may be exposed to laser rays and dangerous voltages.
- This product utilizes a laser. Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

 NOTICE**■ To prevent the battery from being discharged**

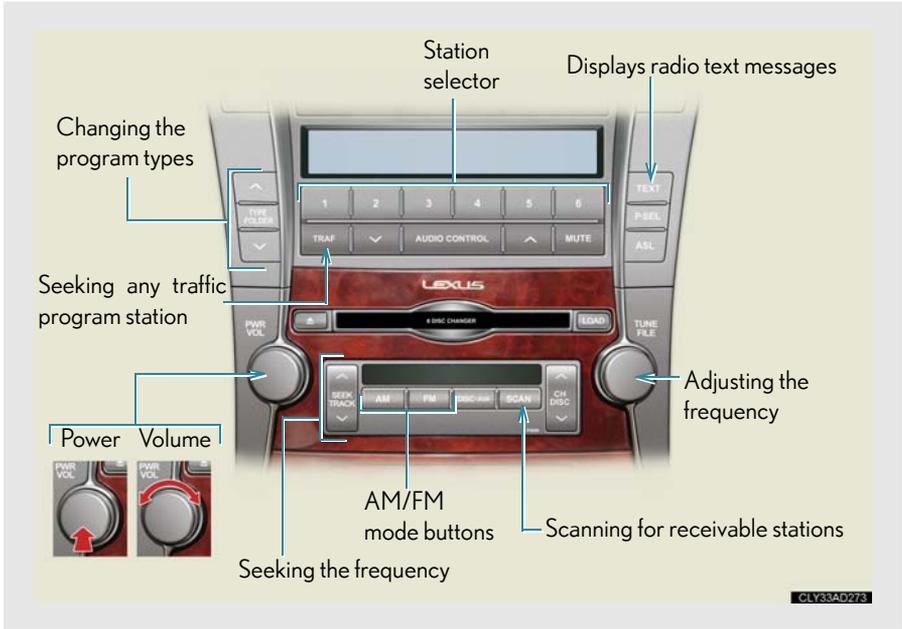
Do not leave the audio system on longer than necessary when the engine off.

**■ To avoid damaging the audio system**

Take care not to spill drinks or other fluids on the audio system.

### 3-3. Using the audio system

## Using the radio



## Setting station presets

**STEP 1** Search for desired stations by turning  or pressing ^ or v on



**STEP 2** Press and hold the button (from  to ) the station is to be set to, and you will hear a beep.

## Scanning radio stations

### ■ Scanning the preset radio stations

**STEP 1** Press and hold  until you hear a beep.

Preset stations will be played for 5 seconds each.

**STEP 2** When the desired station is reached, press  once again.

### ■ Scanning all radio stations within range

**STEP 1** Press .

All stations with reception will be played for 5 seconds each.

**STEP 2** When the desired station is reached, press  once again.

## RDS (Radio Data System)

This feature allows your radio to receive station identification information and program information (classical, jazz, etc.) from radio stations which broadcast this information.

### ■ Receiving RDS broadcasts

**STEP 1** Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  during FM reception.

The type of program changes each time the button is pressed.

- "ROCK"
- "EASYLIS" (Easy listening)
- "CLS/JAZZ" (Classical music and Jazz)
- "R & B" (Rhythm and Blues)
- "INFORM" (Information)
- "RELIGION"
- "MISC" (Miscellaneous)
- "ALERT" (Emergency messages)

If the system receives no RDS stations, "NO PTY" appears on the display.

**STEP 2** Press , or  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on .

The radio seeks or scans for stations by the relevant program type.

### ■ Displaying radio station names

Press .

### ■ Displaying radio text messages

Press  twice.

If “MSG” shows in the display, a text message will be displayed.

If the text continues past the end of the display,  is displayed. Press and hold  until you hear a beep.

---

### ■ When the battery is disconnected

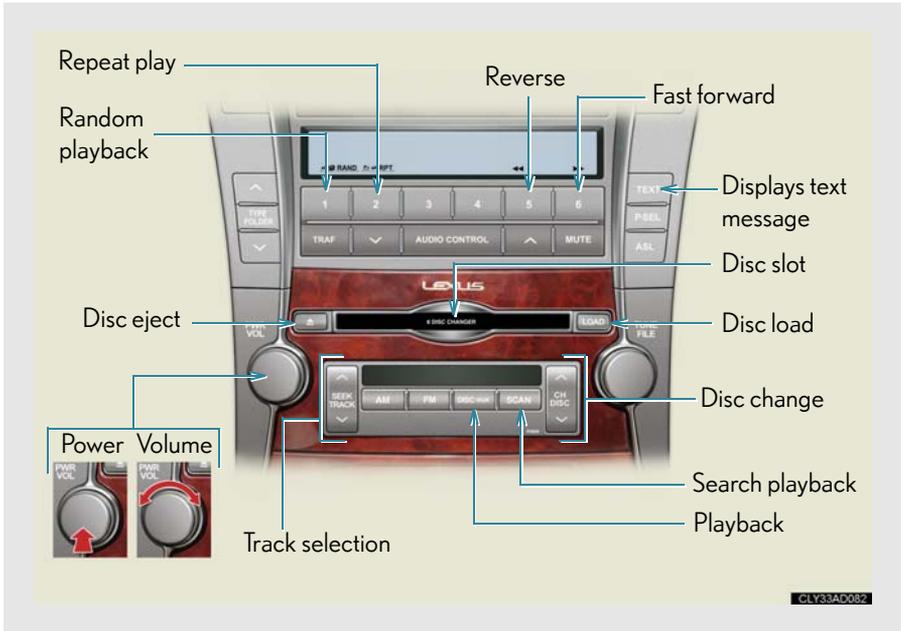
Stations presets are erased.

### ■ Reception sensitivity

- Maintaining perfect radio reception at all times is difficult due to the continually changing position of the antenna, differences in signal strength and surrounding objects, such as trains, transmitters, etc.
- The radio antenna is mounted inside the rear window. To maintain clear radio reception, do not attach metallic window tinting or other metallic objects to the antenna wire mounted inside the rear window.

### 3-3. Using the audio system

## Using the CD player



### Loading discs

#### ■ Loading a disc

**STEP 1** Press **LOAD**.

“WAIT” is shown on the display.

**STEP 2** Insert a disc when the indicator on the slot turns from amber to green.

The display changes from “WAIT” to “LOAD”.

#### ■ Loading multiple discs

**STEP 1** Press and hold **LOAD** until you hear a beep.

“WAIT” is shown on the display.

**STEP 2** Insert a disc when the indicator on the slot turns from amber to green.

The display changes from “WAIT” to “LOAD”.

The indicator on the slot turns to amber when the disc is inserted.

**STEP 3** Insert the next disc when the indicator on the slot turns from amber to green again.

Repeat the procedure for the remaining discs.

To stop the operation, press  .

## Ejecting discs

### ■ Ejecting a disc



**STEP 1**

To select the disc to be ejected,

press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  .

The number of the disc selected is shown on the display.

**STEP 2** Press  and remove the disc.

### ■ Ejecting all discs

Press and hold  until you hear a beep, then remove the disc.

## Selecting, fast-forwarding, and scanning tracks

### ■ Selecting a track

Press  $\wedge$  to move up and  $\vee$  to move down using  until the desired track number is displayed.

To fast forward or rewind, press and hold  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  .

#### ■ Scanning a disc

**STEP 1** Press .

The first ten seconds of each track will be played.

**STEP 2** Press the switch again when the desired track is reached.

### Selecting a disc

#### ■ Selecting a disc to play

To select the desired disc, press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on .

#### ■ Scanning loaded discs

**STEP 1** Press and hold  until you hear a beep.

The first ten seconds of the first track on each disc will be played.

**STEP 2** Press the switch again when the desired disc is reached.

### Random playback

#### ■ Current disc

Press  (RAND).

Songs are played in random order until random playback is canceled.

#### ■ All discs

Press and hold  (RAND) until you hear a beep.

Tracks on all loaded discs are played in a random order until the button is pressed once more.

### Repeating a track or a disc

#### ■ Repeating a Track

Press  (RPT).

#### ■ Repeating a disc

Press and hold  (RPT) until you hear a beep.

## Switching the display

Press .

Each time the switch is pressed, the display changes in the order of Track no./ Elapsed time → Disc title → Track name.

### ■ Canceling random, repeat and scan playback

Press  (RAND),  (RPT) or  again.

### ■ When “LOAD”, “ERROR” or “WAIT” is shown on the display

“LOAD”: This indicates that the CD player has completed loading the disc.

“ERROR”: Make sure the label of the displayed disc is facing up, and then reinsert it in the player.

“WAIT”: Operation has stopped due to a high temperature inside the player. Wait for a while and then press . Contact your Lexus dealer if the disc still cannot be played back.

### ■ Discs that can be used

Discs with the marks shown below can be used.

Playback may not be possible depending on recording format or disc features, or due to scratches, dirt or deterioration.



CDs with copy-protection features may not play correctly.

### ■ CD player protection feature

To protect the internal components, playback is automatically stopped when a problem is detected.

### ■ If discs are left inside the CD player or in the ejected position for extended periods

Discs may be damaged and may not play properly.

### ■ Lens cleaners

Do not use lens cleaners. Doing so may damage the CD player.

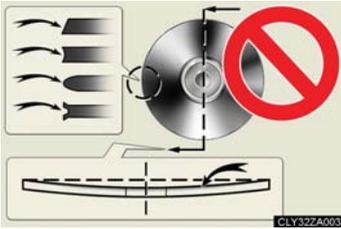
 NOTICE

■ **CDs and adapters that cannot be used**

Do not use the following types of CDs or 3 in. (8 cm) CD adapters. Doing so may damage the CD player and/or the CD insert/eject function.



- CDs that have a diameter that is not 4.7 in. (12 cm)



- Low-quality or deformed CDs



- CDs with a transparent or translucent recording area



- CDs that have tape, stickers or CD-R labels attached to them, or that have had the label peeled off

 NOTICE**■ CD player precautions**

Failure to follow the precautions below may result in serious damage to the CDs or the player itself.

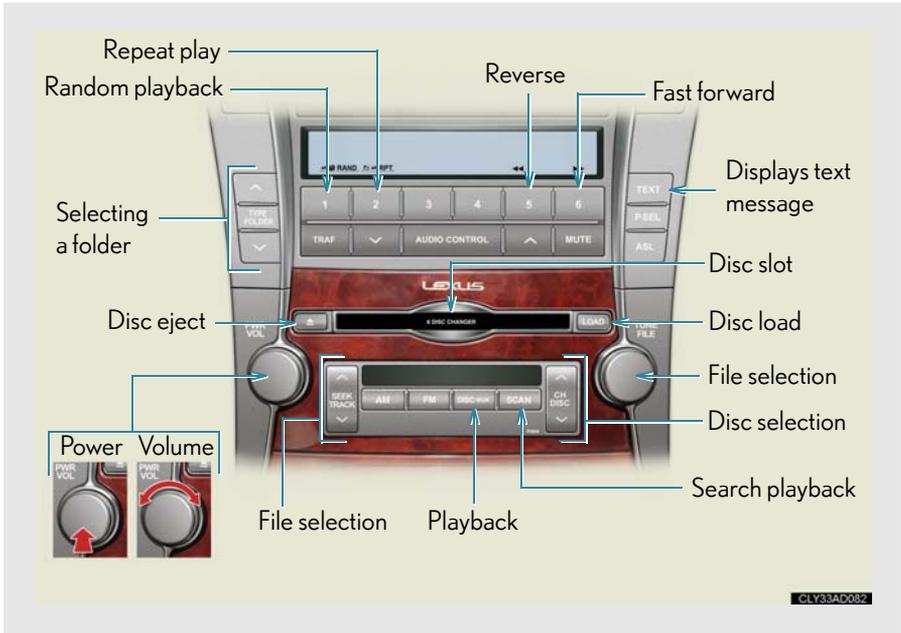
- Do not insert anything other than CDs into the CD slot.
- Do not apply oil to the CD player.
- Store CDs away from direct sunlight.
- Never try to disassemble any part of the CD player.



- Do not insert more than one CD at a time.

### 3-3. Using the audio system

## Playing back MP3 and WMA discs



### Loading, ejecting and selecting MP3 and WMA discs

→P. 292

### Selecting a folder

#### ■ Selecting folders one at a time

Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  to select the desired folder.

#### ■ Selecting the desired folder by cueing the first file of each folder

Press and hold  until you hear a beep. When the desired folder is reached, press the switch once again.

### ■ Returning to the first folder

Press and hold  until you hear a beep.

## Selecting and scanning files

### ■ Selecting one file at a time

Turn  or press  to select the desired file.

### ■ Selecting the desired file by cueing the files in the folder

Press .

When the desired file is reached, press the switch once again.

## Repeat play

### ■ Repeating a file

Press  (RPT).

### ■ Repeating all of the files in a folder

Press and hold  (RPT) until you hear a beep.

## Random playback

### ■ Playing files from a particular folder in random order

Press  (RAND).

### ■ Playing all the files on a disc in random order

Press and hold  (RAND) until you hear a beep.

## Switching the display

Press .

Each time the switch is pressed, the display changes in the order of the Folder no./File no./Elapsed time → Folder name → File name → Album title (MP3 only) → Track title → Artist name.

### ■ Canceling random, repeat and scan playback

Press  (RAND),  (RPT) or  again.

### ■ When “LOAD”, “ERROR” or “WAIT” is shown on the display.

“LOAD”: This indicates that the CD player has completed loading the disc.

“ERROR”: Make sure the label of the displayed disc is facing up, and then reinsert it in the player.

“WAIT”: Operation has stopped due to a high temperature inside the player. Wait for a while and then press . Contact your Lexus dealer if the disc still cannot be played back.

“NO MUSIC”: This indicates that MP3 or WMA files are not present on the disc.

### ■ CD player protection feature

To protect the internal components, playback is automatically stopped when a problem is detected while the CD player is being used.

### ■ If discs are left inside the CD player or in the ejected position for extended periods

Discs may be damaged and may not play properly.

### ■ Lens cleaners

Do not use lens cleaners. Doing so may damage the CD player.

### ■ MP3 and WMA files

MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER 3) is a standard audio compression format.

Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size by using MP3 compression.

WMA (Windows Media <sup>TM</sup>Audio) is a Microsoft audio compression format.

This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.

There is a limit to the MP3 and WMA file standards that can be used and to the media/formats on which the files are recorded.

#### ● MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards  
MP3 (MPEG1 LAYER3, MPEG2 LSF LAYER3)
- Compatible sampling frequencies  
MPEG1 LAYER3: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)  
MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (compatible with VBR)  
MPEG1 LAYER3: 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 160, 192, 224, 256, 320 (kbps)  
MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 144, 160 (kbps)
- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

#### ● WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards  
WMA Ver. 7, 8, 9
- Compatible sampling frequencies  
32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (only compatible with 2-channel playback)  
Ver. 7, 8: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192 (kbps)  
Ver. 9: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192, 256, 320 (kbps)

#### ● Compatible media

Media that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback are CD-Rs and CD-RWs.

Playback in some instances may not be possible if the CD-R or CD-RW is not finalized. Playback may not be possible or the audio may jump if the disc is scratched or marked with fingerprints.

- Compatible disc formats

The following disc formats can be used.

- Disc formats: CD-ROM Mode 1 and Mode 2  
CD-ROM XA Mode 2, Form 1 and Form 2
- File formats: ISO9660 Level 1, Level 2, (Romeo, Joliet)  
MP3 and WMA files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows.

- Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels (including the root)
- Maximum length of folder names/file names: 32 characters
- Maximum number of folders: 192 (including the root)
- Maximum number of files per disc: 255

- File names

The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA and played are those with the extension .mp3 or .wma.

- Discs containing multi-session recordings

As the audio system is compatible with multi-sessions, it is possible to play discs that contain MP3 and WMA files. However, only the first session can be played.

- ID3 and WMA tags

ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title, artist name, etc.

The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)

WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

### ● MP3 and WMA playback

When a disc containing MP3 or WMA files is inserted, all files on the disc are first checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3 or WMA file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend you do not write in any files other than MP3 or WMA files or create any unnecessary folders.

Discs that contain a mixture of music data and MP3 or WMA format data cannot be played.

### ● Extensions

If the file extensions .mp3 and .wma are used for files other than MP3 and WMA files, they will be mistakenly recognized and played as MP3 and WMA files. This may result in large amounts of interference and damage to the speakers.

### ● Playback

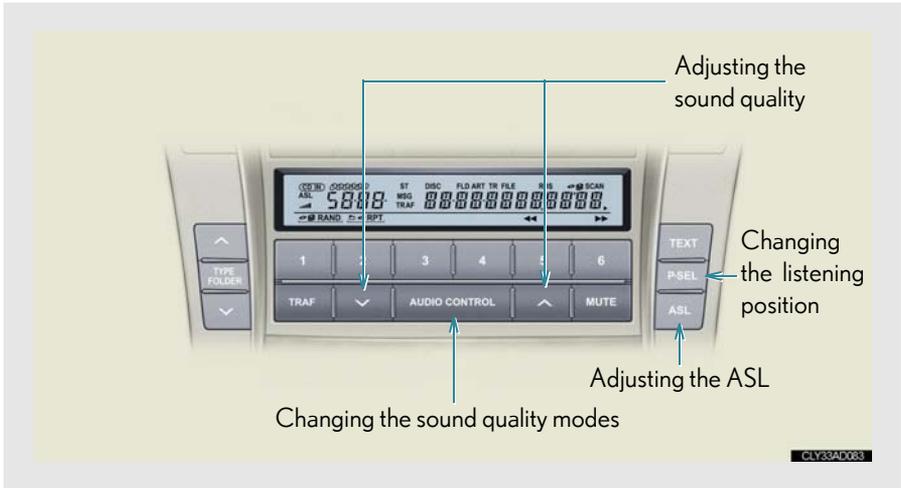
- To play MP3 file with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of at least 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- CD-R or CD-RW playback may not be possible in some instances, depending on the characteristics of the disc.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3 and WMA files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- When files other than MP3 or WMA files are recorded on a disc, it may take more time to recognize the disc and in some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are the registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries.

### NOTICE

- **CDs and adapters that cannot be used (→P. 296)**
- **CD player precautions (→P. 297)**

### 3-3. Using the audio system

## Optimal use of the audio system



### Adjusting the Automatic Sound Levelizer (ASL)

Press **ASL**.

The ASL switches between on and off modes each time the switch is pressed.

ASL automatically adjusts the volume and tone quality according to the noise level as you drive your vehicle.

### Changing the listening position

The sound feel setting can be changed to produce the best sound for each listening position.

Press **P-SEL** (position selector) to change the setting.

The display changes as follows each time the button is pressed.

Display	Listening position
"DRIVER"	Position best suited to the driver's seat
"FRONT"	Position best suited to the driver's and front passenger's seats
"REAR"	Position best suited to the rear seats
"ALL"	Position best suited to all seats

## Adjusting sound quality and volume balance

### ■ Changing sound quality modes

Press .

Pressing the button changes the sound mode in the following order.

"BAS" → "MID" → "TRE" → "FAd" → "BAL"

### ■ Adjusting sound quality

Press  or  to adjust the level.

Sound quality mode	Mode displayed	Level	Press ∨	Press ^
Bass*	"BAS"	-5 to 5	Low	High
Mid-range*	"MID"	-5 to 5		
Treble*	"TRE"	-5 to 5		
Front/rear volume balance	"FAd"	F7 to R7	Shifts to rear	Shifts to front
Left/right volume balance	"BAL"	L7 to R7	Shifts to left	Shifts to right

\*: The sound quality level is adjusted individually in each AM-FM or CD mode.

### 3-3. Using the audio system

## Using the AUX adapter

This adapter can be used to connect a portable audio device and listen to it through the vehicle's speakers.

**STEP 1**



Connect the portable audio device.

**STEP 2** Press .

#### ■ Operating portable audio devices connected to the audio system

The volume can be adjusted using the vehicle's audio controls. All other adjustments must be made on the portable audio device itself.

#### ■ When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet

Noise may occur during playback. Use the power source of the portable audio device.

### 3-3. Using the audio system

## Using the steering wheel audio switches

Some audio features can be controlled using the switches on the steering wheel.



- 1** Turns the power on, selects audio source
- 2** Volume
- 3** Radio mode: Selects radio stations  
CD mode: Selects tracks, files (MP3 and WMA) and discs

#### Turning on the power

Press  when the audio system is turned off.

The audio system can be turned off by holding the switch down for 1 second or more.

#### Changing the audio source

Press  when the audio system is turned on. The audio source changes as follows each time the switch is pressed. If no discs are inserted in the player, that mode will be skipped.

FM1→FM2→CD player→AUX→AM→FM1

#### Adjusting the volume

Pull  to increase the volume and  to decrease the volume.

Hold up the switch to continue increasing or decreasing the volume.

#### Selecting a radio station

**STEP 1** Press  to select the radio mode.

**STEP 2** Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  to select a radio station.

To scan for receivable stations, press and hold  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on the switch until you hear a beep.

#### Selecting a track/file

**STEP 1** Press  to select the CD mode.

**STEP 2** Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  to select the desired track/file.

#### Selecting a disc in the CD player

**STEP 1** Press  to select the CD mode.

**STEP 2** Press and hold  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  until a beep is heard.

#### Canceling automatic selection of a radio station

Press the same switch.

#### CAUTION

##### To reduce the risk of an accident

Exercise care when operating the audio switches on the steering wheel.

### 3-3. Using the audio system

## Audio system (touch screen without navigation system)

CD and (optional) DVD player with changer, and AM/FM radio

Press  to display the audio operation screen.

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".



The audio system appearance and screen may differ slightly for vehicles equipped with the DVD player.

### 3-3. Using the audio system

CD player: Plays audio CDs, CD text, MP3 discs and WMA discs.

DVD player: Plays audio CDs, CD text, video CDs, MP3 discs, WMA discs, DVD video discs and DVD audio discs.

Title	Page
Using the radio	P. 312
Using the CD player	P. 317
Playing MP3 and WMA discs	P. 325
Using the DVD player	P. 332
Playing DVD video/audio	P. 335
Playing a video CD	P. 348
DVD player and DVD video disc information	P. 352
Optimal use of the audio/video system	P. 356
Using the AUX adapter	P. 360
Using the rear seat audio controls	P. 361
Using the steering wheel audio switches	P. 365

#### ■ Using cellular phones

Interference may be heard through the audio system's speakers if a cellular phone is being used inside or close to the vehicle while the audio system is operating.

 **CAUTION****■ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A. and Canada****● Part 15 of the FCC Rules**

## FCC Warning:

Any unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment will void the user's authority to operate this device.

**● Laser products**

- Do not take this unit apart or attempt to make any changes by yourself.

This is an intricate unit that uses a laser pickup to retrieve information from the surface of compact discs. The laser is carefully shielded so that its rays remain inside the cabinet. Therefore, never try to disassemble the player or alter any of its parts since you may be exposed to laser rays and dangerous voltages.

- This product utilizes a laser.

Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

 **NOTICE****■ To prevent the battery from being discharged**

Do not leave the audio system on longer than necessary when the engine off.

**■ To avoid damaging the audio system**

Take care not to spill drinks or other fluids on the audio system.

### 3-3. Using the audio system

## Using the radio

Press **AM-SAT** or **FM** to choose either an AM or FM band.

Audio control screen display button

Preset stations

Scanning for  
receivable  
stations



Adjusting the  
frequency

Seeking the frequency

Preset tuning

Scan for receivable stations

AM/FM mode buttons

CLY33AD041

This illustration is for a vehicle equipped with the DVD player.

## Setting station presets

**STEP 1** Search for desired stations by turning  or pressing



**STEP 2** Touch and hold one of the preset stations (1 - 6) until you hear a beep.

## Scanning radio stations

### ■ Scanning the preset radio stations

#### ▶ AM station

**STEP 1** Touch  on the screen or press  until "P·SCAN" appears. Preset stations will be played for a few seconds each.

**STEP 2** When the desired station is reached, touch  or press  once again.

#### ▶ FM station

**STEP 1** Press  until "P·SCAN" appears.

**STEP 2** When the desired station is reached, press  once again.

### ■ Scanning all radio stations within range

#### ▶ AM station

**STEP 1** Touch **SCAN** on the screen or press **SCAN**.

“SCAN” appears on the screen and all stations within range will be played for a few seconds each.

**STEP 2** When the desired station is reached, touch **SCAN** or press **SCAN** once again.

#### ▶ FM station

**STEP 1** Press **SCAN**.

“SCAN” appears on the screen and all stations within range will be played for a few seconds each.

**STEP 2** When the desired station is reached, press **SCAN** once again.

## RDS (Radio Data System)

This feature allows your radio to receive station identification information and program information (classical, jazz, etc.) from radio stations which broadcast this information.

### ■ Receiving RDS broadcasts

**STEP 1**



Touch **TYPE** or **TYPE** on the screen.

The type of program changes each time the button is pressed.

- “ROCK”
- “EASYLIS” (Easy listening)
- “CLS/JAZZ” (Classical music and Jazz)
- “R & B” (Rhythm and Blues)
- “INFORM” (Information)
- “RELIGION”
- “MISC” (Miscellaneous)
- “ALARM” (Emergency messages)

If the system receives no RDS stations, “NO PTY” appears on the display.

When a program is set, “TYPE SEEK” appears.

**STEP 2** Touch **TYPE SEEK** on the screen or press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on .

The radio seeks or scans for stations by the relevant program type.

If no radio station of that type is found, “NOTHING” appears on the screen.

### ■ Displaying radio text messages

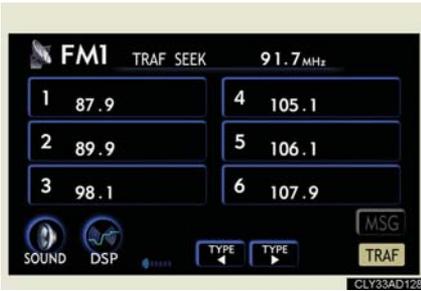


Touch **MSG** on the screen.

If “MSG” appears on the screen, a text message may be displayed.

When you touch **MSG OFF**, the display returns.

### ■ Traffic announcement



Touch **TRAF** on the screen.

“TRAF SEEK” appears on the display, and the radio will start seeking any station broadcasting traffic program information.

If no traffic program station is found, “NOTHING” appears on the display.

### ■ When the battery is disconnected

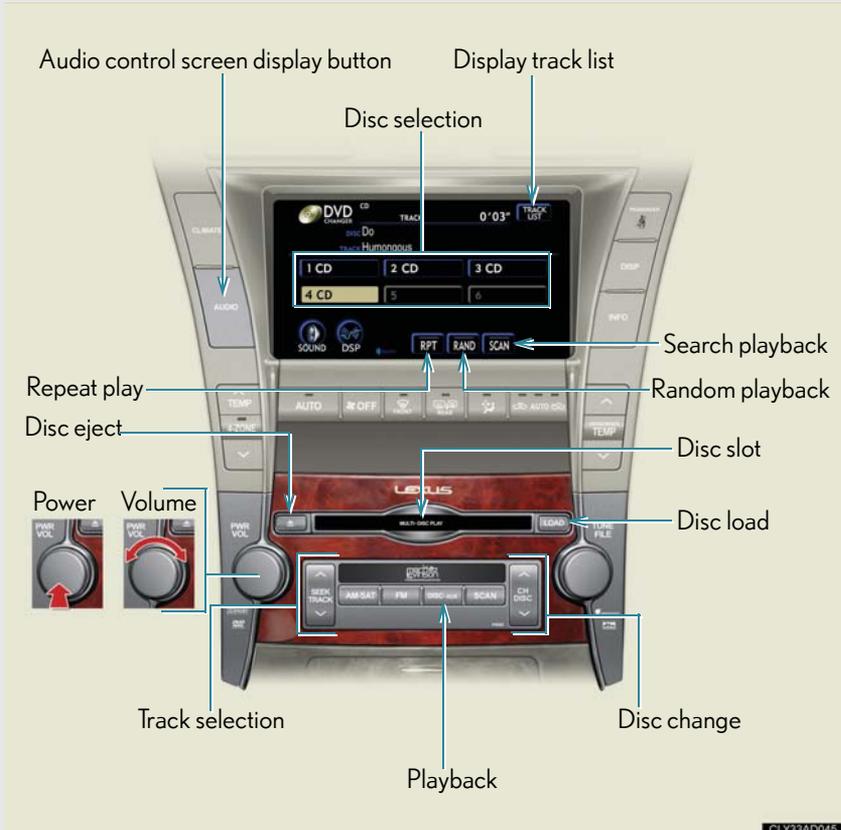
All preset stations are erased.

### ■ Reception sensitivity

- Maintaining perfect radio reception at all times is difficult due to the continually changing position of the antenna, differences in signal strength and surrounding objects, such as trains, transmitters, etc.
- The radio antenna is mounted inside the rear window. To maintain clear radio reception, do not attach metallic window tinting or other metallic objects to the antenna wire mounted inside the rear window.

### 3-3. Using the audio system Using the CD player

Insert a disc or press **DISC-ALL** with a disc inserted.



This illustration is for a vehicle equipped with the DVD player.

## Loading discs

### ■ Loading a single disc

**STEP 1** Press  .

**STEP 2** When the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, insert a disc after the disc slot door opens.

### ■ Loading multiple discs

**STEP 1** Press and hold  until you hear a beep.

**STEP 2** When the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, insert a disc after the disc slot door opens.

**STEP 3** After inserting a disc, wait until the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, then insert the next disc after the disc slot door has opened.

**STEP 4** Repeat steps 2 and 3 until you have inserted all discs.

To cancel the operation, press the  or  button. If you do not insert a disc within 15 seconds, loading will be canceled automatically.

## Ejecting discs

### ■ Ejecting a disc

**STEP 1** To select the disc to be ejected, touch the desired disc on the

screen or press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on



**STEP 2** Press  and remove the disc.

### ■ Ejecting all discs

Press and hold  until you hear a beep, then remove the disc.

## Selecting, fast forwarding and scanning tracks

### ■ Selecting a track

Press  $\wedge$  to move up and  $\vee$  to move down using  until the desired track number appears on the screen.

To fast forward or rewind, press and hold  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on .

### ■ Selecting a track from the track list

**STEP 1** Touch  on the screen.

**STEP 2**



Touch the desired track number.

 or : changes the list by 6 track groups

This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

### ■ Scanning a disc

**STEP 1** Touch  on the screen.

“SCAN” appears on the screen.

The first 10 seconds of each track will be played.

**STEP 2** Touch  once again when the desired track is reached.

## Selecting a disc

### ■ Selecting a disc to play

Touch the desired disc on the screen or press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on



(→P. 317)

### ■ Scanning loaded discs

**STEP 1** Touch and hold **SCAN** on the screen until “D-SCAN” appears.

The first 10 seconds of the first track on each disc will be played.

**STEP 2** Touch **SCAN** once again when the desired disc is reached.

## Random playback

### ■ Current disc

Touch **RAND** on the screen.

Songs are played in random order.

### ■ All discs

Touch and hold **RAND** on the screen until “D-RAND” appears.

Tracks on all loaded discs are played in random order.

## Repeating a track or a disc

### ■ Repeating a track

Touch **RPT** on the screen.

### ■ Repeating a disc

Touch **RPT** on the screen and hold until “D-RPT” appears.

### ■ Canceling random, repeat and scan playback

Touch **RAND**, **RPT**, or **SCAN** on the screen once again.

### ■ Displaying the title and artist name

If a CD-TEXT disc is inserted, the titles of the disc and track will be displayed. Up to 16 letters can be displayed.

### ■ Error messages

Refer to the following table and take the appropriate measures. If the problem is not rectified, take the vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

Message	Cause	Correction Procedures
No CD or No disc	There is no disc in the player.	Insert a disc.
Check CD X or Check DISC X	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The disc X is dirty or damaged.</li> <li>• The disc X is inserted upside down.</li> <li>• The disc X is not playable with the player.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Clean the disc.</li> <li>• Insert the disc correctly.</li> <li>• Confirm the disc is playable with the player.</li> </ul>
CD error or DVD error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• There is a malfunction within the system.</li> <li>• Operation is stopped due to a high temperature inside the player.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Eject the disc.</li> <li>• Eject the disc and allow the player to cool down.</li> </ul>
NO MUSIC FILE	This indicates that no playable data is included in the disc.	Eject the disc.

### ■ Discs that can be used

Discs with the marks shown below can be used.

Playback may not be possible depending on recording format or disc features, or due to scratches, dirt or deterioration.



CDs with copy-protection features may not play correctly.

### ■ CD player protection feature

To protect the internal components, playback is automatically stopped when a problem is detected.

### ■ If discs are left inside the CD player or in the ejected position for extended periods

Discs may be damaged and may not play properly.

### ■ Lens cleaners

Do not use lens cleaners. Doing so may damage the CD player.

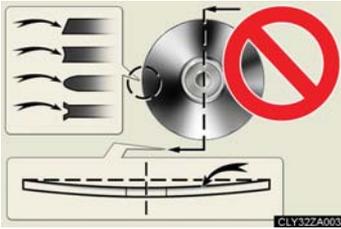
 NOTICE

**■ Discs and adapters that cannot be used**

Do not use the following types of discs, 3 in. (8 cm) disc adapters or Dual Discs. Doing so may damage the player and/or disc insert/eject function.



- Discs that have a diameter that is not 4.7 in. (12 cm)



- Low-quality or deformed discs



- Discs with a transparent or translucent recording area



- Discs that have tape, stickers or CD-R labels attached to them, or that have had the label peeled off

#### NOTICE

##### ■ Player precautions

Failure to follow the precautions below may result in damage to the discs or the player itself.

- Do not insert anything other than discs into the disc slot.
- Do not apply oil to the player.
- Store discs away from direct sunlight.
- Never try to disassemble any part of the player.

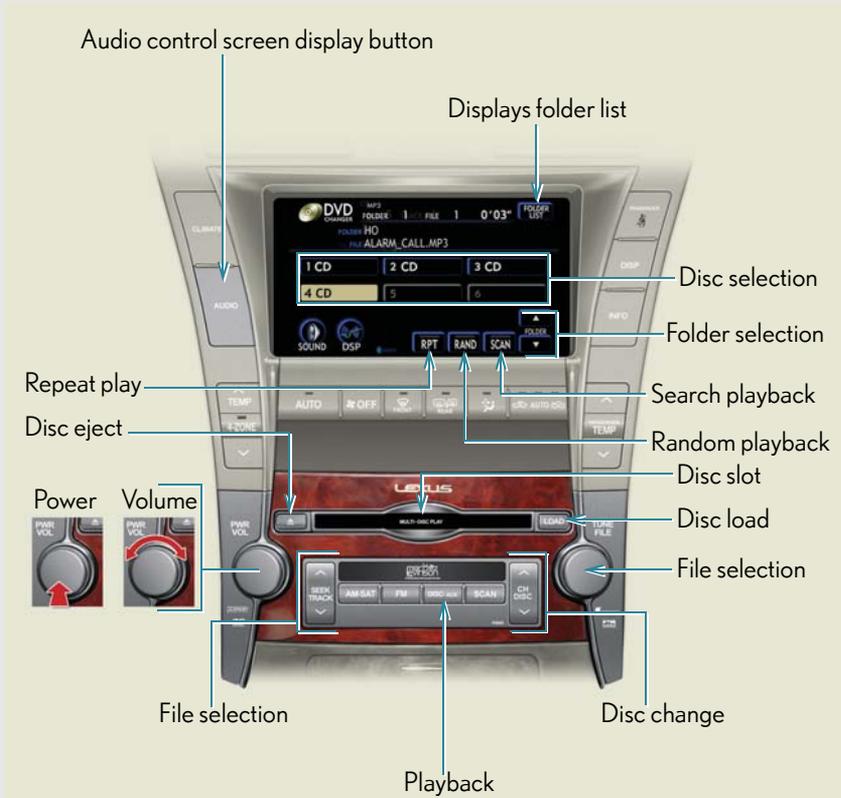


- Do not insert more than one disc at a time.

### 3-3. Using the audio system

## Playing MP3 and WMA discs

Insert an MP3 or WMA disc or press **DISC-AUX** with a disc inserted.



This illustration is for a vehicle equipped with the DVD player.

CLY33AD047

## Loading, ejecting and selecting MP3 and WMA discs

→P. 317

## Selecting a folder

### ■ Selecting a folder

Touch “FOLDER ▲” or “FOLDER ▼” on the screen to select the next/previous folder.

### ■ Selecting a folder from the folder list

**STEP 1** Touch **FOLDER LIST** on the screen.



Touch the desired folder number.

▲ or ▼ : changes the list by 6 folder groups

**DETAIL** : displays the details of the file currently playing

**FILE** : displays the file list

This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

### ■ Selecting the desired folder by cueing the first file of each folder

Touch and hold **SCAN** on the screen until “FLD·SCAN” appears. When the desired folder is reached, touch **SCAN** once again.

## Selecting and scanning files

### ■ Selecting one file at a time

Turn  or press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  to select the desired file.

### ■ Selecting a file from the file list

**STEP 1** Touch  on the screen to turn the folder list on.



Touch  on the folder list screen.



Touch the desired file number.

 or  : changes the list by 6 groups

 : displays the folder list

 : displays the details of the file currently playing

This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

### ■ Selecting a desired file by cueing the files in the folder

Touch  on the screen.

When the desired file is reached, touch  once again.

## Repeat play

### ■ Repeating a file

Touch **RPT** on the screen.

### ■ Repeating all of the files in a folder

Touch and hold **RPT** on the screen until “FLD RPT” appears.

## Random playback

### ■ Playing files from a particular folder in random order

Touch **RAND** on the screen.

### ■ Playing all the files on a disc in random order

Touch and hold **RAND** on the screen until “FLD RAND” appears.

---

### ■ Canceling random, repeat and scan playback

Touch **RAND**, **RPT** or **SCAN** on the screen once again.

### ■ Error messages

→P. 321

### ■ CD player protection feature

To protect the internal components, playback is automatically stopped when a problem is detected while the CD player is being used.

### ■ If discs are left inside the CD player or in the ejected position for extended periods

Discs may be damaged and may not play properly.

### ■ Lens cleaners

Do not use lens cleaners. Doing so may damage the CD player.

### ■ MP3 and WMA files

MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER 3) is a standard audio compression format.

Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size by using MP3 compression.

WMA (Windows Media <sup>TM</sup>Audio) is a Microsoft audio compression format.

This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.

There is a limit to the MP3 and WMA file standards that can be used and to the media/formats on which the files are recorded.

#### ● MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards  
MP3 (MPEG1 LAYER3, MPEG2 LSF LAYER3)
- Compatible sampling frequencies  
MPEG1 LAYER3: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)  
MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (compatible with VBR)  
MPEG1 LAYER3: 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 160, 192, 224, 256, 320 (kbps)  
MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 144, 160 (kbps)
- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

#### ● WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards  
WMA Ver. 7, 8, 9
- Compatible sampling frequencies  
32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (only compatible with 2-channel playback)  
Ver. 7, 8: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192 (kbps)  
Ver. 9: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192, 256, 320 (kbps)

- Compatible media

Media that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback are CD-Rs and CD-RWs.

Playback in some instances may not be possible if the CD-R or CD-RW is not finalized. Playback may not be possible or the audio may jump if the disc is scratched or marked with fingerprints.

- Compatible disc formats

The following disc formats can be used.

- Disc formats: CD-ROM Mode 1 and Mode 2  
CD-ROM XA Mode 2, Form 1 and Form 2
- File formats: ISO9660 Level 1, Level 2, (Romeo, Joliet)  
MP3 and WMA files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

- Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels (including the root)
- Maximum length of folder names/file names: 32 characters
- Maximum number of folders: 192 (including the root)
- Maximum number of files per disc: 255

- File names

The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA and played are those with the extension .mp3 or .wma.

- Discs containing multi-session recordings

As the audio system is compatible with multi-sessions, it is possible to play discs that contain MP3 and WMA files. However, only the first session can be played.

- ID3 and WMA tags

ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title, artist name, etc.

The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)

WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

### ● MP3 and WMA playback

When a disc containing MP3 or WMA files is inserted, all files on the disc are first checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3 or WMA file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend you do not write in any files other than MP3 or WMA files or create any unnecessary folders.

Discs that contain a mixture of music data and MP3 or WMA format data cannot be played.

### ● Extensions

If the file extensions .mp3 and .wma are used for files other than MP3 and WMA files, they may be mistakenly recognized and played as MP3 and WMA files. This may result in large amounts of interference and damage to the speakers.

### ● Playback

- To play MP3 files with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of at least 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- CD-R or CD-RW playback may not be possible in some instances, depending on the characteristics of the disc.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3 and WMA files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- When files other than MP3 or WMA files are recorded on a disc, it may take more time to recognize the disc and in some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are the registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and other countries.

### NOTICE

- **CDs and adapters that cannot be used (→P. 323)**
- **CD player precautions (→P. 324)**

### 3-3. Using the audio system Using the DVD player (if equipped)

Insert a disc or press **DISC-AUX** with a disc inserted.

Audio/video control screen display button



CLY33AD051

## Loading discs

### ■ Loading a single disc

**STEP 1** Press **LOAD**.

**STEP 2** When the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, insert a disc after the disc slot door opens.

### ■ Loading multiple discs

**STEP 1** Press and hold **LOAD** until you hear a beep.

**STEP 2** When the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, insert a disc after the disc slot door opens.

**STEP 3** After inserting a disc, wait until the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, then insert the next disc after the disc slot door has opened.

**STEP 4** Repeat steps 2 and 3 until you have inserted all discs.

To cancel the operation, press the **LOAD** or **DISC-HH** button. If you do not insert a disc within 15 seconds, loading will be canceled automatically.

### ■ DVD hint screen



This screen appears when a DVD video, DVD audio or video CD is first selected with the “ENGINE START STOP” switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

Touch **OK** once you have read the message.

## Ejecting discs

### Ejecting a disc

**STEP 1** To select the disc to be ejected, touch the desired disc on the screen or press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on .

**STEP 2** Press  and remove the disc.

### Ejecting all discs

Press and hold  until you hear a beep, then remove the discs.

## Selecting a disc

### To select a disc to play



Touch the desired disc on the screen or press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on .

- Audio CD, CD text→P. 317
- MP3/WMA disc→P. 325
- DVD video/audio→P. 335
- Video CD→P. 348

### 3-3. Using the audio system

## Playing DVD video/audio

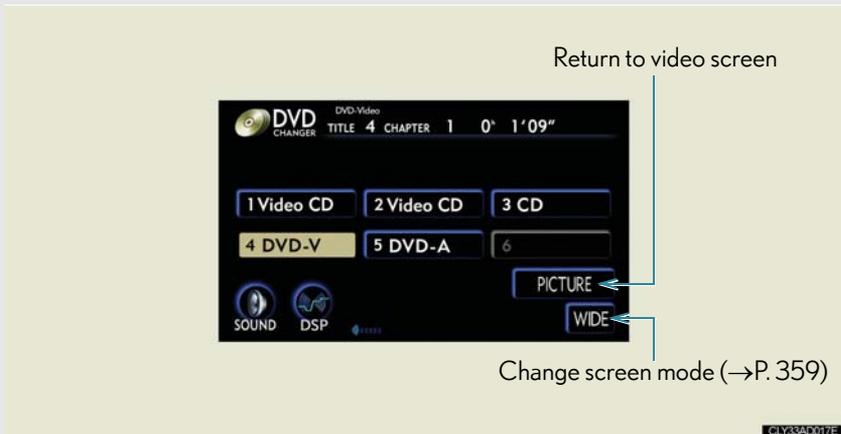
For safety reasons, you can enjoy the visual contents of discs only when the vehicle is completely stopped with the “ENGINE START STOP” switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode and the parking brake applied. While you are driving, only audio contents may be played.

When a DVD video disc or DVD audio disc is inserted while driving, the audio contents of the main feature will automatically be played. However, some discs may not be played from the main story.

Insert a disc or press  with a disc inserted.

#### ■ Video control screen

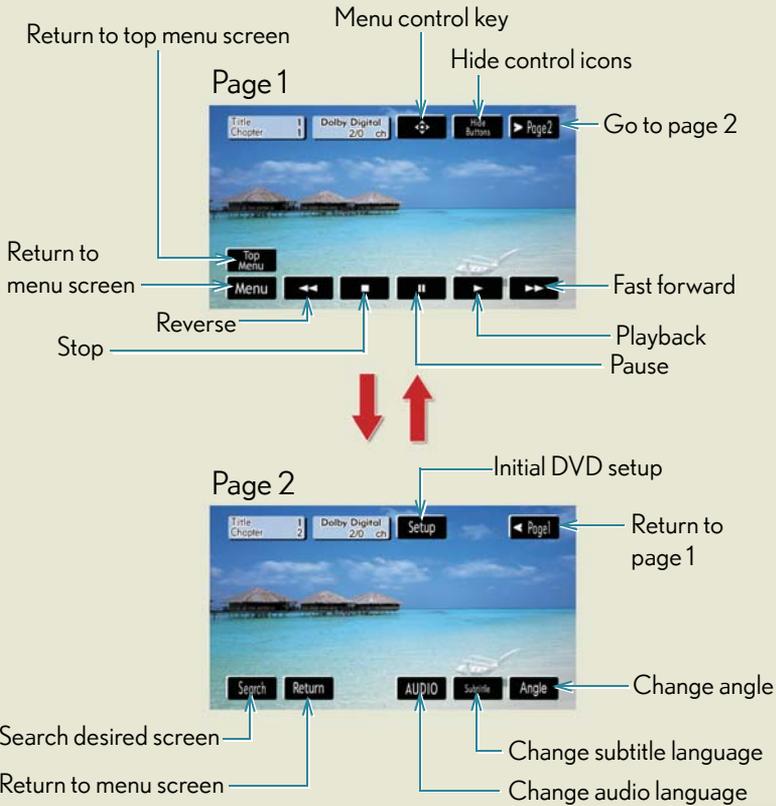
Press  while the disc is playing, and the following screen appears.



### ■ Control icon screen

Touch any part of the screen if no icons are shown while watching a video, and the following screen appears.

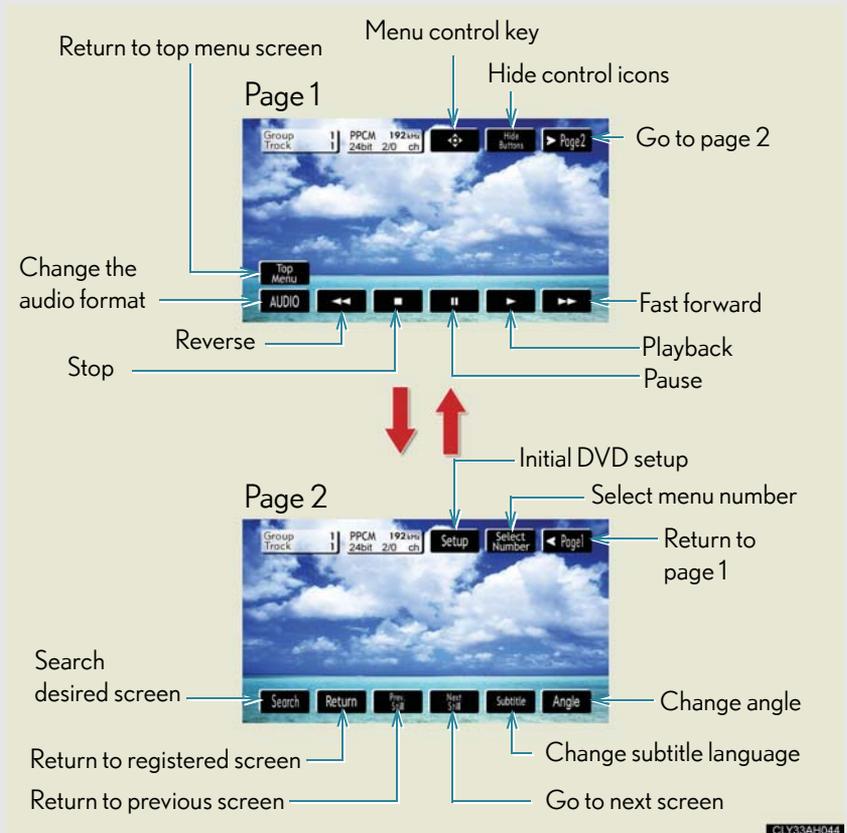
#### ▶ DVD video mode



CLY33AH043

If  appears on the screen when you touch an icon, the operation relevant to that control is not permitted.

## ▶ DVD audio mode



If  appears on the screen when you touch an icon, the operation relevant to that control is not permitted.

## Loading, ejecting and selecting discs

→P. 332

## Fast forwarding/reversing a disc

Touch and hold  or  on the screen or press and hold  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$

on  until you hear a beep.

## Slow playback

Touch  and then touch . Video is played slowly while you are touching .

## Searching a desired screen

### ■ Searching by title (DVD video mode)

**STEP 1** Touch  on the control icon screen.

**STEP 2**



Input the desired title number and then touch .

-  **Clear**: deletes the last input number
-  **OFF**: hides the icons. To display the icons, touch .
-  **Previous**: returns to the previous screen

### ■ Searching by group (DVD audio mode)

**STEP 1** Touch **Search** on the control icon screen.



Input the group number and then touch **Enter**.

**Clear**: deletes the last input number

**<< OFF**: hides the icons. To display the icons, touch **>> ON**.

**↩**: returns to the previous screen

### ■ Playing a bonus group (DVD audio mode only, if the DVD has bonus options)

**STEP 1** Touch **Search** on the control icon screen.



Input the desired bonus group number on the group search screen and touch **Enter**.

**←**: deletes the number

**↩**: returns to the previous screen

### ■ Searching by chapter/track

Press **^** or **v** on **SEEK TRACK** to select a chapter/track.



■ **Selecting a menu number (DVD audio mode only)**

**STEP 1** Touch **Select Number** on the control icon screen.

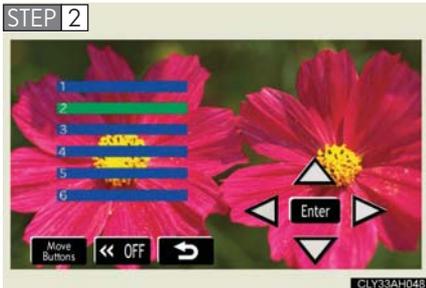


Input the desired menu number on the screen and touch **Enter**.

**Using the DVD menu**

**STEP 1** Touch **Menu** or **Top Menu** on the control icon screen.

Touch  if the menu control key does not appear on the menu screen.



Touch **▲**, **▼**, **◀** or **▶** to select a menu item, then touch **Enter** to select.

-  : moves icons up or down
-  **OFF** : hides icons. To display icons, touch  **ON**.
-  : returns to the previous screen

Note that specific items or the operating method differs from one DVD to another. Refer to the manual that comes with the DVD disc. (The above image is an example.)

## Changing the subtitle language



Touch **Subtitle** on the control icon screen.

Each time you touch the switch, the next available language is selected.

**Hide** : hides the subtitles

**↩** : returns to the previous screen

## Changing the audio language (DVD video only)

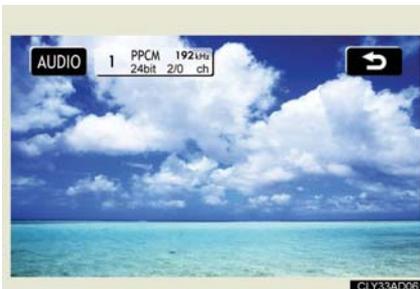


Touch **AUDIO** on the control icon screen.

Each time you touch the switch, the next available language is selected.

**↩** : returns to the previous screen

## Changing the audio format (DVD audio only)



Touch **AUDIO** on the control icon screen.

Each time you touch the switch, the next available audio format is selected.

**↩** : returns to the previous screen

## Changing the angle (If the angle option is available)

**STEP 1** Touch **Angle** on the control icon screen.

**STEP 2**



Touch **Angle**.

Each time you touch the switch, the next available angle is selected.

**↩**: returns to the previous screen

## Initial DVD setup

### ■ Displaying "Setup Menu" screen

**STEP 1** Touch **Setup** on the control icon screen.

**STEP 2**



After you change the initial settings, touch **Enter**.

**Default**: restores default settings

### ■ Setting audio language

**STEP 1** Touch **Audio Language** on the “Setup Menu” screen.

**STEP 2** Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, touch **Other** and input the desired language code. (→P. 345)

: returns to the previous screen

### ■ Setting subtitle language

**STEP 1** Touch **Subtitle Language** on the “Setup Menu” screen.

**STEP 2** Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, touch **Other** and input the desired language code. (→P. 345)

: returns to the previous screen

### ■ Setting menu language

**STEP 1** Touch **DVD Language** on the “Setup Menu” screen.

**STEP 2** Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, touch **Other** and input the desired language code. (→P. 345)

: returns to the previous screen

### ■ Setting angle mark “ON” or “OFF”

If the DVD has angle options, you can turn the angle mark on or off.

Touch **Angle Mark** on the “Setup Menu” screen. Each time you touch the switch, the multi angle mark on the screen turns on or off alternately.

## ■ Parental lock

**STEP 1** Touch **Parental Lock** on the “Setup Menu” screen.



Input the 4-digit personal code and then touch **Enter**.

If you enter wrong numbers, touch **←** to delete the numbers.

Touch **←** 10 times to reset the personal code.

**STEP 3** Select a parental level (1 - 8). (→P. 354)

**↩**: returns to the previous screen

## ■ Entering a language code

If you touch **Other** on the “Select Audio Language” screen, “Select Subtitle Language” screen or “Select DVD Language” screen, you can select a language by entering the 4-digit language code if that language is available.



Input the 4-digit language code and then touch **Enter**.

**←**: deletes the last input digit

**↩**: returns to the previous screen

## ● Language codes

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
0514	English	0207	Bulgarian	0712	Galician
0618	French	0208	Bihari	0714	Guarani
0405	German	0209	Bislama	0721	Gujarati
0920	Italian	0214	Bengali	0801	Hausa
0519	Spanish	0215	Tibetan	0809	Hindi
2608	Chinese	0218	Breton	0818	Croatian
1412	Dutch	0301	Catalan	0821	Hungarian
1620	Portuguese	0315	Corsican	0825	Armenian
1922	Swedish	0319	Czech	0901	Interlingua
1821	Russian	0325	Welsh	0905	Interlingue
1115	Korean	0401	Danish	0911	Inupiak
0512	Greek	0426	Bhutani	0914	Indonesian
0101	Afar	0515	Esperanto	0919	Icelandic
0102	Abkhazian	0520	Estonian	0923	Hebrew
0106	Afrikaans	0521	Basque	1001	Japanese
0113	Amharic	0601	Persian	1009	Yiddish
0118	Arabic	0609	Finnish	1023	Javanese
0119	Assamese	0610	Fiji	1101	Georgian
0125	Aymara	0615	Faroese	1111	Kazakh
0126	Azerbaijani	0625	Frisian	1112	Greenlandic
0201	Bashkir	0701	Irish	1113	Cambodian
0205	Byelorussian	0704	Scots-Gaelic	1114	Kannada

### 3-3. Using the audio system

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
1119	Kashmiri	1415	Norwegian	1914	Shona
1121	Kurdish	1503	Occitan	1915	Somali
1125	Kirghiz	1513	(Afan) Oromo	1917	Albanian
1201	Latin	1518	Oriya	1918	Serbian
1214	Lingala	1601	Panjabi	1919	Siswati
1215	Laothian	1612	Polish	1920	Sesotho
1220	Lithuanian	1619	Pashto, Pushto	1921	Sundanese
1222	Latvian	1721	Quechua	1923	Swahili
1307	Malagasy	1813	Rhaeto- Romance	2001	Tamil
1309	Maori	1814	Kirundi	2005	Telugu
1311	Macedonian	1815	Romanian	2007	Tajik
1312	Malayalam	1823	Kinyarwanda	2008	Thai
1314	Mongolian	1901	Sanskrit	2009	Tigrinya
1315	Moldavian	1904	Sindhi	2011	Turkmen
1318	Marathi	1907	Sangho	2012	Tagalog
1319	Malay	1908	Serbo- Croatian	2014	Setswana
1320	Maltese	1909	Sinhalese	2015	Tonga
1325	Burmese	1911	Slovak	2018	Turkish
1401	Nauru	1912	Slovenian	2019	Tsonga
1405	Nepali	1913	Samoan	2020	Tatar

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
2023	Twi	2209	Vietnamese	2515	Yoruba
2111	Ukrainian	2215	Volapük	2621	Zulu
2118	Urdu	2315	Wolof		
2126	Uzbek	2408	Xhosa		

### ■ Error messages

If “Region Code Error” is displayed, check the region code printed on the DVD matches the player’s region code.

If a different message is displayed: →P. 321

### 3-3. Using the audio system

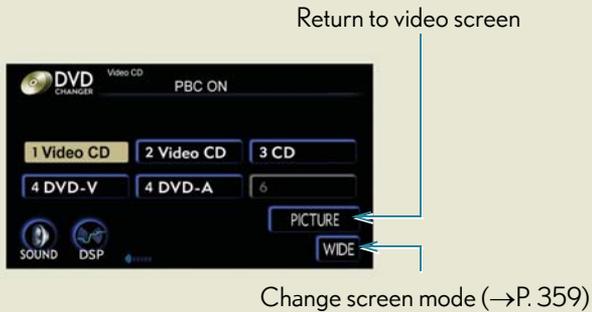
## Playing a video CD

For safety reasons, you can enjoy the visual contents of discs only when the vehicle is completely stopped with the “ENGINE START STOP” switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode and the parking brake applied. While you are driving, only audio contents may be played.

Insert a disc or press  with a disc inserted.

#### ■ Video control screen

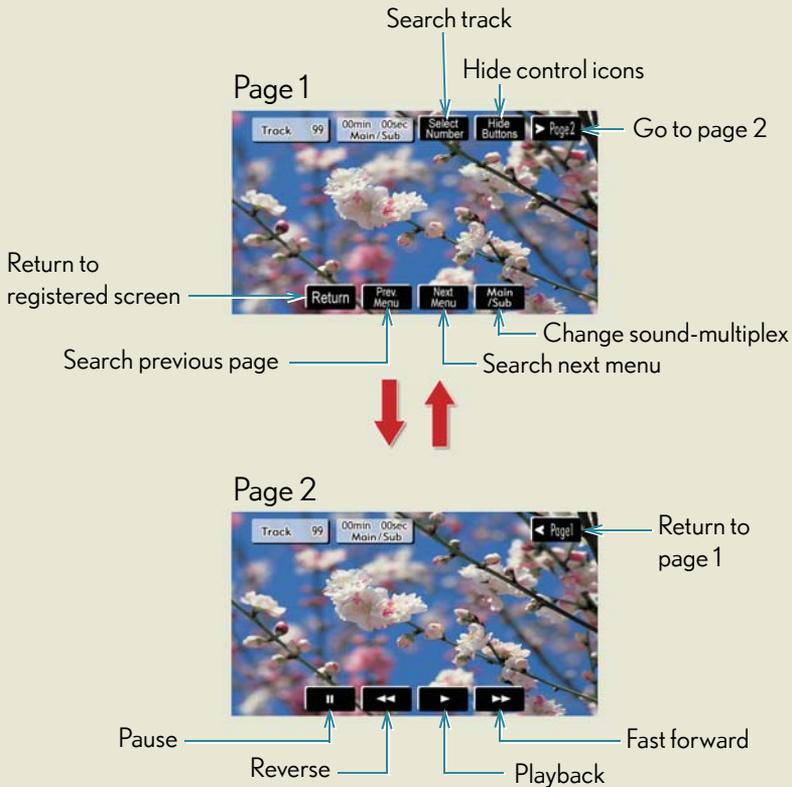
Press  while the disc is playing, and the following screen appears.



GLY33AD067

### ■ Control icon screen

Touch any part of the screen if no icons are shown while watching a video CD, and the following screen appears.



CLY33AH051

If  appears on the screen when you touch an icon, the operation relevant to that control is not permitted.

### Loading, ejecting and selecting discs

→P. 332

### Fast forwarding/reversing a video CD

Touch and hold  or  on the control icon screen or press and

hold  or  on  until you hear a beep.

### Slow playback

Touch  and then touch  on the control icon screen. Video is played slowly while you are touching .

### Using the video CD menu

Touch  on the control icon screen.

Refer to the manual that comes with the video CD for specific menu items.

## Selecting a desired screen

### ■ Searching manually

Touch **Prev. Menu** or **Next Menu** on the screen, or press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  until the desired screen appears.

### ■ Searching by number

**STEP 1** Touch **Select Number** on the control icon screen.



Input the desired track number on the screen and touch **Enter**.

**Clear**: deletes the last input number

**<< OFF**: hides icons. To display icons, touch **>> ON**.

**>>**: returns to the previous screen

## Changing the sound-multiplex mode

Touch **Main/Sub** on the control icon screen. The mode cycles through each time the switch is touched.

“Main” → “Sub” → “Main/Sub”



### ■ Error messages

→P. 321

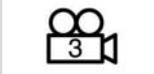
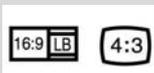
### 3-3. Using the audio system

## DVD player and DVD video disc information

#### ■ DVD video discs

- The DVD player conforms to NTSC color TV formats.
- Region code: Some DVD video discs have a region code indicating the region in which you can use the DVD video disc. If the DVD video disc is not labeled as “ALL” or “1”, you cannot use it on this DVD player. If you attempt to play an inappropriate DVD video disc on this player, “Region Code Error” appears on the screen. Even if the DVD video disc does not have a region code, you may not be able to use it.

#### ■ Symbols shown on DVD video discs

Symbol	Meaning
	Indicates NTSC format
	Indicates the number of audio tracks
	Indicates the number of language subtitles
	Indicates the number of angles
	Indicates the screen display ratios available Wide screen: 16:9 Standard: 4:3
	Indicates the disc's region code ALL: in all countries Number: region code

### ■ Discs that can be used

Discs with the marks shown below can be used.

Playback may not be possible depending on recording format or disc features, or due to scratches, dirt or deterioration.



CDs with copy-protection features may not play correctly.

### ■ DVD player protection feature

To protect the internal components, playback is automatically stopped when a problem is detected while the DVD player is being used.

### ■ If discs are left inside the DVD player or in the ejected position for extended periods

Discs may be damaged and may not play properly.

### ■ Lens cleaners

Do not use lens cleaners. Doing so may damage the DVD player.

### ■ DVD video disc information

#### ● DVD video discs

A DVD video disc is a Digital Versatile Disc that holds video. DVD video discs have adopted "MPEG2", one of the world standards of digital compression technologies. The picture data is compressed by 1/40 on average and stored. Variable rate encoded technology in which the volume of data assigned to the picture is changed depending on the picture format has also been adopted. Audio data is stored using PCM and Dolby digital, which enables higher quality of sound. Furthermore, multi-angle and multi-language features will also help you enjoy the more advanced technology of DVD video.

- Viewer restrictions

This feature limits what can be viewed in conformity with the level of restrictions of the country. The level of restrictions varies depending on the DVD video disc. Some DVD video discs cannot be played at all, or violent scenes are skipped or replaced with other scenes.

Level 1: DVD video discs for children can be played.

Level 2-7: DVD video discs for children and G-rated movies can be played.

Level 8: All types of DVD video discs can be played.

- Multi-angle option

You can enjoy the same scene from different angles.

- Multi-language option

You can select the subtitle and audio languages.

- Region codes

The region codes are provided on DVD players and DVD discs. If the DVD video disc does not have the same region code as the DVD player, you cannot play the disc on the DVD player. (→P. 352)

- Audio

This DVD player can play linear PCM, Dolby Digital and MPEG audio format DVDs. Other decoded types cannot be played.

- Title and chapter

Video and audio programs stored in DVD video discs are divided into parts by title and chapter.

Title: The largest unit of the video and audio programs stored on DVD video discs. Usually, one movie, one album, or one audio program is assigned as a title.

Chapter: A title is comprised of one or more chapters.

## ■ Sound

### ● Dolby Digital

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories

“Dolby”, “Pro Logic”, and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories. Confidential unpublished works.

©1992-1997 Dolby Laboratories. All rights reserved.

This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by method claims of certain U. S. patents and other intellectual property rights owned by Macrovision Corporation and other rights owners. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision Corporation, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision Corporation.

Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

### ● DTS

“DTS” and “DTS Digital Surround” are registered trademarks of Digital Theater System, Inc.

## CAUTION

### ■ DVD video precaution

Conversational speech on some DVDs is recorded at a low volume to emphasize the impact of sound effects. If you adjust the volume assuming that the conversations represent the maximum volume level that the DVD will play, you may be startled by louder sound effects or startled when you change to a different audio source.

Loud sounds may have a significant impact on the human body or pose a driving hazard. Keep this in mind when you adjust the volume.

## NOTICE

### ■ Unsuitable discs, and player precautions

→P. 323

### 3-3. Using the audio system

## Optimal use of the audio/video system

Press  to display the audio/video control screen.

▶ Operating the radio and audio CD

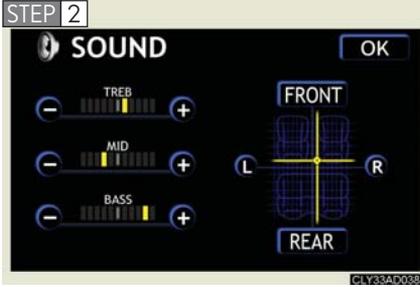


▶ Operating the DVD video/audio and video CD



## Adjusting sound quality and balance

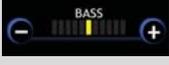
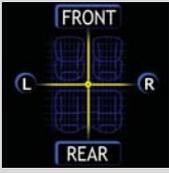
**STEP 1** Touch  on the screen.



Adjust the settings, referring to the following table.

Once you have finished, touch

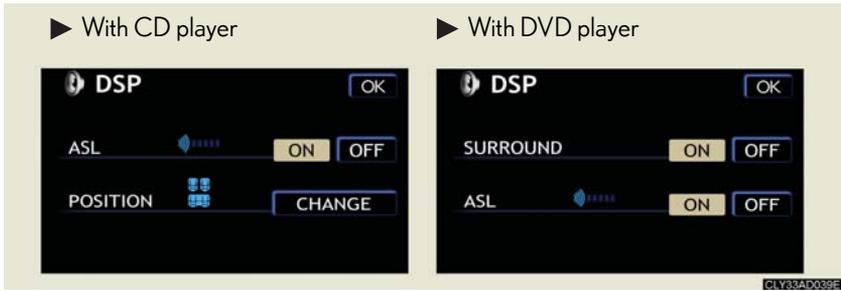
.

Sound quality mode	Display	Level	Touch
High-pitched tones*		-5 to 5	 or 
Mid-pitched tones*		-5 to 5	
Low-pitched tones*		-5 to 5	
Front/rear volume balance		F7 to R7	 or 
Left/right volume balance		L7 to R7	 or 

\*: The sound quality level is adjusted individually in each radio, CD or DVD mode.

## Setting DSP (Digital Signal Processing)

The following features can be set as desired by touching  on the screen:



### ■ Turning Automatic Sound Levelizer (ASL) “ON” or “OFF”

Touch  or .

ASL automatically adjusts the volume and tone quality according to the noise level as you drive your vehicle.

### ■ Changing the listening position (with CD player only)

The speaker balance can be changed to produce the best sound for each listening position.

Touch .

The listening position changes as follows each time the switch is touched.

Display	Listening position
	Position best suited to the driver's seat
	Position best suited to the driver's and front passenger's seat

Display	Listening position
	Position best suited to the rear seats
	Position best suited to all seats

### ■ Turning the surround “ON” or “OFF” (with DVD player only)

Touch **ON** or **OFF**.

### Setting the screen ratio mode (with DVD player only)

**STEP 1** Touch **WIDE** on the screen.



Touch one of **NORMAL**, **WIDE1** or **WIDE2** to match the screen ratio printed on the DVD.

Screen ratio mode	Details
“NORMAL”	Suitable for 4:3 screen ratio
“WIDE1”	Expands the normal screen horizontally to fill the display
“WIDE2”	Suitable for 16:9 screen ratio

### 3-3. Using the audio system

## Using the AUX adapter

This adapter can be used to connect a portable audio device and listen to it through the vehicle's speakers.

**STEP 1**



Connect the portable audio device.

**STEP 2** Press **DISC/AUX**.

#### ■ Operating portable audio devices connected to the audio system

The volume can be adjusted using the vehicle's audio controls. All other adjustments must be made on the portable audio device itself.

#### ■ When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet

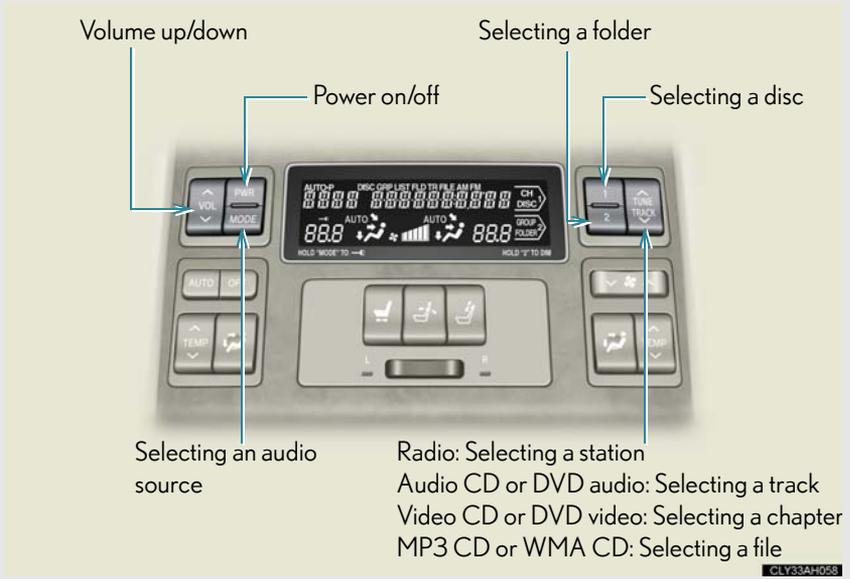
Noise may occur during playback. Use the power source of the portable audio device.

### 3-3. Using the audio system

## Using the rear seat audio controls (if equipped)

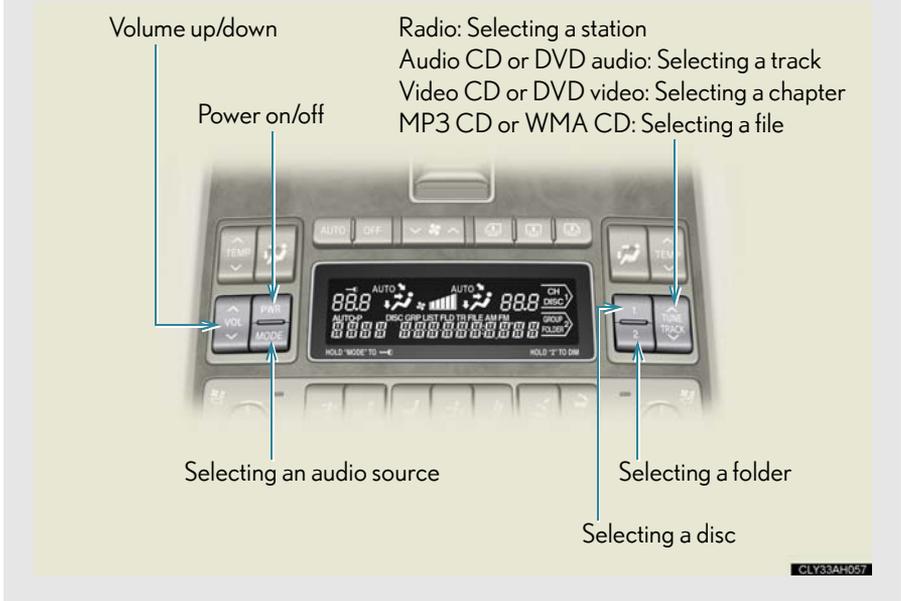
Some front audio features can be controlled from the rear seats.

#### ► 5-seat models



### 3-3. Using the audio system

#### ▶ 4-seat models



#### Turning the power

Press **PWR** to turn the front audio system on.

Pressing the button again turns the system off.

#### Changing the audio source

Press **MODE** to change the audio source. The audio source changes as follows each time the button is pressed. If a CD or DVD is not inserted, that mode will be skipped.

With CD player:

AM → FM1 → FM2 → CD player → AUX → AM

With DVD player:

AM → FM1 → FM2 → DVD player → AUX → AM

## Adjusting the volume

Press  $\wedge$  on  to increase the volume and  $\vee$  to decrease the volume.

Press and hold the button to continue increasing or decreasing the volume.

## Selecting a radio station

**STEP 1** Press  to select a frequency band.

**STEP 2** Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  to select a radio station.

To scan for receivable stations, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

## Selecting a track (audio CD)

**STEP 1** Press  to select the CD player.

**STEP 2** Press  (DISC) to select a disc.

**STEP 3** Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  to select a track.

## Selecting a track (audio CD or DVD audio) or chapter (video CD or DVD video)

**STEP 1** Press  to select the DVD player.

**STEP 2** Press  (DISC) to select a disc.

**STEP 3** Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  to select a track or chapter.

#### Selecting a file (MP3 CD or WMA CD)

**STEP 1** Press  to select the CD player or DVD player.

**STEP 2** Press  (DISC) to select a disc.

**STEP 3** Press  (FOLDER) to select a folder.

**STEP 4** Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  to select a file.

#### ■ Button lock function

To prevent inadvertent operation, some buttons on the rear armrest can be locked. (→P. 281)

#### ■ Rear control panel illumination off function

Control panel illumination on the rear armrest can be turned off. (→P. 282)

#### ■ When “ERROR”, “WAIT” or “NO MUSIC” is shown on the display

Refer to the following and take the appropriate measures. If the problem is not rectified, take the vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

“ERROR”: This indicates a trouble either in the disc or inside the player. The disc may be dirty, damaged, or inserted up-side down.

“WAIT”: Operation is stopped due to a high temperature inside the player. Eject the disc and allow the player to cool down.

“NO MUSIC”: This indicates that an MP3/WMA file is not included in the disc.

### 3-3. Using the audio system

## Using the steering wheel audio switches

Some audio features can be controlled using the switches on the steering wheel.



**1** Turns the power on, selects audio source

**2** Volume

**3** Radio mode: Selects radio stations

CD mode: Selects tracks, files (MP3 and WMA) and discs

DVD mode: Selects tracks, chapters and discs

3

Interior features

### Turning on the power

Press  when the audio system is turned off.

The audio system can be turned off by holding the switch down for 1 second or more.

### Changing the audio source

Press  when the audio system is turned on. The audio source changes as follows each time the switch is pressed. If no discs are inserted in the player, that mode will be skipped.

With CD player:

FM1→FM2→CD player→AUX→AM→FM1

With DVD player:

FM1→FM2→DVD player→AUX→AM→FM1

### Adjusting the volume

Pull  to increase the volume and  to decrease the volume.

Hold up the switch to continue increasing or decreasing the volume.

### Selecting a radio station

**STEP 1** Press  to select the radio mode.

**STEP 2** Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  to select a radio station.

To scan for receivable stations, press and hold  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on the switch until you hear a beep.

### Selecting a track/file or chapter

**STEP 1** Press  to select the CD or DVD mode.

**STEP 2** Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  to select the desired track/file or chapter.

### Selecting a disc in the CD or DVD player

**STEP 1** Press  to select the CD or DVD mode.

**STEP 2** Press and hold  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  until a beep is heard.

### Canceling automatic selection of a radio station

Press the same switch.

### CAUTION

#### To reduce the risk of an accident

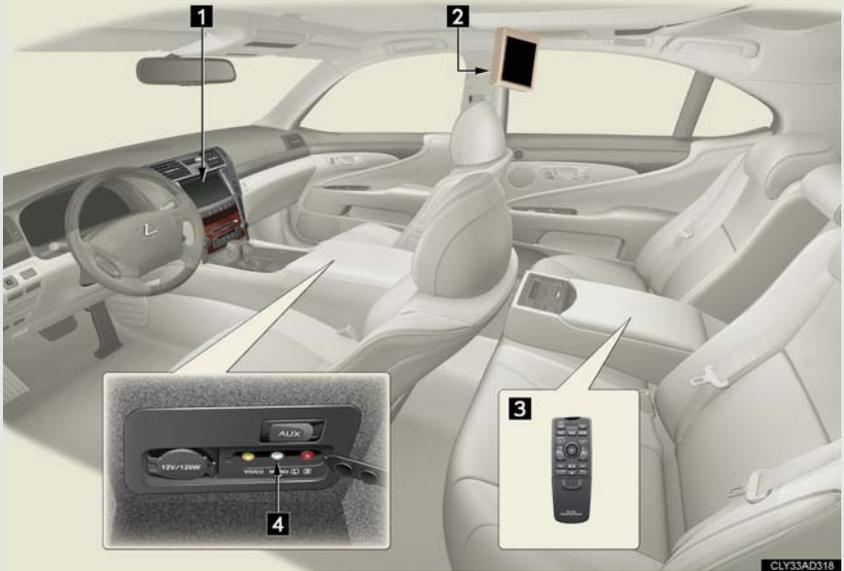
Exercise care when operating the audio switches on the steering wheel.

### 3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

## Rear seat entertainment system features (if equipped)

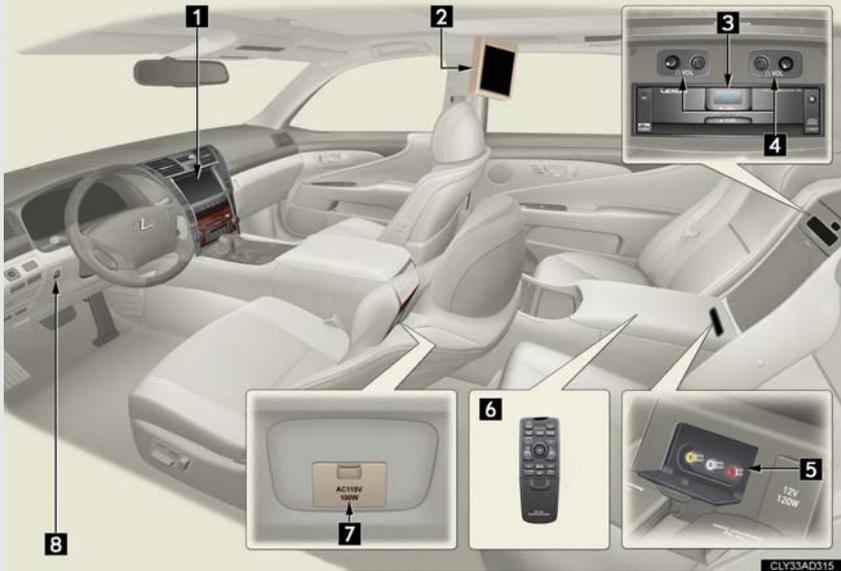
The rear seat entertainment system is designed for the rear passengers to enjoy audio and DVD video separately from the front audio system.

#### ► 5-seat models



- 1 Front audio system
- 2 Display
- 3 Rear seat entertainment system controller
- 4 A/V input adapter

► 4-seat models



- 1 Front audio system
- 2 Display
- 3 DVD player
- 4 Headphone volume control dials and headphone jacks
- 5 A/V input adapter
- 6 Rear seat entertainment system controller
- 7 Power outlet
- 8 Power outlet main switch

## Rear seat entertainment system controller



To use the buttons under the cover, slide the cover down.

## Opening and closing the display

### ■ Opening and closing the display

#### ▶ Without navigation system



#### ● Open

Press **CLOSE** **OPEN**, **DVD**, **VIDEO** or **▶ ||**.

#### ● Close

Press **CLOSE** **OPEN** or **OFF**.

If the display is closed with an image shown, the image will automatically turn off. (The sound will not be turned off.)

Opening and closing operations can be performed from the front seat. (→P. 245)

► With navigation system



● Open

Press **CLOSE OPEN** , **DVD** , **MAP** , **VIDEO** or **▶ ||** .

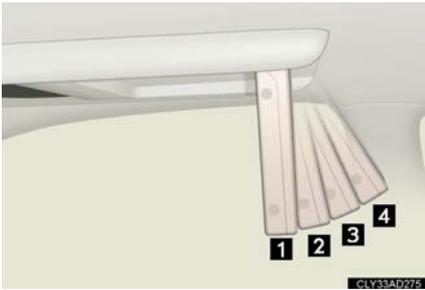
● Close

Press **CLOSE OPEN** or **OFF** .

If the display is closed with an image shown, the image will automatically turn off. (The sound will not be turned off.)

Opening and closing operations can be performed from the front seat. (→P. 245)

■ Tilting the display



The display angles change as follows each time **TILT** is pressed.

**1** → **2** → **3** → **4** → **1**

The display angle is memorized and will be recalled when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode again.

### ■ Caution screen



This screen appears for a few seconds when the rear display is opened. During this time, only

**CLOSE**  
**OPEN** can be operated.

### Headphone jacks (if equipped)



To listen to the rear audio, use headphones.

- 1 To use the headphones  
Connect them to the jack.
- 2 To adjust the volume

Turn the knob clockwise to increase the volume. Turn the knob counterclockwise to decrease the volume.

## Changing the source

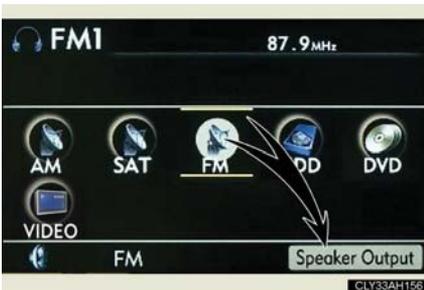


Press **SOURCE** to display the audio source selection screen.



Select an audio source.

## Changing the speaker output



To play the rear audio over the speakers in the vehicle, turn **Speaker Output** on.

### ■ The rear seat entertainment system can be used when

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

### ■ Jam protection function

The display will stop closing and return to its previous position if something gets in the way of it closing.

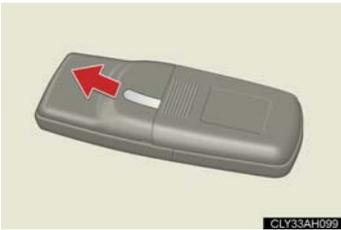
### ■ When appears on the screen

It indicates that the selected icon cannot be used at this time.

### ■ Rear system lock

→P. 245

### ■ Before using the controller (for new vehicle owners)



An insulating sheet is set to prevent the batteries from being depleted. Remove the insulating sheet before using the remote control.

### ■ When the controller batteries are fully depleted



Remove the depleted batteries and install new batteries.

### ■ Headphones

With some headphones generally available in the market, it may be difficult to catch signals properly. Lexus recommends the use of Lexus genuine wireless headphones.

Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

### ■ Volume

- Adjust the volume when you connect the headphones to the jack. Loud sounds may have a significant impact on the human body.
- Conversational speech on some DVDs is recorded at a low volume to emphasize the impact of sound effects. If you adjust the volume assuming that the conversations represent the maximum volume level that the DVD will play, you may be startled by louder sound effects or when you change to a different audio source. Be sure to adjust the volume with this in mind.

### CAUTION

#### ■ When the rear seat entertainment system is not used

Keep the display closed.

In the event of an accident or sudden braking, an occupant may hit the opened display resulting in injury.

#### ■ To prevent accidents and electric shock

Do not disassemble or modify the remote control.

#### ■ When the remote controller is not used

Stow the remote controller.

Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

#### ■ Closing the display

Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.

#### ■ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A. and Canada

- Laser products (→P. 311)

 NOTICE**■ Cleaning the display**

Wipe the display with a dry soft cloth.

If the screen is wiped with a rough cloth, the surface of the screen may be scratched.

**■ To prevent damage to the remote control**

- Keep the remote control away from direct sunlight, high temperature and high humidity.
- Do not drop or knock the remote control against hard objects.
- Do not sit on or place heavy objects on the remote control.

**■ DVD player**

Never try to disassemble or oil any part of the DVD player. Do not insert anything other than a disc into the slot.

**■ Closing the display**

Do not close the display using your hand. Doing so may result in a malfunction.

### 3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

## Using the radio



Select radio mode on the source screen to display the control screen.

#### Selecting a preset station

Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  until the desired station band appears on the screen.

#### Tuning the station

Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  until the desired station appears on the screen.

Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  and the stations will be searched automatically one after another.

### 3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

## Using the front DVD player



- 1 Turning on DVD player mode
- 2 Selecting a disc

### Selecting a disc



Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  until the desired slot number appears on the screen.

- Audio CD, CD text →P. 380
- MP3/WMA disc →P. 381
- DVD video/audio →P. 383
- Video CD →P. 396

### 3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

## Using the rear DVD player (if equipped)



### Loading a disc



Open the cover.



Insert the disc into the slot with the label side up.

The “DISC” indicator light turns on while the disc is loaded.

The player will play the track or chapter, and will repeat it after it reaches the end.

**STEP 3** Close the cover.

## Ejecting a disc

STEP 1



Open the cover.

STEP 2



Press  and remove the disc.

STEP 3 Close the cover.

## Playing a disc



- Audio CD, CD text →P. 380
- MP3 disc →P. 381
- DVD video/audio →P. 383
- Video CD →P. 396

The rear DVD player cannot play WMA files.

### 3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

## Playing an audio CD/CD text

#### ■ Selecting a track



Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  until the desired track number appears on the screen.

#### ■ Fast forwarding or reversing a track

Press and hold  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  .

### 3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

## Playing WMA (front DVD player system)/MP3 discs

#### ■ Selecting a file



Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  until the desired file number appears on the screen.

#### ■ Selecting a folder

Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  until the desired folder number appears on the screen.

#### ■ Fast forwarding or reversing a file

Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on .

### 3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

## Playing the HDD audio (vehicles with navigation system)



Select "HDD" on the source screen to display the control screen.

### Selecting a track

Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  until the desired track number appears on the screen.

### Selecting a list

Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  until the desired track number appears on the screen.

### Fast forwarding or reversing a track

Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  .

## 3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system Playing a DVD video/audio

### ■ Controller

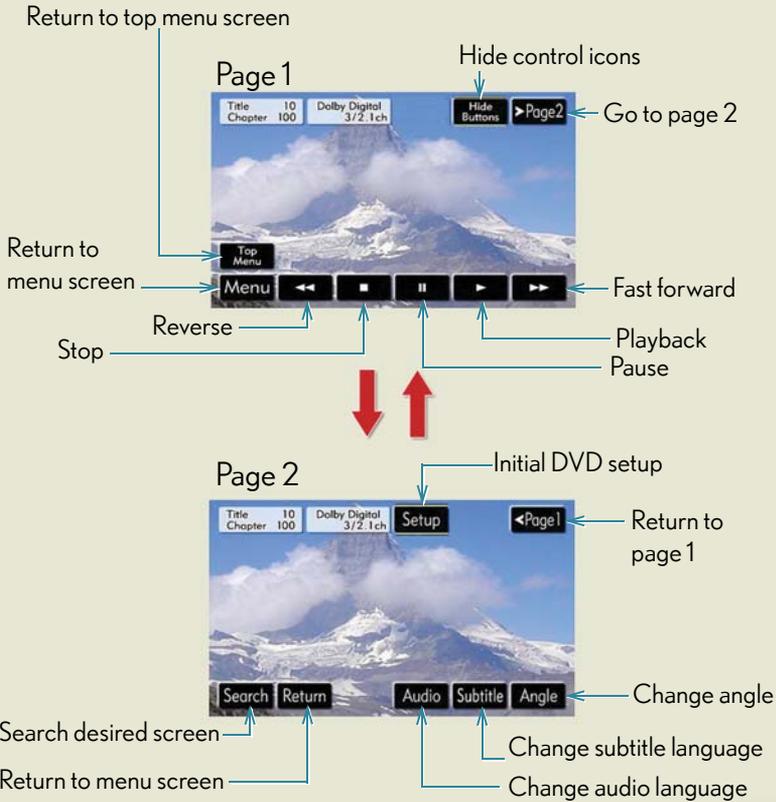


- 1 Turning on the DVD mode
- 2 Selecting a chapter/track
- 3 Reversing a disc
- 4 Turning on the title selection screen
- 5 Changing the subtitle language
- 6 Turning on the control icon screen
- 7 Changing the audio language
- 8 Stopping a disc
- 9 Turning on the menu disc
- 10 Fast forwarding a disc
- 11 Playing/pausing a disc
- 12 Selecting an icon
- 13 Inputting the selected icon

### ■ Control icon screen

Press **OPTION** if no icons are shown while watching a DVD video, and the following screen appears.

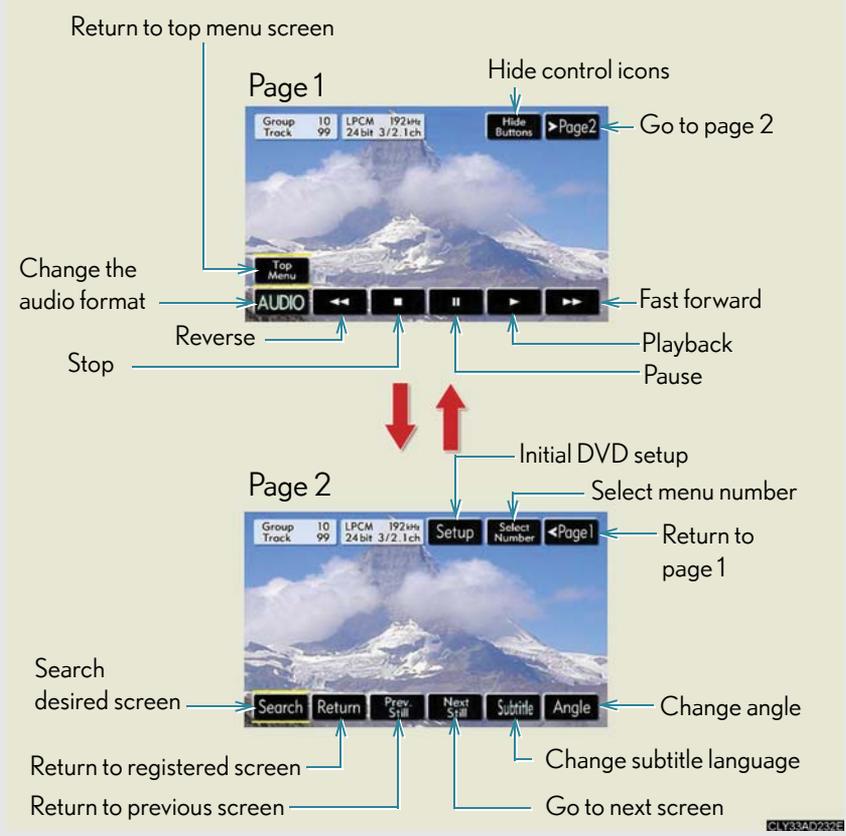
#### ▶ DVD video mode



CLY33AD231E

If  appears on the screen when you select an icon, the operation relevant to that control is not permitted.

▶ DVD audio mode



If  appears on the screen when you select an icon, the operation relevant to that control is not permitted.

### Turning on or off the control icons

Press  to turn on the control icons.

Press  once again or select  to turn off the control icon.

### Turning on the title selection screen

Press  or select  to turn on the title selection screen. For the operation of the title selection screen, see the separate manual for the DVD disc.

### Turning on the menu screen (DVD video mode only)

Press  or select  to turn on the menu screen. For the operation of the menu screen, see the separate manual for the DVD disc.

### Fast forwarding/reversing a disc

Perform either of the following:

● Select  or  on the screen by pressing and holding .

● Press and hold  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on .

### Slow playback

Select  and then select . Video is played slowly when you select  by pressing and holding .

## Returning to the previous screen

Select **Return** to return to the previous screen. For the operation of the menu screen, see the separate manual for the DVD disc.

## Searching a desired screen

### ■ Searching by title (DVD video mode)

**STEP 1** Select **Search** on the control icon screen.



Input the desired title number and then select **Enter**.

**Clear**: deletes the last input number

**<< OFF**: hides the icons. To display the icons, select **>> ON**.

**↩**: returns to the previous screen

### ■ Searching by group (DVD audio mode)

**STEP 1** Select **Search** on the control icon screen.



Input the group number and then select **Enter**.

**Clear**: deletes the last input number

**<< OFF**: hides the icons. To display the icons, select **>> ON**.

**↩**: returns to the previous screen

■ **Playing a bonus group (DVD audio mode only, if the DVD has bonus options)**

**STEP 1** Select **Search** on the control icon screen.

**STEP 2**



Input the desired bonus group number on the group search screen and select **Enter**.

 : deletes the number

 : returns to the previous screen

■ **Searching by chapter/track**

Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  to select a chapter/track.

■ **Selecting a menu number (DVD audio mode only)**

**STEP 1** Select **Select Number** on the control icon screen.

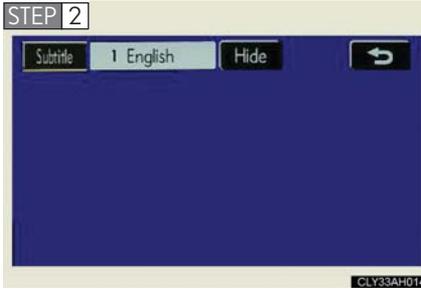
**STEP 2**



Input the desired menu number on the screen and select **Enter**.

## Changing the subtitle language

**STEP 1** Press **SUB TITLE** or select **Subtitle** on the control icon screen.



Select **Subtitle**.

Each time you press **ENT**, the next available language is selected.

**Hide** : hides the control icons

**←** : returns to the previous screen

## Changing the audio language (DVD video only)

**STEP 1** Press **AUDIO** or select **Audio** on the control icon screen.



Select **AUDIO**.

Each time you press **ENT**, the next available language is selected.

**←** : returns to the previous screen

### Changing the audio format (DVD audio only)

**STEP 1** Press **AUDIO** or select **AUDIO** on the control icon screen.

**STEP 2**



Select **Audio**.

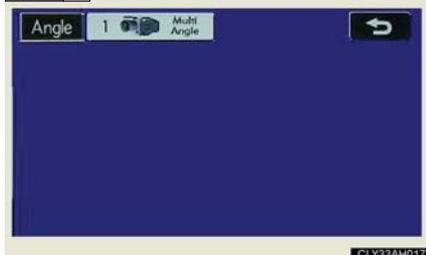
Each time you press **ENT**, the next available audio format is selected.

**↩**: returns to the previous screen

### Changing the angle (If the angle option is available)

**STEP 1** Select **Angle** on the control icon screen.

**STEP 2**



Select **Angle**.

Each time you press **ENT**, the next available angle is selected.

**↩**: returns to the previous screen

## Initial DVD setup

### ■ Displaying “Setup Menu” screen

**STEP 1** Select **Setup** on the control icon screen.

**STEP 2**



After you change the initial settings, select **Enter**.

**Default**: restores default settings

### ■ Setting audio language

**STEP 1** Select **Audio Language** on the “Setup Menu” screen.

**STEP 2** Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, select **Other** and input the desired language code. (→P. 393)

**↶**: returns to the previous screen

### ■ Setting subtitle language

**STEP 1** Select **Subtitle Language** on the “Setup Menu” screen.

**STEP 2** Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, select **Other** and input the desired language code. (→P. 393)

**↶**: returns to the previous screen

### ■ Setting menu language

**STEP 1** Select **DVD Language** on the “Setup Menu” screen.

**STEP 2** Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, select **Other** and input the desired language code. (→P. 393)

**↶**: returns to the previous screen

### ■ Setting angle mark “ON” or “OFF”

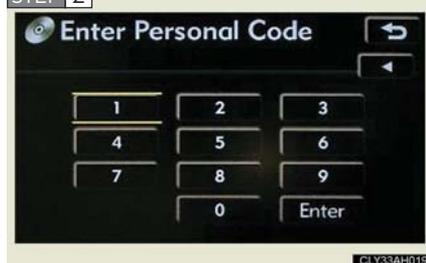
If the DVD has angle options, you can turn the angle mark on or off.

Select **Angle Mark** on the “Setup Menu” screen. Each time you press , the multi angle mark on the screen turns on or off alternately.

### ■ Parental lock

**STEP 1** Select **Parental Lock** on the “Setup Menu” screen.

**STEP 2**



Input the 4-digit personal code and then select **Enter**.

If you enter wrong numbers, select  to delete the numbers.

Select  10 times to reset the personal code.

**STEP 3** Select a parental level (1 - 8). (→P. 404)

: returns to the previous screen

### ■ Entering a language code

If you select **Other** on the “Select Audio Language” screen, “Select Subtitle Language” screen or “DVD Language” screen, you can select a language by entering the 4-digit language code if that language is available.



Input the 4-digit language code and then select **Enter**.

: deletes the last input digit

: returns to the previous screen

● Language codes

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
0514	English	0207	Bulgarian	0712	Galician
0618	French	0208	Bihari	0714	Guarani
0405	German	0209	Bislama	0721	Gujarati
0920	Italian	0214	Bengali	0801	Hausa
0519	Spanish	0215	Tibetan	0809	Hindi
2608	Chinese	0218	Breton	0818	Croatian
1412	Dutch	0301	Catalan	0821	Hungarian
1620	Portuguese	0315	Corsican	0825	Armenian
1922	Swedish	0319	Czech	0901	Interlingua
1821	Russian	0325	Welsh	0905	Interlingue
1115	Korean	0401	Danish	0911	Inupiak
0512	Greek	0426	Bhutani	0914	Indonesian
0101	Afar	0515	Esperanto	0919	Icelandic
0102	Abkhazian	0520	Estonian	0923	Hebrew
0106	Afrikaans	0521	Basque	1001	Japanese
0113	Amharic	0601	Persian	1009	Yiddish
0118	Arabic	0609	Finnish	1023	Javanese
0119	Assamese	0610	Fiji	1101	Georgian
0125	Aymara	0615	Faroese	1111	Kazakh
0126	Azerbaijani	0625	Frisian	1112	Greenlandic
0201	Bashkir	0701	Irish	1113	Cambodian
0205	Byelorussian	0704	Scots-Gaelic	1114	Kannada

### 3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
1119	Kashmiri	1415	Norwegian	1914	Shona
1121	Kurdish	1503	Occitan	1915	Somali
1125	Kirghiz	1513	(Afan) Oromo	1917	Albanian
1201	Latin	1518	Oriya	1918	Serbian
1214	Lingala	1601	Panjabi	1919	Siswati
1215	Laothian	1612	Polish	1920	Sesotho
1220	Lithuanian	1619	Pashto, Pushto	1921	Sundanese
1222	Latvian	1721	Quechua	1923	Swahili
1307	Malagasy	1813	Rhaeto- Romance	2001	Tamil
1309	Maori	1814	Kirundi	2005	Telugu
1311	Macedonian	1815	Romanian	2007	Tajik
1312	Malayalam	1823	Kinyarwanda	2008	Thai
1314	Mongolian	1901	Sanskrit	2009	Tigrinya
1315	Moldavian	1904	Sindhi	2011	Turkmen
1318	Marathi	1907	Sangho	2012	Tagalog
1319	Malay	1908	Serbo- Croatian	2014	Setswana
1320	Maltese	1909	Sinhalese	2015	Tonga
1325	Burmese	1911	Slovak	2018	Turkish
1401	Nauru	1912	Slovenian	2019	Tsonga
1405	Nepali	1913	Samoan	2020	Tatar

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
2023	Twi	2209	Vietnamese	2515	Yoruba
2111	Ukrainian	2215	Volapük	2621	Zulu
2118	Urdu	2315	Wolof		
2126	Uzbek	2408	Xhosa		

### ■ Error messages

If “Region Code Error” is displayed, check the region code printed on the DVD matches the player’s region code.

If a different message is displayed: →P. 400

### 3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

## Playing a video CD

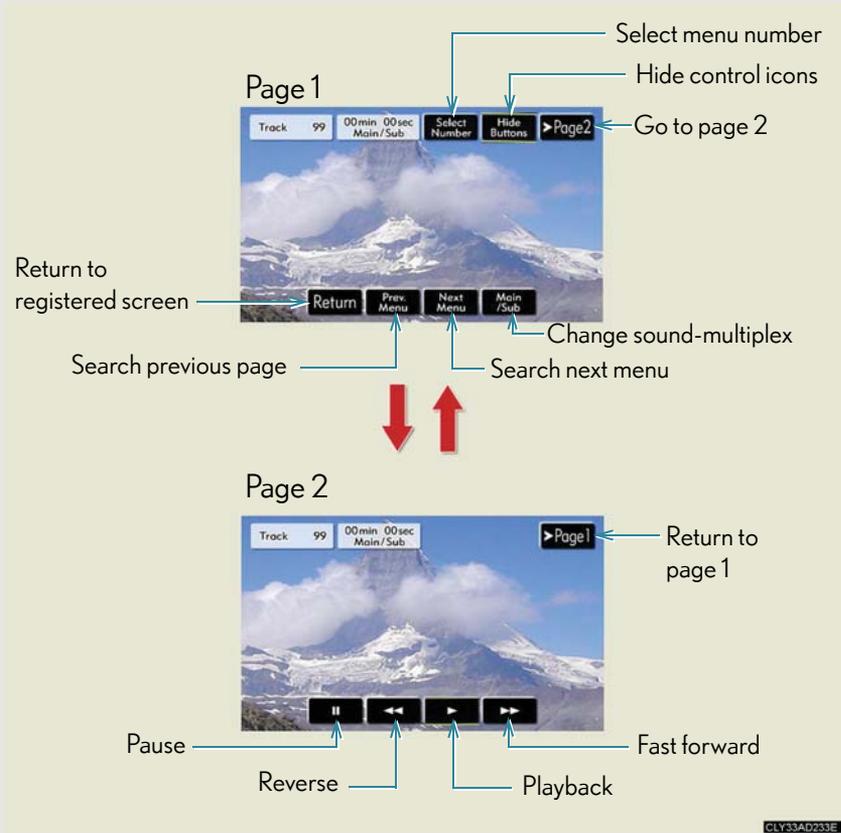
### ■ Controller



- 1 Selecting a track
- 2 Reversing a disc
- 3 Turning on the control icon screen
- 4 Stopping a disc
- 5 Fast forwarding a disc
- 6 Playing/pausing a disc
- 7 Selecting an icon
- 8 Inputting the selected icon

■ Control icon screen

Press **OPTION** if no icons are shown while watching a video CD, and the following screen appears.



If  appears on the screen when you select an icon, the operation relevant to that control is not permitted.

CLY33AD233E

### Fast forwarding/reversing the video CD

Perform either of the following:

● Select  or  on the screen by pressing and holding .

● Press and hold  or  on



### Slow playback

Select  and then select . Video is played slowly when you select  by pressing and holding .

### Using the video CD menu

Select .

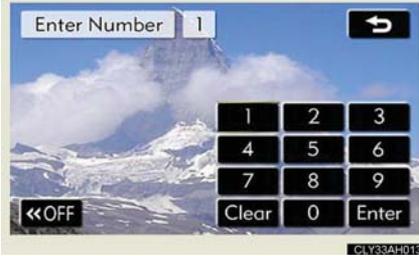
Refer to the manual that comes with the video CD for specific menu items.

## Selecting a desired screen

### ■ Selecting a menu number

**STEP 1** Select **Select Number** on the control icon screen.

**STEP 2**



Input the desired menu number on the screen and select **Enter**.

### ■ Searching manually

Select **Prev. Menu** or **Next Menu** on the screen, or press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  until the desired screen appears.

## Changing the sound-multiplex mode

Select **Main/Sub** on the control icon screen. The mode cycles through each time the  is pressed.

“Main” → “Sub” → “Main/Sub”



### 3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

## DVD player and DVD video disc information

### ■ Error messages

Refer to the following table and take the appropriate measures. If the problem is not rectified, take the vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

Message	Cause	Correction Procedures
No Disc	There is no disc in the player.	Insert a disc.
DISC X Check	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The disc X is dirty or damaged.</li><li>• The disc X is inserted upside down.</li><li>• The disc X is not playable with the player.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Clean the disc.</li><li>• Insert the disc correctly.</li><li>• Confirm the disc is playable with the player.</li></ul>
DVD Error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• There is a malfunction within the system.</li><li>• Operation is stopped due to a high temperature inside the player.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Eject the disc.</li><li>• Eject the disc and allow the player to cool down.</li></ul>
NO MUSIC FILE	This indicates that no playable data is included in the disc.	Eject the disc.

### ■ DVD video discs

- The DVD player conforms to NTSC color TV formats.
- Region code: Some DVD video discs have a region code indicating the region in which you can use the DVD video disc. If the DVD video disc is not labeled as “ALL” or “1”, you cannot use it on this DVD player. If you attempt to play an inappropriate DVD video disc on this player, “Region Code Error” appears on the screen. Even if the DVD video disc does not have a region code, you may not be able to use it.
- The rear DVD player does not support multi-channel surround sound. (only 2-channel sound is output.)

#### ■ Symbols shown on DVD video discs

Symbol	Meaning
	Indicates NTSC format
	Indicates the number of audio tracks
	Indicates the number of language subtitles
	Indicates the number of angles
	Indicates the screen display ratios available Wide screen: 16:9 Standard: 4:3
	Indicates the disc's region code ALL: in all countries Number: region code

### ■ Discs that can be used

Discs with the marks shown below can be used.

Playback may not be possible depending on recording format or disc features, or due to scratches, dirt or deterioration.



CDs with copy-protection features may not play correctly.

### ■ DVD player protection feature

To protect the internal components, playback is automatically stopped when a problem is detected while the DVD player is being used.

### ■ If discs are left inside the DVD player or in the ejected position for extended periods

Discs may be damaged and may not play properly.

### ■ Lens cleaners

Do not use lens cleaners. Doing so may damage the DVD player.

### ■ DVD video disc information

#### ● DVD video discs

A DVD video disc is a Digital Versatile Disc that holds video. DVD video discs have adopted “MPEG2”, one of the world standards of digital compression technologies. The picture data is compressed by 1/40 on average and stored. Variable rate encoded technology in which the volume of data assigned to the picture is changed depending on the picture format has also been adopted. Audio data is stored using PCM and Dolby digital, which enables higher quality of sound. Furthermore, multi-angle and multi-language features will also help you enjoy the more advanced technology of DVD video.

#### ● Viewer restrictions

This feature limits what can be viewed in conformity with the level of restrictions of the country. The level of restrictions varies depending on the DVD video disc. Some DVD video discs cannot be played at all, or violent scenes are skipped or replaced with other scenes.

Level 1: DVD video discs for children can be played.

Level 2-7: DVD video discs for children and G-rated movies can be played.

Level 8: All types of DVD video discs can be played.

#### ● Multi-angle option

You can enjoy the same scene from different angles.

#### ● Multi-language option

You can select the subtitle and audio languages.

#### ● Region codes

The region codes are provided on DVD players and DVD discs. If the DVD video disc does not have the same region code as the DVD player, you cannot play the disc on the DVD player. (→P. 401)

#### ● Audio

This DVD player can play linear PCM, Dolby Digital and MPEG audio format DVDs. Other decoded types cannot be played.

#### ● Title and chapter

Video and audio programs stored in DVD video discs are divided into parts by title and chapter.

Title: The largest unit of the video and audio programs stored on DVD video discs. Usually, one movie, one album, or one audio program is assigned as a title.

Chapter: A title is comprised of one or more chapters.

## ■ Sound

### ● Dolby Digital

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories.

“Dolby”, “Pro Logic”, and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories. Confidential unpublished works.

©1992-1997 Dolby Laboratories. All rights reserved.

This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by method claims of certain U. S. patents and other intellectual property rights owned by Macrovision Corporation and other rights owners. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision Corporation, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision Corporation.

Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

### ● DTS

“DTS” and “DTS Digital Surround” are registered trademarks of Digital Theater System, Inc.

## ■ MP3 and WMA files

MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER 3) is a standard audio compression format.

Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size by using MP3 compression.

WMA (Windows Media <sup>TM</sup>Audio) is a Microsoft audio compression format.

This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.

There is a limit to the MP3 and WMA file standards that can be used and to the media/formats on which the files are recorded.

### ● MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards  
MP3 (MPEG1 LAYER3, MPEG2 LSF LAYER3)
- Compatible sampling frequencies  
MPEG1 LAYER3: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)  
MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (compatible with VBR)  
MPEG1 LAYER3: 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 160, 192, 224, 256, 320 (kbps)  
MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 144, 160 (kbps)
- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

- WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards  
WMA Ver. 7, 8, 9
- Compatible sampling frequencies  
32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (only compatible with 2-channel playback)  
Ver. 7, 8: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192 (kbps)  
Ver. 9: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192, 256, 320 (kbps)

- Compatible media

Media that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback are CD-Rs and CD-RWs.

Playback in some instances may not be possible if the CD-R or CD-RW is not finalized. Playback may not be possible or the audio may jump if the disc is scratched or marked with fingerprints.

- Compatible disc formats

The following disc formats can be used.

- Disc formats: CD-ROM Mode 1 and Mode 2  
CD-ROM XA Mode 2, Form 1 and Form 2
- File formats: ISO9660 Level 1, Level 2, (Romeo, Joliet)  
MP3 and WMA files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

- Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels (including the root)
- Maximum length of folder names/file names: 32 characters
- Maximum number of folders: 192 (including the root)
- Maximum number of files per disc: 255

- File names

The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA and played are those with the extension .mp3 or .wma.

- Discs containing multi-session recordings

As the audio system is compatible with multi-sessions, it is possible to play discs that contain MP3 and WMA files. However, only the first session can be played.

### ● ID3 and WMA tags

ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title, artist name, etc.

The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2\*, 2.3 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)

\*: Not compatible with rear DVD player.

WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

### ● MP3 and WMA playback

When a disc containing MP3 or WMA files is inserted, all files on the disc are first checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3 or WMA file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend you do not write in any files other than MP3 or WMA files or create any unnecessary folders.

Discs that contain a mixture of music data and MP3 or WMA format data cannot be played.

### ● Extensions

If the file extensions .mp3 and .wma are used for files other than MP3 and WMA files, they may be mistakenly recognized and played as MP3 and WMA files. This may result in large amounts of interference and damage to the speakers.

### ● Playback

- To play MP3 files with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of at least 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- CD-R or CD-RW playback may not be possible in some instances, depending on the characteristics of the disc.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3 and WMA files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- When files other than MP3 or WMA files are recorded on a disc, it may take more time to recognize the disc and in some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are the registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and other countries.

### CAUTION

#### ■ DVD video precaution

Conversational speech on some DVDs is recorded at a low volume to emphasize the impact of sound effects. If you adjust the volume assuming that the conversations represent the maximum volume level that the DVD will play, you may be startled by louder sound effects or startled when you change to a different audio source.

Loud sounds may have a significant impact on the human body or pose a driving hazard. Keep this in mind when you adjust the volume.

### NOTICE

#### ■ Discs and adapters that cannot be used

→P. 323

#### ■ Player precautions

Failure to follow the precautions below may result in damage to the discs or the player itself.

- Do not insert anything other than discs into the disc slot.
- Do not apply oil to the player.
- Store discs away from direct sunlight.
- Never try to disassemble any part of the player.

## 3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

### Using the video mode



Press **VIDEO** to select the video mode.

Before switching to the video mode, connect the audio-video equipment to the A/V input adapter.

### Using the adapter

#### ► 5-seat models



Open the cover.

The A/V input adapter is composed of 3 input adapters.

Yellow: Image input adapter

White: Left channel audio input adapter

Red: Right channel audio input adapter

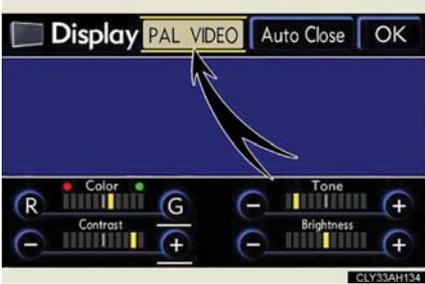
#### ► 4-seat models



## Changing the PAL format



Press **DISPLAY**.



If the video does not appear, turn **PAL VIDEO** on.

**PAL VIDEO** will be displayed when PAL format equipment is connected to the A/V input adapter.

### ■ A/V input adapter

The rear seat entertainment system plays videos and sound when audio-video equipment is connected to the A/V input adapter. For details, refer to the manufacturer's instructions.

### ■ Power outlet

The power outlet is used to connect the audio-video equipment. (→P. 484)

### ⚠ NOTICE

#### ■ When the A/V input adapter is not in use

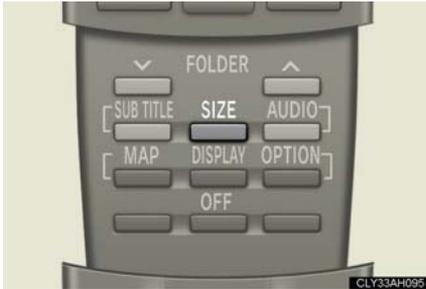
Keep the A/V input adapter cover closed.

Inserting anything other than an appropriate plug may cause electrical failure or a short circuit.

### 3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

## Changing other setting

#### Setting the display mode



Pressing **SIZE** changes the display modes sequentially as follows:

Normal → Wide 1 → Wide 2



#### Adjusting the screen



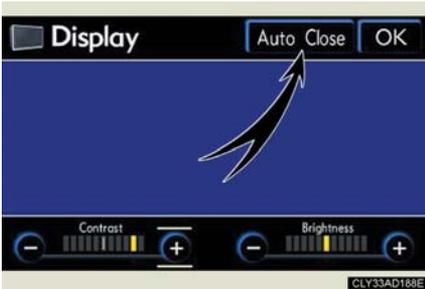
Press **DISPLAY**.

Select the brightness, contrast, tone or color, and make adjustments.

Press **DISPLAY** or **ENT** to input it.

"Color"	Red	Green
"Tone"	Lighter	Darker
"Contrast"	Weaker	Stronger
"Brightness"	Darker	Brighter

### Automatic closing of the rear display



Press **DISPLAY**.

If **Auto Close** is on, the display will automatically close when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned OFF.

The display will automatically open when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

### Display the map screen (with navigation system)



Press **MAP**.

The map screen will appear.

## 3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

### Hands-free system (for cellular phone)

The hands-free system is a function that allows you to use your mobile phone without touching it.

This system supports Bluetooth® mobile phones. Bluetooth® is a wireless data system that allows the mobile phone to wirelessly connect to the hands-free system and outgoing/incoming calls.

▶ Touch screen operation with navigation system

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

▶ Touch screen operation without navigation system

#### ■ Telephone switch



1 Sending/Receiving/  
"Telephone" screen display  
(when stopped)

2 End call

#### ■ Microphone (type A)



The person you are speaking to can be heard from the driver's side speaker.

### 3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

#### ■ Microphone (type B)



The person you are speaking to can be heard from the driver's side speaker.

To use the hands-free system, you must register your Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> phone in the system. (→P. 418)

#### Status display

You can check such indicators as signal strength and battery charge on the "Telephone" screen.



- 1 Connection status
- 2 Battery charge
- 3 Call area
- 4 Signal strength

Indicators	Conditions
Connection status	Blue: Good Yellow: Bad  : Not connected
Battery charge	 : Full  : Low  : Empty
Call area	"Rm": Roaming area "Hm": Home area
Signal strength	 : Good  : Bad  : Not connected

### ■ When using the hands-free system

- The audio system and voice guidance are muted when making a call.
- If both parties speak at the same time, it may be difficult to hear.
- If the received call volume is overly loud, an echo may be heard.
- Try to face toward the microphone as much as possible when speaking.
- In the following circumstances, it may be difficult to hear the other party:
  - When driving on unpaved roads
  - When driving at high speeds
  - If a window is open
  - If the air-conditioning is blowing directly on the microphone
  - If the air-conditioning is set to high

### 3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

#### ■ Conditions under which the system will not operate

- If using a mobile phone that does not support Bluetooth®
- If the mobile phone is switched off
- If you are outside service range
- If the mobile phone is not connected
- If the mobile phone's battery is low

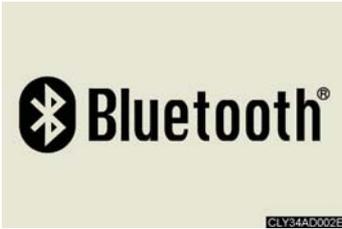
#### ■ Bluetooth® antenna

The antenna is built into the display. If the mobile phone is behind the seat or in the console box, or touching or covered by metal objects, connection status may deteriorate.

#### ■ Battery charge/Signal status

This display may not correspond exactly with the mobile phone itself.

#### ■ About Bluetooth®



Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

#### ■ Compatible models

Compatible with HFP (Hands Free Profile) Ver. 1.0 and OPP (Object Push Profile) Ver. 1.1.

If your cellular phone does not support HFP, you cannot enter the Bluetooth® phone. If your cellular phone supports OPP alone, you cannot use the Bluetooth® phone.

### ■ Certification for the hands-free system

FCC ID: BABBT007A BABBT008A IC ID: 2024B-BT007A MADE IN JAPAN
--

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and RSS-Gen of IC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### CAUTION

#### ■ FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**Radio Frequency Exposure.** This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for uncontrolled equipment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines in Supplement C to OET65. This equipment has very low levels of RF energy that it deemed to comply without maximum permissive exposure evaluation (MPE). But it is desirable that it should be installed and operated with at least 7.9 in. (20 cm) and more between the radiator and person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and legs).

This transmitter must not be co-located or operated in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

#### ■ Caution while driving

Do not use the mobile phone or connect the Bluetooth® system.

### NOTICE

#### ■ When leaving the vehicle

Do not leave your mobile phone in the vehicle. The inside of the vehicle may become hot, causing damage to the phone.

### 3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

## Using the Bluetooth® phone



The screenshot shows the 'Telephone' screen with the following elements and annotations:

- Bluetooth® connection status:** Indicated by a 'BT' icon in the top right corner.
- Character deletion:** Indicated by a right-pointing arrow icon in the top right corner.
- Display last person called:** Indicated by a call log icon in the top right corner.
- Make a call:** Indicated by a telephone handset icon in the bottom right corner.

The screen layout includes:

- Header: Telephone
- Input field: Number Input phone number
- Grid of buttons:
  - Phone Book
  - Speed Dial
  - Call Log
  - Settings
  - 1
  - 2 ABC
  - 7 PQRS
  - \* +
  - 3 DEF
  - 4 GHI
  - 8 TUV
  - 0
  - 6 MNO
  - 5 JKL
  - 9 WXYZ
  - #

CLY35AH005

To display the screen shown above, press , and touch  on the "Information" screen.

### Registering a Bluetooth® phone

You can register up to 6 phones in the system.

**STEP 1** Press  .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the "Information" screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the "Telephone" screen.



Touch .



Touch .



Input the passkey displayed on the screen into your phone.

If the message "Bluetooth\* connection successful" is displayed, registration is complete.

If the message "Bluetooth\* connection failed. Please check the "Passkey" and the settings of the telephone" is displayed, start again from the beginning.

\*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

## Bluetooth® phone connection

There are two connection methods available—automatic and manual.

**STEP 1** Press  .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4** Choose one of the following methods.



### 1 Automatic connection

If the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in the ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the system will automatically connect to the Bluetooth® phone. Touching “Auto Connect” will turn it on/off.

### 2 Manual connection

If automatic connection fails or is turned off, connection must be made manually.

If the message “Bluetooth\* connection successful” is displayed, connection is complete.

\*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

## ■ Reconnecting to the Bluetooth® phone

If the system cannot connect due to poor signal strength with the “ENGINE START STOP” switch in the ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the system will automatically attempt to reconnect.

If the phone is turned off, the system will not attempt to reconnect. In this case, connection must be made manually, or the phone must be re-selected.

## Making a call

Once the Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> phone is registered, you can make a call using the following procedure:

### ■ Dialing

**STEP 1** Press  .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.



Input the phone number.

To delete the inputted phone number, touch  .

To dial the last inputted phone number, touch  .

**STEP 4** Touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

### ■ Dialing from the phone book

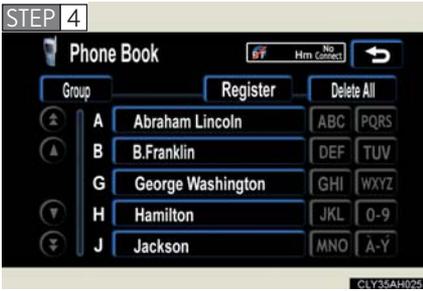
You can dial a number from the phone book data imported from your mobile phone. Up to 1000 entries may be stored in the phone book. (→P. 441)

**STEP 1** Press  .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

### 3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)



Choose the desired name to call from the list.



Choose the number and then touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

#### ■ Dialing from history

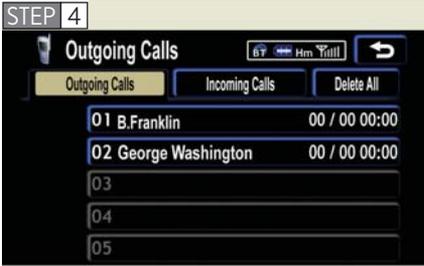
You can make a call from past dialed numbers or received calls.

Up to 5 numbers are stored, with the last recent number being deleted to make room for a new number.

**STEP 1** Press .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the "Information" screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the "Telephone" screen.



Choose the number to call from the list.

To choose a number from the incoming calls history, touch **Incoming Calls** and choose a number to call.



Touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

### ■ Calling using speed dial

You can make a call using numbers registered from the phone book and call history. (→P. 434)

**STEP 1** Press .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch **Speed Dial** on the “Telephone” screen.



Choose the desired number to make a call.

To change the page, touch **Speed Dial 2** or **Speed Dial 3**.

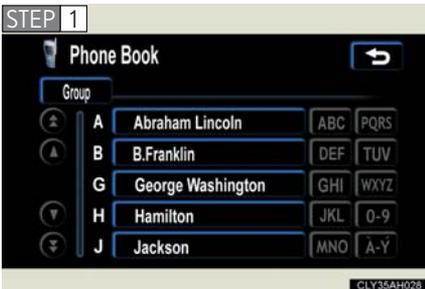
■ **Calling using voice recognition**

Using voice recognition, you can call by name from the “Phone Book” screen, call by number from the “Telephone” screen, and send tones from the “Call” screen. (→P. 429)



Talk switch

● **Calling by name from the “Phone Book” screen**



Pull  .

**STEP 2** Following the system guidance, wait until a beep and then say the desired name.

If there are multiple entries for the same name, **Next** will be displayed.

To select the next candidate, touch **Next** .

**STEP 3** Following the system guidance, pull  .

**STEP 4** Following the system guidance, wait until a beep and then say “Dial”.

● Calling by number from the “Telephone” screen



STEP 2 Following the system guidance, wait until a beep and then say the desired number.

STEP 3 Following the system guidance, pull .

STEP 4 Following the system guidance, wait until a beep and then say “Dial”.

● Sending tones from the “Call” screen



STEP 2 Following the system guidance, wait until a beep and then say the desired number.

STEP 3 Following the system guidance, pull .

STEP 4 Following the system guidance, wait until a beep and then say “Yes”.

#### ■ Made/received call history list

- If you make a call to or receive a call from a number registered in the phone book, the name is displayed in the call history.
- If you make multiple calls to the same number, only the last call made is displayed in the made calls history.
-  is displayed to the left of phone number for unanswered calls.
-  is displayed to the left of the phone number for refused calls.
- Calls where the number is unavailable, such as public telephones, are not stored in the call history.

#### ■ When driving

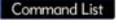
- The functions “Dialing”, “Dialing from the phone book”, and “Dialing from history” are unavailable.
- If you press  on the steering wheel, the “Speed Dial” screen is displayed. At this time, phone numbers will not be displayed. Choose from the names displayed to make a call.

#### ■ International calls

You may not be able to make international calls, depending on the mobile phone in use.

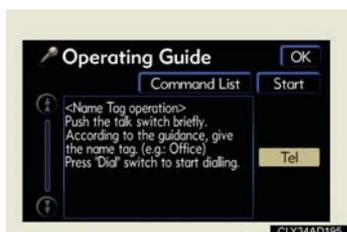
#### ■ To display the voice recognition command list



**STEP 1** After pulling , touch . If the “Operating Guide” screen is displayed, touch .

**STEP 2** Touch .

### ■ To display the voice recognition operating guide



**STEP 1** After pulling , touch . If the "Command List" screen is displayed, touch .

**STEP 2** Touch .

### ■ To cancel voice recognition

- Pull and hold .
- Press  on the steering wheel.
- Touch . (excluding command verification)

### ■ When using voice recognition

Use correct commands and speak clearly, otherwise the system may not correctly recognize the command. Wind or other noises may also cause the system not to recognize the desired command.

## Receiving a call

When a call is received, the following screen is displayed together with a sound.



Touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

### ■ To refuse a call

Touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

### ■ To adjust the received call volume

Touch  or . You can also adjust the volume using the steering switches.

### ■ International calls

Received international calls may not be displayed correctly, depending on the mobile phone in use.

## Speaking on the phone

The following screen is displayed when speaking on the phone.



### ■ To adjust the received call volume

Touch or . You can also adjust the volume using the steering switches.

### ■ To prevent the other party from hearing your voice

Touch .

### ■ Inputting key tones

When using phone services such as an answering service or a bank, you can store phone numbers and code numbers in the phone book.

**STEP 1** Touch .



Input the number.

If repeated tone symbols\* are stored in the phone book, and are displayed on the right side of the screen.

\*: Repeated tone symbols are symbols or numbers displayed as p or w, that come after the phone number.  
(e.g. 056133p0123w#1\*)

### 3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

**STEP 3** Confirm the number displayed on the screen, and touch  .

If you touch  , operation is completed without making a call.

#### ■ To transfer a call

Touch  .

#### ■ To hang up

Touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

---

#### ■ Transferring calls

- It is not possible to transfer from hands-free to the mobile phone while driving.
- If you transfer from the mobile phone to hands-free, the hands-free screen will be displayed, and you can operate the system using the screen.
- Transfer method and operation may vary according to the mobile phone used.
- For operation of the mobile phone in use, see the phone's manual.

#### ■ To send a tone by speed tone

Touch  and touch  . Choose the desired number from the speed tone list displayed.

#### ■ While driving

Key input is unavailable.

### 3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

## Setting the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

You can speed dial, register in and edit the phone book, and set the Bluetooth® phone.



To display the screen shown above, press , touch  on the "Information" screen, and touch  on the "Telephone" screen.

## Registering/Deleting a speed dial item

### ■ Registering a speed dial item

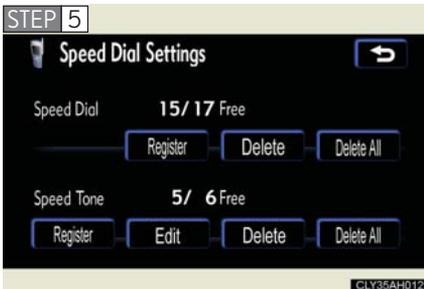
You can register a number from the phone book or the call history. Up to 17 entries may be stored.

**STEP 1** Press .

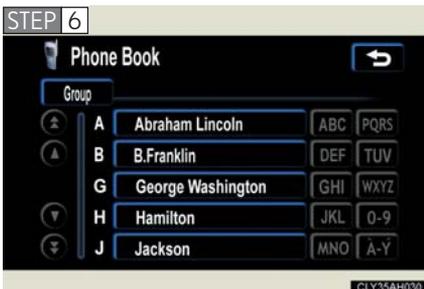
**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

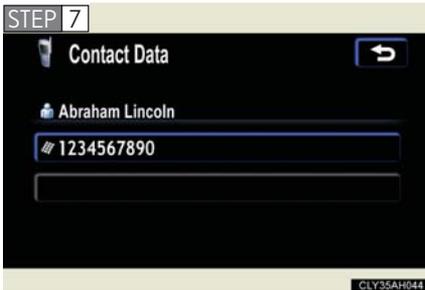
**STEP 4** Touch  on the “Settings” screen.



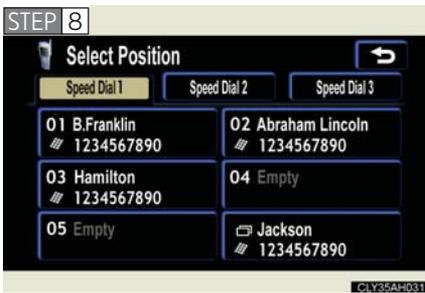
Touch  in the “Speed Dial” section of the “Speed Dial Settings” screen.



Select the data to be registered.



Select the number to be registered.



Touch the desired switch.

The last dialed number will be registered in position 6.

### ■ Deleting a speed dial item

**STEP 1** Press  .

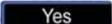
**STEP 2** Touch  on the "Information" screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the "Telephone" screen.

**STEP 4** Touch  on the "Settings" screen.

**STEP 5** Touch  in the "Speed Dial" section of the "Speed Dial Settings" screen.

**STEP 6** Select the data to be deleted, and a confirmation message will be displayed.

**STEP 7** If everything is correct, touch  .

■ To delete all speed dial items

Follow the steps for “Deleting a speed dial item” until “STEP 5”. In the “Speed Dial” section of the “Speed Dial Settings” screen, touch . A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch .

**Registering/Editing/Deleting a speed tone**

■ Registering a speed tone

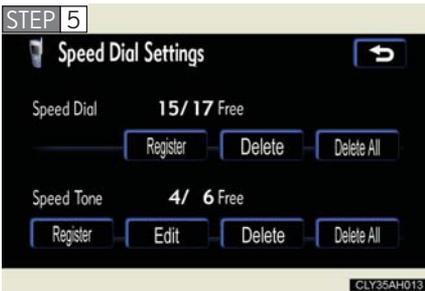
You can register up to 6 items.

**STEP 1** Press .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4** Touch  on the “Settings” screen.



Touch  in the “Speed Tone” section.



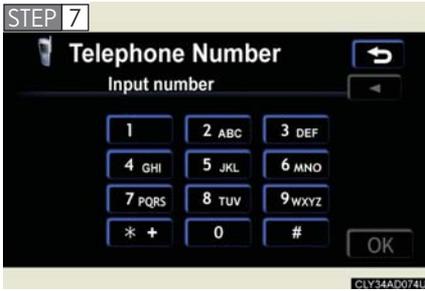
Input the desired name and touch .

, : Letter input

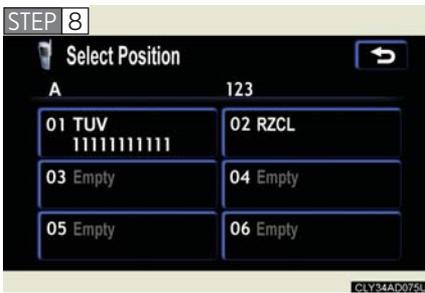
: Number/Symbol input

: Space

: Backspace



Input the number and touch .



Touch the desired switch.

### ■ Editing a speed tone

**STEP 1** Press .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4** Touch  on the “Settings” screen.

**STEP 5** Touch  in the “Speed Tone” section of the “Speed Dial Settings” screen.

### 3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)



Touch the switch to be edited.

**STEP 6** Input the name and touch **OK**.

**STEP 8** Input the number and touch **OK**.

#### ■ Deleting a speed tone

**STEP 1** Press .

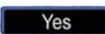
**STEP 2** Touch  on the "Information" screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the "Telephone" screen.

**STEP 4** Touch  on the "Settings" screen.

**STEP 5** Touch  in the "Speed Tone" section of the "Speed Dial Settings" screen.

**STEP 6** Choose the data to delete, and a confirmation message will be displayed.

**STEP 7** If everything is correct, touch .

---

#### ■ To delete all speed tone data

Follow the steps for "Deleting a speed tone" until "STEP 5". In the "Speed Tone" section, touch . A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch .

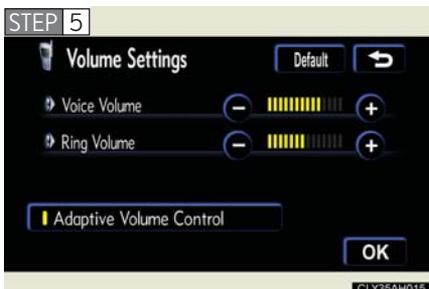
## Setting the volume

**STEP 1** Press  .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4** Touch  on the “Settings” screen.



Touch  or  to lower or raise the volume.

Voice volume: changes the speaker volume

Ring volume: changes the ring volume

### ■ Adaptive volume control

When traveling at 50 mph (80 km/h) or more, the system automatically raises the volume one level.

If the vehicle's speed drops to 43 mph (70 km/h), the volume will return to its original level.

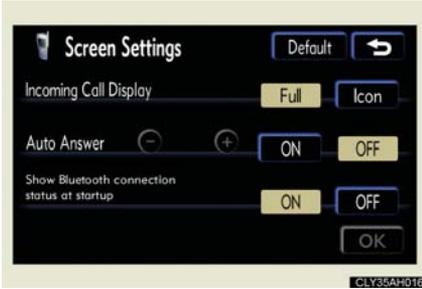
You can turn this function on/off by touching  .

### ■ To return to the default volume settings

Touch  , and then  .

## Changing the screen settings

The following settings can be changed:



- “Incoming Call Display”

The incoming call screen settings can be changed.

- “Auto Answer”

When a call is received, the system automatically switches to the talking screen after the set period of time, meaning you can speak without pressing anything.

- “Show Bluetooth\* connection status at startup”

You can set the system to show the status confirmation display when connecting.

\*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

## ■ “Incoming Call Display” settings

**STEP 1** Press  .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4** Touch  on the “Settings” screen.

**STEP 5** Select the desired switch.

**Full** : The hands-free screen is displayed when a call is received, and you can operate the system from that screen.

**Icon** : A message is displayed at the top of the screen, and you can only operate the system with the steering switches.

## ■ “Auto Answer” settings

**STEP 1** Press  .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4** Touch  on the “Settings” screen.

**STEP 5** Touch  in the “Auto Answer” section of the “Screen Settings” screen.

**STEP 6** Set the wait time using  and  . (1 - 60 seconds)

■ “Show Bluetooth\* connection status at startup” settings

STEP 1 Press  .

STEP 2 Touch  on the “Information” screen.

STEP 3 Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

STEP 4 Touch  on the “Settings” screen.

STEP 5 Touch  /  in the “Show Bluetooth\* connection status at startup” section of the “Screen Settings” screen.

\*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

---

■ To set the screen settings to default

Touch  , and then  .

## Phone book settings

Up to 1000 names, 2 items per name, can be registered.

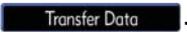
### ■ Transferring mobile phone data

**STEP 1** Press  .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

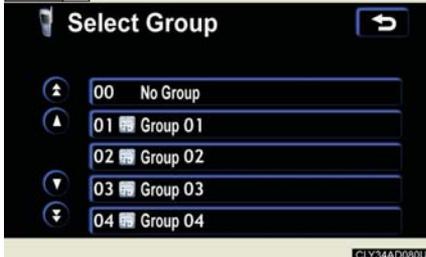
**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4** Touch  on the “Settings” screen.

**STEP 5** Touch  .



**STEP 6** Select the group to transfer to.



### 3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)



To overwrite data, touch **Overwrite**.

To add to existing data, touch **Add To**.

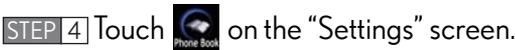
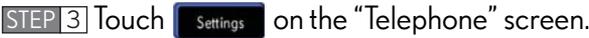
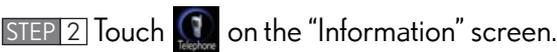


Transfer will begin. If you wish to cancel the transfer before it is finished, touch **Cancel**.

Transfer is complete when “Transfer completed” is displayed.

If “Transfer failed” is displayed, restart the process from the beginning.

#### ■ Registering by input



Touch **Register** in the “Phone Book” section.

**STEP 6** Choose the switch to register.



**Name** : Input the name on the “Name” screen.

**TEL1** and **TEL2** : Input the number(s) on the “Telephone Number” screen. When you touch **OK**, the “Select Icon” screen will appear. Choose the desired icon.

- **Mobile phone1**
- **Mobile phone2**
- **Home**
- **Work**
- **Other**

**Group** : Select the desired group from the “Select Group” screen. (No Group, 01 - 09)

**Voice Rec.** : Select the desired phone number and touch **REC** to record a voice tag. To play the voice tag, touch **PLAY**. To delete the voice tag, touch **Delete**.

**STEP 7** Once input is complete, touch **OK**.

### 3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

#### ■ Adding call history data to a registered entry

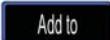
**STEP 1** Press  .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4** Choose the desired number from the list.

To choose from the incoming call history, touch  and select the desired number.

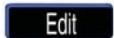
**STEP 5**  Touch  .

The screenshot shows a "Log Data" screen with the following information: a phone icon, "Log Data", a signal strength indicator, "6V", "Hm", and a battery level indicator. Below this, there is a return arrow icon. The main content area displays: "02", "00 / 00 00 : 00", a person icon, "George Washington", and "9876543210". At the bottom, there are three buttons: "Register", "Add to", and "Delete", along with a phone icon. The model number "CLY35AH021" is visible at the bottom right of the screen.

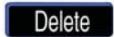
**STEP 6** Choose the phone book entry to be added to.

**STEP 7** Check the data to be added, and touch  .

### ■ Editing phone book data

- STEP 1** Press  .
- STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.
- STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.
- STEP 4** Touch  on the “Settings” screen.
- STEP 5** Touch  in the “Phone Book” section of the “Phone Book Management” screen.
- STEP 6** Choose the data to edit.
- STEP 7** Choose the switch to edit.
- STEP 8** After editing, touch  .

### ■ Deleting phone book data

- STEP 1** Press  .
- STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.
- STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.
- STEP 4** Touch  on the “Settings” screen.
- STEP 5** Touch  in the “Phone Book” section of the “Phone Book Management” screen.
- STEP 6** Select the data to delete.
- STEP 7** A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch  .

### ■ To delete all data

Follow the steps for “Deleting phone book data” until “STEP 5”. In the “Phone Book” section of the “Phone Book Management” screen, touch . To delete all data within a group, touch , and select the group to delete. To delete all contact data, touch . Check that everything is correct, and touch .

### ■ Registering/Editing/Deleting from the phone book

You can register data in the phone book, edit registered data, and delete items.

**STEP 1** Press .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4** To register data, touch  on the “Phone Book” screen.

To delete all data, touch .

To delete or edit specific data, select the data to delete/edit, and touch  to delete, or  to edit.

### ■ The phone book

The method for transferring phone book data from the phone to the system varies with phone model. See the phone’s manual.

## Changing the phone book group name settings

### ■ Registering a group name

**STEP 1** Press  .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4** Touch  on the “Settings” screen.

**STEP 5** Touch  in the “Group Name” section of the “Phone Book Management” screen.

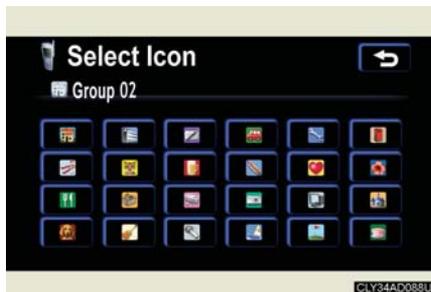
**STEP 6** Select the group to register (“01” - “19”).



Select the switch to be edited.

**Icon** : The below screen will be displayed. Select the desired icon.

**Name** : Input the name on the “Name” screen.



**STEP 8** Once editing is complete, touch  .

### ■ Deleting a group name

**STEP 1** Press  .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4** Touch  on the “Settings” screen.

**STEP 5** Touch  in the “Group Name” section of the “Phone Book Management” screen.

**STEP 6** Select the group name to delete, and a confirmation message will be displayed.

**STEP 7** If everything is correct, touch  .

---

### ■ To delete all data

Follow the steps for “Deleting phone book data” until to “STEP 5”. In the “Phone Book” section of the “Phone Book Management” screen, touch  . A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch  .

## Deleting the history

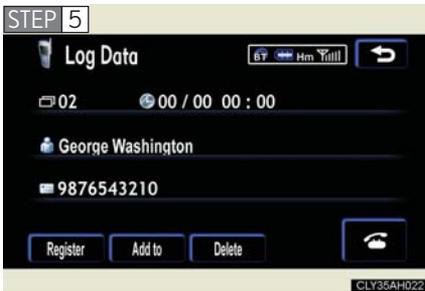
**STEP 1** Press  .

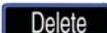
**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

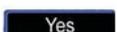
**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4** Select the data to delete from the list.

To delete data from the incoming call history, touch , and select the data to delete.



Touch  .

**STEP 6** Check that everything is correct, and touch  .

### To delete all data

Follow the steps for “Deleting a group name” until “STEP 4”. Touch  on the “Outgoing Calls” screen. To delete all incoming call history data, touch , and touch  . Check that everything is correct, and touch  .

## Changing the security settings

You can disable certain hands-free system functions. Use the security settings when you do not wish other people to see the registered data, for example when having the vehicle valet parked at a hotel.

To enable or disable security, the security code (4 digits) is required. The default code is “0000”. Be sure to change the security code before use.

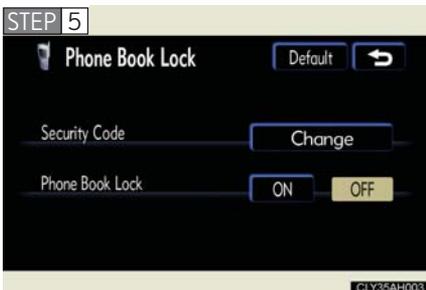
### ■ Changing the security code

**STEP 1** Press .

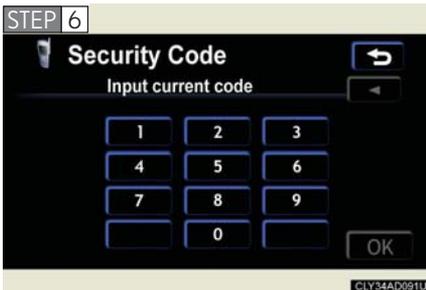
**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4** Touch  on the “Settings” screen.



Touch  in the “Security Code” section.



Input the current security code, and touch .

**STEP 7** Input the new security code, and touch . A confirmation message will appear.

**STEP 8** If everything is correct, touch .

### ■ Enabling security

**STEP 1** Press  .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4** Touch  on the “Settings” screen.

**STEP 5** Touch  in the “Phone Book Lock” section of the “Phone Book Lock” screen.

**STEP 6** Input the security code, and touch  .

### ■ Setting the security code to default

**STEP 1** Press  .

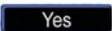
**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4** Touch  on the “Settings” screen.

**STEP 5** Touch  on the “Phone Book Lock” screen.

**STEP 6** Input the security code on the “Security Code” screen, and touch  . A confirmation message will appear.

**STEP 7** If everything is correct, touch  .

#### ■ If “Phone Book Lock” is set

If the security code is input and “Phone Book Lock” is set, the following functions are locked:

- Display of the phone book screen and transferring, registering, editing and deleting the phone book data.
- Display of the speed dial screen, registering, deleting the speed dial and speed dialing.
- Display of the other party's name for calls being received or made.
- Display of the dialed numbers screen and incoming call screen, deleting the dialed numbers and received numbers
- Display of the phone information screen.
- Changing the security code.

The speed dial screen is not displayed while driving.

#### ■ When changing the security code

- Be sure to choose a number difficult for strangers to guess.
- Do not forget the security code. Even your Lexus dealer will be unable to disable the security. If you do forget the code, initialize all personal data. (→P. 245)

## Setting a Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> phone

### ■ Selecting a Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> phone

If multiple Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> phones are registered, follow the procedure below to select the Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> phone to be used. You may only use one phone at a time.

STEP 1] Press



STEP 2] Touch  on the "Information" screen.

STEP 3] Touch  on the "Telephone" screen.

STEP 4]



Touch .

STEP 5]



Select the phone to be used, and touch .

If no phones are registered, "Empty" will be displayed.

If "Bluetooth\* connection successful" is displayed, registration was successful.

If another Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> phone is already connected, a confirmation message is displayed. Touch

 or .

\*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

### ■ Displaying Bluetooth® information

You can check the device address and device name.

**STEP 1** Press  .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4** Touch  on the “Settings” screen.

**STEP 5** On the “Select Telephone” screen, select the desired phone and touch  .



To change the device name, touch  in the “Device Name” section, and input the name on the “Name” screen (max. 20 characters).

### ■ To change the Bluetooth® settings

You can change the device name and passkey.

**STEP 1** Press  .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4** Touch  on the “Settings” screen.



To change the device name, touch **Change** in the “Device Name” section, and input the name on the “Name” screen (max. 20 characters).

To change the passkey, touch **Change** in the “Passkey” section, and input 4 - 8 digits on the “Passkey” screen.

### ■ Setting the Bluetooth® settings to default

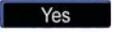
**STEP 1** Press  .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4** Touch  on the “Settings” screen.

**STEP 5** Touch  on the “Bluetooth\* Settings” screen, and a confirmation message will be displayed.

**STEP 6** If everything is correct, touch  .

\*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

■ To delete the Bluetooth® settings

STEP 1 Press  .

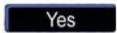
STEP 2 Touch  on the “Information” screen.

STEP 3 Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

STEP 4 Touch  on the “Settings” screen.

STEP 5 Touch  in the “Bluetooth\* Telephone” section of the “Bluetooth\* Settings” screen.

STEP 6 On the “Delete Telephone” screen, select the phone to delete.  
To check the device address, touch  .

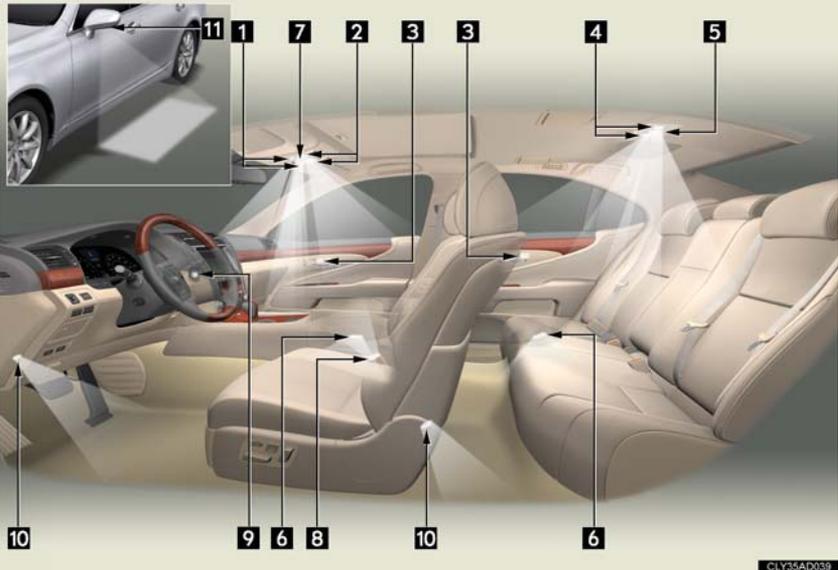
STEP 7 If you touch  , a confirmation message is displayed. If everything is correct, touch  .

\*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

### 3-6. Using the interior lights

## Interior lights list

Your Lexus is equipped with the illuminated entry system to assist in entering the vehicle. Owing to the function of the system, the lights shown in the following illustration automatically turn on/off according to the presence of the electronic key, whether the doors are locked/unlocked, whether the doors are opened/closed, and the “ENGINE START STOP” switch mode.



- 1 Front personal lights (→P. 458)
- 2 Front interior lights (→P. 458)
- 3 Inside door handle lighting
- 4 Rear personal lights (→ P. 458)
- 5 Rear interior light
- 6 Door courtesy lighting
- 7 Shift lever lighting (when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode)

- 8 Seat belt buckle lighting
- 9 "ENGINE START STOP" switch lighting
- 10 Footwell lighting
- 11 Outer foot lights

## Interior lights



- 1 "OFF"
- 2 Door position on/off
- 3 "ON"

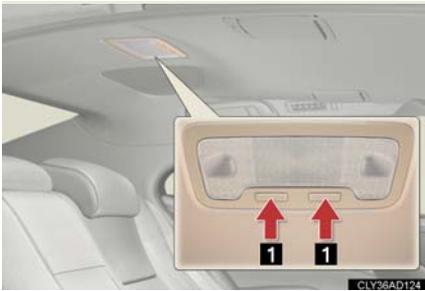
## Personal lights

### ► Front



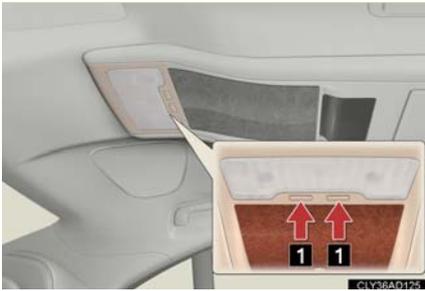
- 1 On/off

## ▶ Rear (without rear seat entertainment system)



1 On/off

## ▶ Rear (with rear seat entertainment system)



1 On/off

## ■ To prevent the battery from being discharged

If the interior lights remain on when the door is not fully closed and the interior light switch (door position on/ off) is on, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

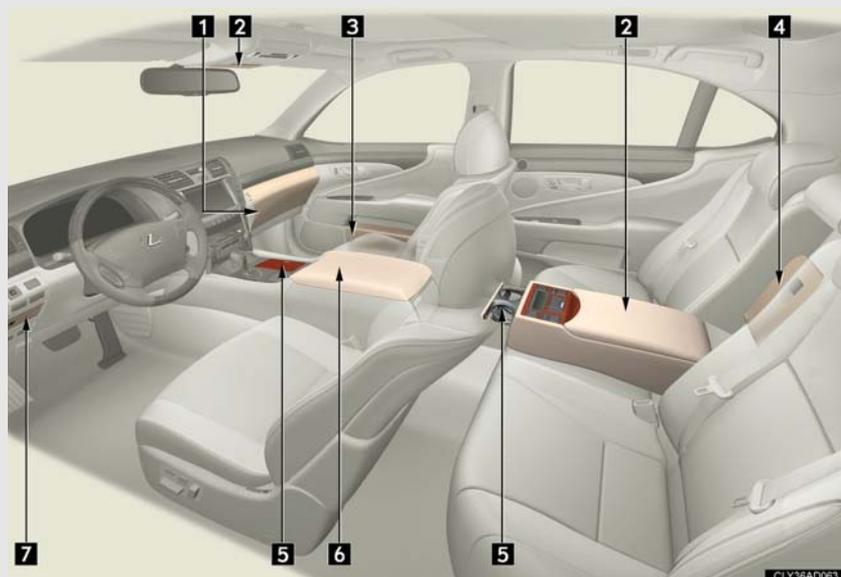
## ■ Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer

Settings (e.g. The time elapsed before lights turn off) can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 692)

## 3-7. Using the storage features

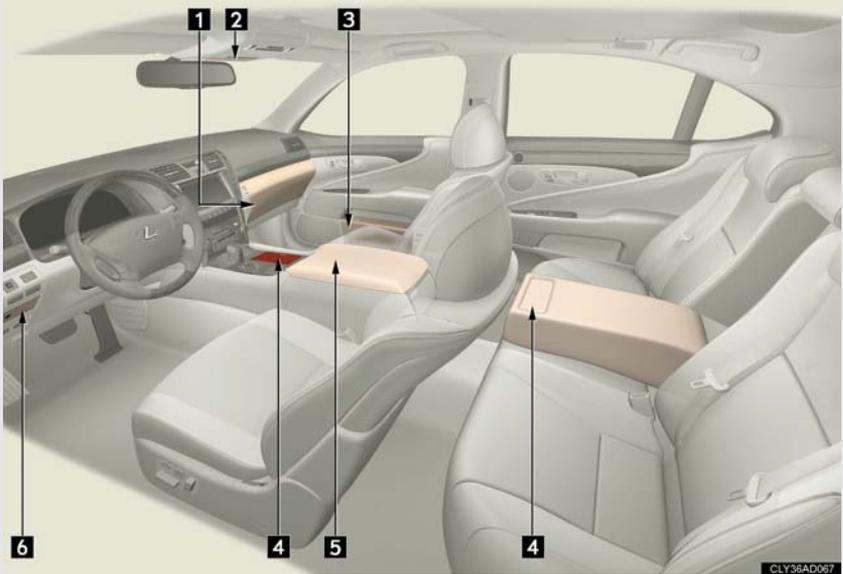
### List of storage features

#### ► 5-seat models (type A)



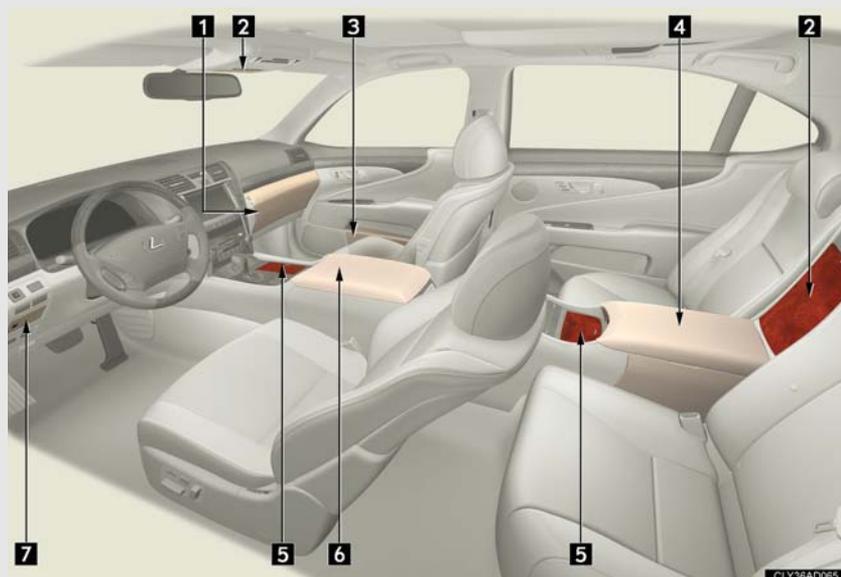
- 1 Glove box
- 2 Auxiliary boxes
- 3 Door pockets
- 4 Cool box (if equipped)
- 5 Cup holders
- 6 Console box
- 7 Coin holder

## ▶ 5-seat models (type B)



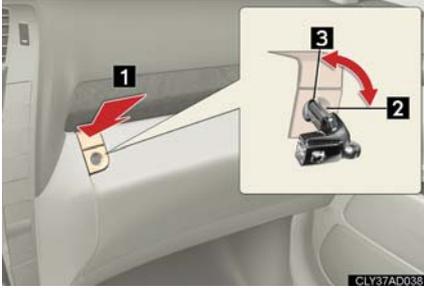
- 1 Glove box
- 2 Auxiliary box
- 3 Door pockets
- 4 Cup holders
- 5 Console box
- 6 Coin holder

#### ► 4-seat models



- 1 Glove box
- 2 Auxiliary boxes
- 3 Door pockets
- 4 Cool box
- 5 Cup holders
- 6 Console box
- 7 Coin holder

## Glove box



- 1 Open (push button)
- 2 Lock with the mechanical key
- 3 Unlock with the mechanical key

### Trunk opener main switch

The trunk opener main switch is located in the glove box. (→ P. 54)

### CAUTION

#### Caution while driving

Keep the glove box closed.

Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

## Coin holder



Press in the button.

### CAUTION

#### Caution while driving

Keep the coin holder closed.

Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

## Door pockets (front)



The front door pockets can be opened and closed.

### CAUTION

#### Caution while driving

Keep the door pockets closed.

Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

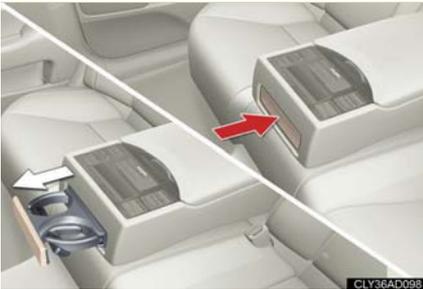
## Cup holders

► Front



Press down and release the right side of the cup holder lid.

► Rear (type A for 5-seat models)



Press in and release the cup holder.

► Rear (type B for 5-seat models)



Pull up the cup holder lid.

► Rear (4-seat models)



Press in and release the button.

**! CAUTION**

■ **Items unsuitable for the cup holder**

Do not place anything other than cups or aluminum cans in the cup holders. Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking and cause injury. If possible, cover hot drinks to prevent burns.

■ **When not in use**

Keep the cup holders closed. Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

## Console box



- 1 Slide the armrest while pushing the knob.
- 2 Lift the armrest.

### Tray in the console box



The tray can be raised backward.

### Opening and closing assist function

When the console box is opened or closed partway, this function will apply force in the appropriate direction, helping open or close the console box.

 **CAUTION****■ Caution while driving**

Keep the console box closed.

Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

 **NOTICE****■ Tray**

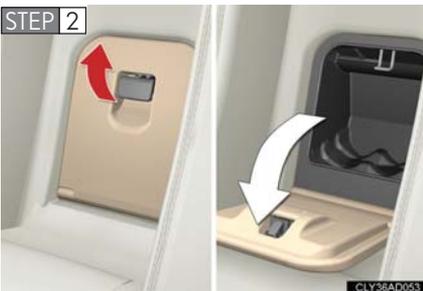
Do not insert items exceeding the height of the tray. Doing so may prevent opening and closing of the lid.

**Cool box (if equipped)**

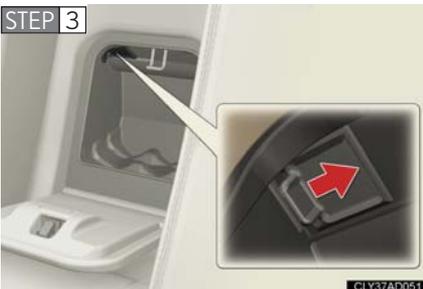
Your vehicle is equipped with either a cool box or auxiliary box, depending on the grade.

**► 5-seat models**

Pull down the armrest.



Pull the lever.

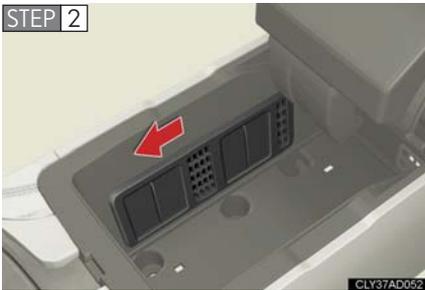


Open the cool air intake lid.

## ▶ 4-seat models



Pull up the lever to release the lock and lift the lid.



Open the cool air intake lid.

## ■ Operating conditions (cool box)

### ▶ 5-seat models



- The rear air conditioning system is on.
-  is displayed on the rear control panel.

### ▶ 4-seat models



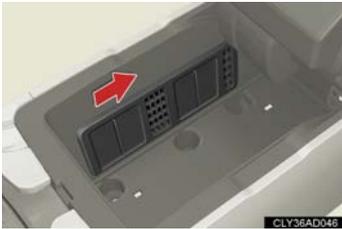
### ■ Using a cool box as a storage compartment

#### ▶ 5-seat models



Close the cool air intake lid to turn off the cool box system.

#### ▶ 4-seat models



Close the cool air intake lid to turn off the cool box system.

### ■ Items unsuitable for the cool box

- Drinks in unsealed containers
- Fragile items, perishables or anything with strong odor

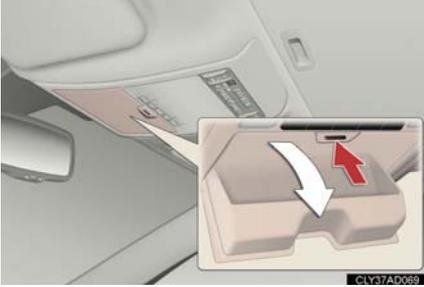
### ⚠ CAUTION

#### ■ Caution while driving

Always keep the cool box closed to reduce the chance of injury in case of an accident or sudden stop.

## Auxiliary boxes

### ► Overhead



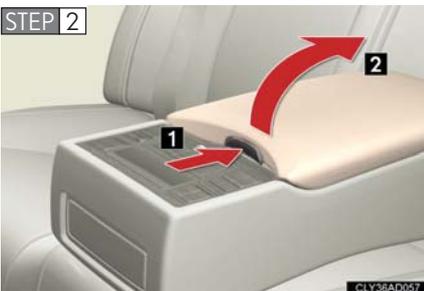
Press in the button.

This box is useful for temporarily storing sunglasses and similar small items.

### ► Rear seat (if equipped on 5-seat models)



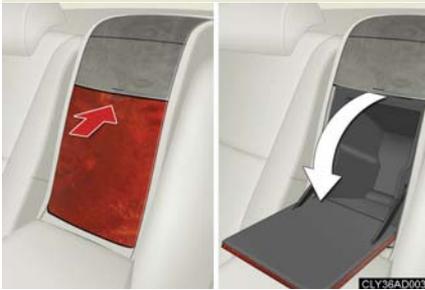
Pull down the armrest.



**1** Press the button to release the lock.

**2** Lift the lid.

► Rear console box (4-seat models)



Press in the lid.

This box is useful for storing DVD discs and headphones.

**⚠ CAUTION**

■ **Items that should not be left in the auxiliary box (overhead type)**

Do not leave glasses or lighters in the box.

If the interior of the vehicle becomes hot, lighters may explode and glasses may warp or crack.

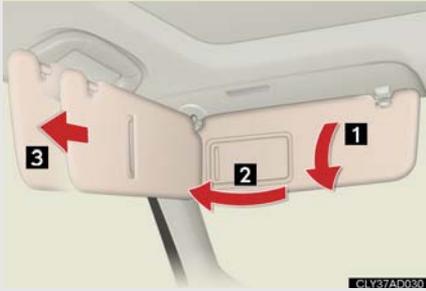
■ **Caution while driving**

Do not leave the auxiliary box open while driving.

Items may fall out and cause death or serious injury in case of an accident or sudden stop.

### 3-8. Other interior features

## Sun visors

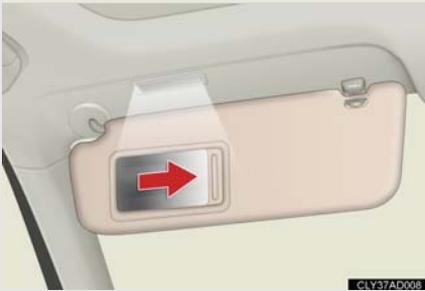


- 1 Forward position:  
Flip down.
- 2 Side position:  
Flip down, unhook, and swing to the side.
- 3 Side extender:  
Place in side position, then slide backward.

## 3-8. Other interior features

### Vanity mirror

#### ► Front



Slide the cover to open.

The light turns on when the cover is opened.

#### ► Rear



Press the button to open.

The vanity light turns on.

#### ⚠ NOTICE

##### ■ When not in use

Keep the rear vanity mirror closed.

##### ■ To prevent the battery from being discharged

Do not leave the vanity lights on for extended periods while the engine is stopped.

## 3-8. Other interior features

### Clock

The clock is displayed when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode. Perform the following steps to adjust the clock.

► Without touch screen (without navigation system)



- 1 Adjusts the hour.
- 2 Adjusts the minutes.
- 3 Rounds to the nearest hour.\*

\*: e.g. 1:00 to 1:29 → 1:00

1:30 to 1:59 → 2:00

► With touch screen (without navigation system)





Press "INFO".

STEP 2 Touch **Adjust Clock** .



- 1 Adjusts the hour.
- 2 Adjusts the minutes.
- 3 Rounds to the nearest hour.\*
- 4 Turns daylight saving time on.
- 5 Turns daylight saving time off.

After setting, touch **OK** .

\*: e.g. 1:00 to 1:29 → 1:00  
1:30 to 1:59 → 2:00

- ▶ With touch screen (with navigation system)  
Refer to "Navigation System Owner's Manual."

#### ■ When the battery is disconnected

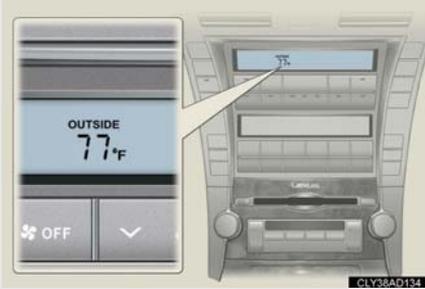
The time display will automatically be set to 1:00.

### 3-8. Other interior features

## Outside temperature display

The displayed temperature ranges from  $-40^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) up to  $122^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $50^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

#### ► Type A



#### ► Type B



#### ■ When “—” or “E” is displayed

The system may be malfunctioning. Take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

## 3-8. Other interior features

### Ashtrays

#### ► Front



Push the front part of the lid to open. Push the lid again to close.

To remove, pull the ashtray upwards.

#### ► Rear



Open the ashtray lid.

To remove, pull the ashtray upwards.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

##### ■ When not in use

Keep the ashtray closed.

Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

##### ■ To prevent fire

● Fully extinguish matches and cigarettes before putting them in the ashtray, then make sure the ashtray is fully closed.

● Do not place paper or any other type of flammable object in the ashtray.

## 3-8. Other interior features

### Cigarette lighter

#### ► Front



Push the front part of the lid to open, and push the cigarette lighter down.

The cigarette lighter will pop up when it is ready for use.

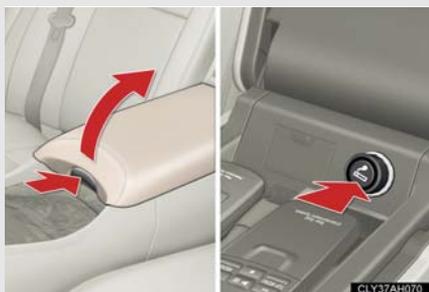
#### ► Rear (5-seat models)



Push the cigarette lighter.

The cigarette lighter will pop out when it is ready for use.

#### ► Rear (if equipped)



Open the auxiliary box and push the cigarette lighter.

The cigarette lighter will pop out when it is ready for use.

---

■ **The cigarette lighter can be used when**

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

 **CAUTION**

■ **To avoid burns or fires**

- Do not touch the metal parts of the cigarette lighter.
- Do not hold the cigarette lighter down. It could overheat and cause a fire.
- Do not insert anything other than the cigarette lighter into the outlet.

■ **When not in use**

Keep the ashtray closed.

Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

## 3-8. Other interior features

### Power outlet

The power outlet can be used for a following component.

12V: Accessories that run on less than 10 A.

115 VAC: Audio device that use less than 100 W.

#### ► Inside the console (12V)



#### ► Inside the armrest (12V\*)



► On the back surface of the console (115VAC\*)



**1** Main switch

To use the power outlet, turn on the power outlet.

**2** Power outlet socket

\*: If equipped

■ The power outlet can be used when

► 12 V

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

► 115 VAC

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

 NOTICE

■ **To avoid damaging the power outlet**

Close the power outlet lid when the power outlet is not in use.  
Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlet may cause a short circuit.

■ **To prevent the fuse from being blown**

▶ **12 V**

Do not use an accessory that uses more than 12 V 10 A.

▶ **115 VAC**

Do not use a 115 VAC appliance that requires more than 100 W.

If a 115 VAC appliance that consumes more than 100 W is used, the protection circuit will cut the power supply.

■ **To prevent the battery from being discharged**

Do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

■ **Appliances that may not operate properly (115 VAC)**

The following 115 VAC appliances may not operate properly even if their power consumption is under 100 W.

- Appliances with high initial peak wattage
- Measuring devices that process precise data
- Other appliances that require an extremely stable power supply

## 3-8. Other interior features

### Heated steering wheel (if equipped)

The heated steering wheel can be used to heat the leather portion of the steering wheel.



#### On/off

The indicator light comes on when the heater is operating.

#### ■ Operating condition

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

#### ■ Timer

The heated steering wheel will automatically turn off after about 30 minutes.

#### ■ If the indicator light flashes

Press the button to turn the heated steering wheel off and then press the button again. If the indicator light still flashes, a malfunction may be occurring. Turn the heated steering wheel off and have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

#### CAUTION

##### ■ Burns

Only appropriately qualified and capable non-impaired persons should operate the vehicle. However, care should be taken to prevent injury if anyone in the following categories comes into contact with the steering wheel when the heated steering wheel is on:

- Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the disabled
- Persons with sensitive skin
- Persons who are fatigued
- Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)

#### NOTICE

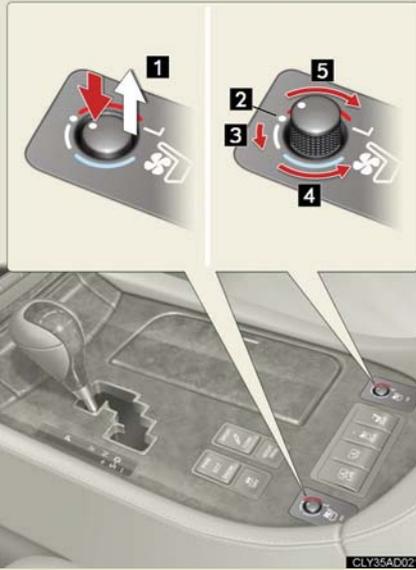
##### ■ To prevent the battery from being discharged

Turn the switch off when the engine is not running.

## Climate control seats/seat heaters (if equipped)

The temperature of the seats can be adjusted individually.

### ■ Front climate control seats



**1** Press the knob to release it, and turn the knob to the desired temperature setting.

**2** Off

Press the knob to lock it when not in use.

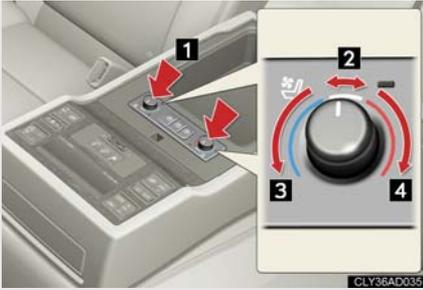
**3** Ventilation

**4** Cool air

**5** Warm air

### ■ Rear climate control seats

#### ▶ 5-seat models

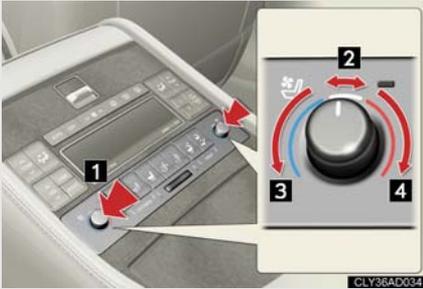


**1** Press the knob to turn the system on, and turn the knob to the desired temperature setting.

Press the knob again to turn the system off.

- 2** Ventilation
- 3** Cool air
- 4** Warm air

#### ▶ 4-seat models



The rear climate control seats can also be turned on and off from the front seats.

### ■ Rear seat heaters



Press the knob to turn the system on, and turn the knob to the desired temperature setting.

The further you turn the knob clockwise, the warmer the seat temperature becomes. Press the knob again to turn the system off.



The rear seat heaters can also be turned on and off from the front seats.

### ■ Operating condition

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

### ■ Replacing the air filters

Filters are installed in the climate control seats. For replacement of the filters, contact your Lexus dealer.

 CAUTION

■ **Burns/excessive cooling**

- Use caution when seating the following persons in a seat to avoid the possibility of burns or excessive cooling:
  - Babies, small children, elderly persons, sick persons and persons with a physical disability
  - Persons who have sensitive skin
  - Persons who are fatigued
  - Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs which induce sleep, such as sleeping drugs and cold remedies
- Do not cover the seat with anything when using the climate control seat or seat heater. Using the climate control seat or seat heater with a blanket or cushion may increase or decrease the temperature of the seat, resulting in overheating or overcooling.
- Do not use the climate control seat or seat heater more than necessary. Doing so may cool the occupants excessively or may cause minor burns or overheating.

 NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the climate control seat and seat heater**

Do not put heavy objects that have an uneven surface on the seat and do not stick sharp objects, such as needles and nails, into the seat.

■ **To prevent the battery from being discharged**

Do not leave the system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

### 3-8. Other interior features

## Armrest (5-seat models)



Pull the armrest down for use.

#### NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the armrest**

Do not place too much strain on the armrest.

### 3-8. Other interior features

## Rear seat relaxation system (4-seat models)

Pneumatic chambers and vibration units built into the right-hand rear seat provide the occupant with 3 speeds and intensities of pressure and 7 speeds of vibration.



- 1** ON/OFF - turns the system on and off  
If no buttons are selected for about 3 minutes, the system will automatically turn off.
- 2** SHIATSU - starts the SHIATSU program
- 3** STRETCH - starts the STRETCH program
- 4** SHOULDER - starts manual operation for the upper back
- 5** BACK - starts manual operation for the lower back
- 6** INTENSITY - adjusts the intensity of air pressure
- 7** SPEED - adjusts the speed of the air unit
- 8** VIB. - turns the vibration on and off

### 9 VIB. SPEED - adjusts the vibration speed.

The vibration function can be operated along with the SHIATSU, STRETCH, BACK or SHOULDER function. If these functions are operated together, pressing either the VIB. button or the previously selected button (SHIATSU, STRETCH, BACK or SHOULDER) stops the corresponding operation.

#### ■ Programmed operations

- SHIATSU  
Partial pressure for the whole back
- STRETCH  
Stretches and relaxation of the whole back

#### ■ Timer function

Each operation will automatically stop about 15 minutes after it starts.

#### ■ Operating condition

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

### CAUTION

#### ■ Using the rear seat relaxation system

- Those who are pregnant, have recently given birth, or suffer from ailments requiring rest (heart disease etc.) should consult a doctor before use.
- Do not allow children to use the relaxation function.
- Do not use immediately after a meal or for an extended period of time.
- If you feel sick while using the relaxation function, immediately discontinue use.

### 3-8. Other interior features

## Retractable table (4-seat models)



Slide the lever to raise the table.



Pull the table up and pull down the table.



The position of the table can be changed. Before using the table, make sure that the table is securely locked.

When the table is in use, the front seats will stop if they are going to contact the table.  
(→P. 61)



When returning the table, pull it up while pulling the lock release lever.

 **CAUTION****■ When not in use**

To avoid injury, return the table.

**■ Caution while driving**

Keep the table stowed properly in its place. In the event of an accident, contact with the table may result in death or serious injury.

**■ When using the table**

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Make sure the table is securely locked.
- Do not lean on the table.
- Do not put anything heavier than 10 kg (22 lb.) on the table.

 **NOTICE****■ To prevent damage to the table**

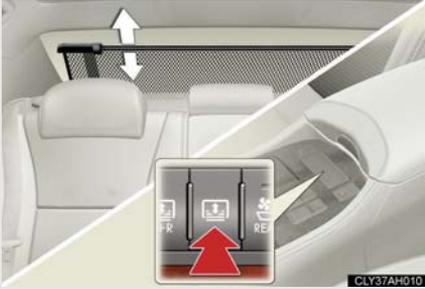
Do not place too much strain on the table.

### 3-8. Other interior features

## Rear sunshade (if equipped)

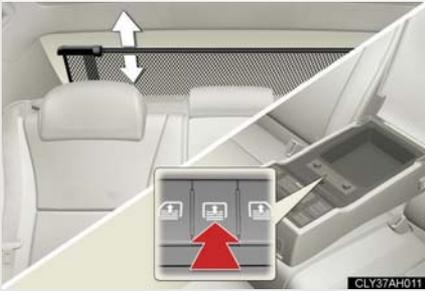
The rear sunshade can be raised and lowered by operating any of the buttons shown below.

► From front seat



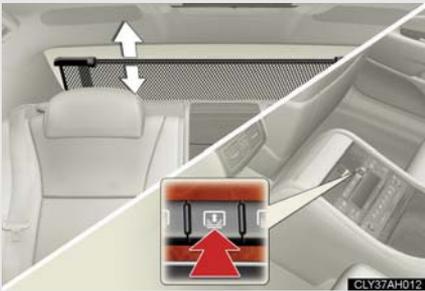
Extend/retract

► From rear seat (5-seat models)



Extend/retract

► From rear seat (4-seat models)



Extend/retract

### ■ The rear sunshade can be used when

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

### ■ Operating the rear sunshade after turning the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF

The rear sunshade can be operated for approximately 60 seconds even after the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is switched to ACCESSORY mode or turned OFF.

### ■ Reverse operation feature

To ensure adequate rear visibility, the rear sunshade automatically lowers when the shift lever is shifted to “R”.

However, the rear sunshade is raised again if any of the following occurs:

- The button is pressed again.
- The shift lever is shifted to “P”.
- The shift lever is shifted out of “P” and “R”, and the vehicle reaches a speed of 9 mph (15 km/h).

If the engine is turned off when the rear sunshade has been lowered due to the reverse operation feature, it will not be raised even when the engine is turned on again and the vehicle reaches a speed of 9 mph (15 km/h). To raise the sunshade again, press the button.

### ■ Button lock function

To prevent inadvertent operation, some buttons on the rear armrest can be locked. (→P. 281)

## CAUTION

### ■ When the rear sunshade is being raised or lowered

Do not place fingers or other objects in the shade mechanism or in the opening as injury may result.

 NOTICE

■ **To prevent the battery from being discharged**

Do not operate the rear sunshade when the engine is not running.

■ **To ensure normal operation of the sunshade**

Observe the following precautions:

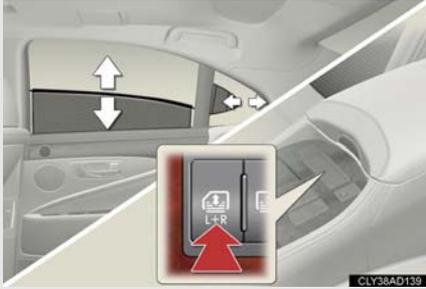
- Do not place excessive load on the motor or other components.
- Do not place objects where they may hinder opening and closing operations.
- Do not attach items to the rear sunshade.
- Keep the opening clean and clear of obstructions.
- Do not operate the rear sunshade continuously for long periods of time.

### 3-8. Other interior features

## Rear door sunshades (if equipped)

The rear door sunshades can be extended and retracted by operating any of the buttons shown below.

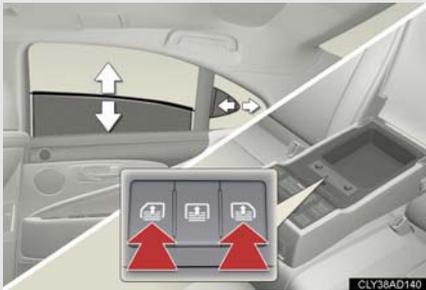
#### ► From front seat



#### Extend/retract

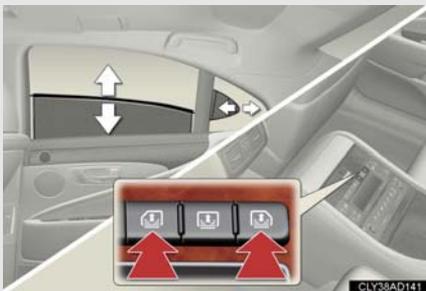
The rear door sunshades can be extended only when both of left and right rear door sunshades are retracted. Pressing the button with either side retracted will cause both sides to be retracted.

#### ► From rear seat (5-seat models)



#### Extend/retract

#### ► From rear seat (4-seat models)



#### Extend/retract

### ■ Operating conditions

- The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- The rear windows are fully closed.  
The rear door sunshades automatically retract when the rear windows are opened.

### ■ Operating the rear door sunshades after turning the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF

The rear door sunshades can be operated for approximately 60 seconds even after the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is switched to ACCESSORY mode or turned OFF.

### ■ Jam protection function

If an object becomes caught between a rear door sunshade and the window frame, the jam protection function will cause the sunshade to detach from its drive mechanism and retract.

- ▶ If the jam protection function operates when extending the rear door sunshades  
Pressing the button will reconnect the sunshade.  
Pressing the button again will allow the sunshades to be operated.  
If the sunshade does not operate after the button is pressed, press the button again.

- ▶ If the jam protection function operates when retracting the rear door sunshades  
Press and hold the button to re-extend the rear door sunshades, and continue pressing for more than 5 seconds after the sunshades have fully extended and stopped.

### ■ Button lock function

To prevent inadvertent operation, some buttons on the rear armrest can be locked. (→P. 281)

### ■ When reconnecting the battery

The rear door sunshades will always be retracted the first time the button is pressed.

 **CAUTION****■ When the rear door sunshades are being extended or retracted**

Do not place fingers or other objects in the shade mechanism or in the opening as injury may result.

**■ Jam protection function**

Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.

 **NOTICE****■ To prevent the battery from being discharged**

Do not operate the rear door sunshades when the engine is not running.

**■ To ensure normal operation of the sunshades**

Observe the following precautions:

- Do not place excessive load on the motor or other components.
- Do not place objects where they may hinder opening and closing operations.
- Do not attach items to the rear door sunshades.
- Keep the opening clean and clear of obstructions.
- Do not operate the rear door sunshades continuously for long periods of time.

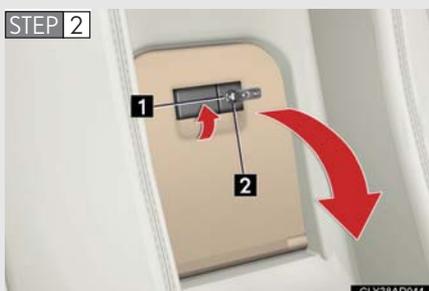
### 3-8. Other interior features

## Trunk storage extension (if equipped)

Long objects can be loaded in the vehicle by utilizing the trunk space and rear seat area.



Pull down the rear seat armrest.



Open the armrest door.

The armrest door can be locked and unlocked using the mechanical key.

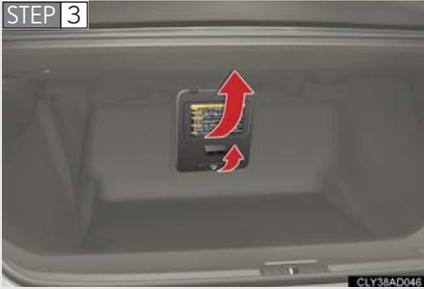
- 1** Lock
- 2** Unlock

► Opening from the cabin



Open the inside trunk door from the cabin or trunk, and load baggage or other items.

► Opening from the trunk



Open the inside trunk door from the cabin or trunk, and load baggage or other items.

**!** CAUTION

■ **When not in use**

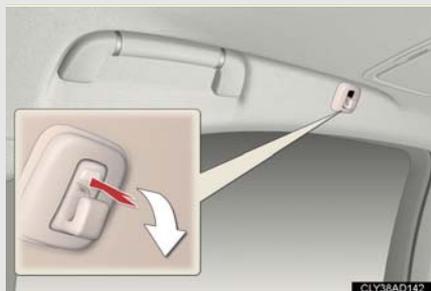
Ensure that the inside trunk door is closed.

In the event of sudden braking, items stored in the trunk may be thrown forward into the cabin, resulting in injury.

## 3-8. Other interior features

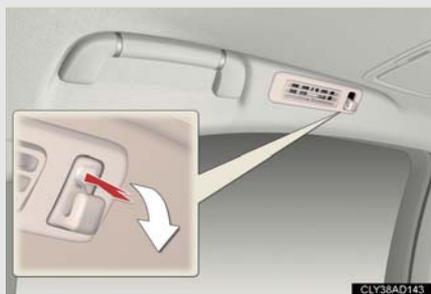
### Coat hooks

- ▶ Without rear air conditioning system



To use the coat hook, push it on.

- ▶ With rear air conditioning system



To use the coat hook, push it on.

#### CAUTION

##### ■ Items that must not be hung on the hook

Do not hang a coat hanger or other hard or sharp object on the hook. If the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy, these items may become projectiles that cause death or serious injury.

## 3-8. Other interior features

### Floor mat

Securely place a mat that matches the size of the space on the carpet.



Secure the floor mat using the hooks provided.

#### CAUTION

##### ■ When inserting the floor mat

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may result in the floor mat slipping and interfering with the movement of the pedals during driving, resulting in an accident.

- Make sure the floor mat is properly placed on the vehicle carpet and the correct side faces upward.
- Do not place floor mats on top of existing mats.

## 3-8. Other interior features

### Trunk features

#### ■ Cargo net

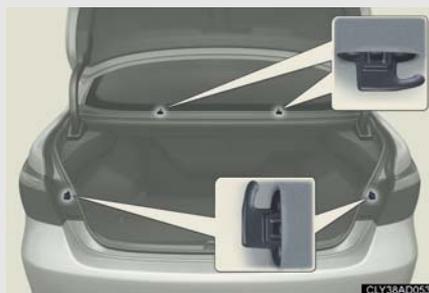


The cargo net is provided for securing loose items on the floor or items inside the trunk.

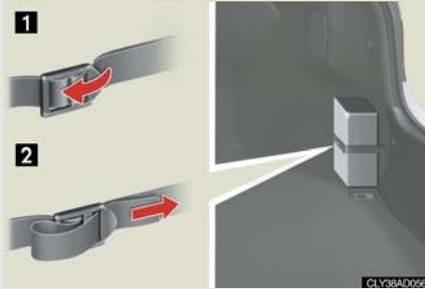
Raise the cargo hooks on the floor. Hook the net on the cargo hooks.



#### ■ Shopping bag hooks



### ■ First-aid kit storage belt



### ■ Luggage mat



 **CAUTION**

■ **When the cargo net is not in use**

To avoid injury, always return the cargo hooks on the floor to their stowed positions.

 **NOTICE**

■ **When closing the trunk**

Do not leave the luggage mat lever hooked on the edge of the trunk.  
The luggage mat may get damaged.

## 3-8. Other interior features

# Garage door opener

The garage door opener can be programmed to operate garage doors, gates, entry doors, door locks, home lighting systems, and security systems, and other devices.

The garage door opener (HomeLink<sup>®</sup> Universal Transceiver) is manufactured under license from HomeLink<sup>®</sup>.

### Programming the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> (for U.S.A. owners)

The HomeLink<sup>®</sup> compatible transceiver in your vehicle has 3 buttons which can be programmed to operate 3 different devices. Refer to the programming method below appropriate for the device.



- 1 Indicator
- 2 Buttons

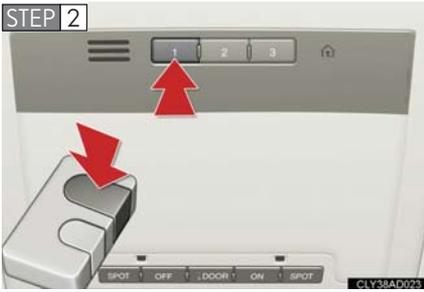
#### ■ Programming the HomeLink<sup>®</sup>



STEP 1

Point the remote control transmitter for the device 1 to 3 in. (25 to 75 mm) from the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> control buttons.

Keep the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> indicator light in view while programming.



Press and hold one of the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> buttons and the transmitter button. When the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> indicator light changes from a slow to a rapid flash, you can release both buttons.

If the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> indicator light comes on but does not flash, flashes rapidly for 2 seconds and remains lit, the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> button is already programmed. Use the other buttons or follow the "Reprogramming a HomeLink<sup>®</sup> button" instructions. (→P. 514)



Test the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> operation by pressing the newly programmed button.

If a HomeLink<sup>®</sup> button has been programmed for a garage door, check to see if the garage door opens and closes. If the garage door does not operate, see if your remote control transmitter is of the rolling code type. Press and hold the programmed HomeLink<sup>®</sup> button. The remote control transmitter is of the rolling code type if the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> indicator light flashes rapidly for 2 seconds and then remains lit. If your transmitter is of the rolling code type, proceed to the heading "Programming a rolling code system".

**STEP 4** Repeat the steps above to program another device for each of the remaining HomeLink<sup>®</sup> buttons.

### ■ Programming a Rolling Code system (for U.S.A. owners)

If your device is Rolling Code equipped, follow the steps under the heading “Programming the HomeLink<sup>®</sup>” before proceeding with the steps listed below.

**STEP 1** Locate the training button on the ceiling mounted garage door opener motor. The exact location and color of the button may vary by brand of garage door opener motor.

Refer to the operation manual supplied with the garage door opener for the location of the training button.

**STEP 2** Press the training button.

Following this step, you have 30 seconds in which to initiate step 3 below.

**STEP 3** Press and hold the vehicle’s programmed HomeLink<sup>®</sup> button for 2 seconds and release it. Repeat this step once again. The garage door may open.

If the garage door opens, the programming process is complete. If the door does not open, press and release the button a third time. This third press and release will complete the programming process by opening the garage door.

The ceiling mounted garage door opener motor should now recognize the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> signal and operate the garage door.

**STEP 4** Repeat the steps above to program another rolling code system for any of the remaining HomeLink<sup>®</sup> buttons.

### ■ Programming an entry gate (for U.S.A. owners)/Programming all devices in the Canadian market

**STEP 1** Place your transmitter 1 to 3 in. (25 to 75 mm) away from the surface of the HomeLink<sup>®</sup>.

Keep the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> indicator light in view while programming.

**STEP 2** Press and hold the selected HomeLink<sup>®</sup> button.

**STEP 3** Repeatedly press and release (cycle) the device’s remote control button for two seconds each until step 4 is completed.

**STEP 4** When the indicator light on the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> compatible transceiver starts to flash rapidly, release the buttons.

**STEP 5** Test the operation of the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> by pressing the newly programmed button. Check to see if the gate/device operates correctly.

**STEP 6** Repeat the steps above to program another device for each of the remaining HomeLink<sup>®</sup> buttons.

### ■ Programming other devices

To program other devices such as home security systems, home door locks or lighting, contact your authorized Lexus dealer for assistance.

### ■ Reprogramming a button

The individual HomeLink<sup>®</sup> buttons cannot be erased but can be reprogrammed. To reprogram a button, follow the “Reprogramming a HomeLink<sup>®</sup> button” instructions.

## Operating HomeLink<sup>®</sup>

Press the appropriate HomeLink<sup>®</sup> button. The HomeLink<sup>®</sup> indicator light should turn on.

The HomeLink<sup>®</sup> compatible transceiver in your vehicle continues to send a signal for up to 20 seconds as long as the button is pressed.

## Reprogramming a HomeLink<sup>®</sup> button

Press and hold the desired HomeLink<sup>®</sup> button. After 20 seconds, the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> indicator light will start flashing slowly. Next, while still pressing and holding the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> button, press and hold the button on the transmitter until the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> indicator light changes from a slow to a rapid flash.

## Erasing the entire HomeLink® memory (all three programs)



Press and hold the 2 outside buttons for 10 seconds until the indicator light flashes.

If you sell your vehicle, be sure to erase the programs stored in the HomeLink® memory.

### ■ Before programming

- Install a new battery in the remote control transmitter.
- The battery side of the remote control transmitter must be pointed away from the HomeLink® button.

### ■ Certification for the garage door opener

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of the IC Rules.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**WARNING:** This transmitter has been tested and complies with FCC and IC rules. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the device.

 **CAUTION**

■ **When programming a garage door or other remote control device**

The garage door or other device may operate, so ensure people and objects are out of danger to prevent potential harm.

■ **Conforming to federal safety standards**

Do not use the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> compatible transceiver with any garage door opener or device that lacks safety stop and reverse features as required by federal safety standards.

This includes any garage door that cannot detect an obstruction object. A door or device without these features increases the risk of death or serious injury.

### 3-8. Other interior features

## Compass (if equipped)

The compass on the inside rear view mirror indicates the direction in which the vehicle is heading.

#### ■ Operation

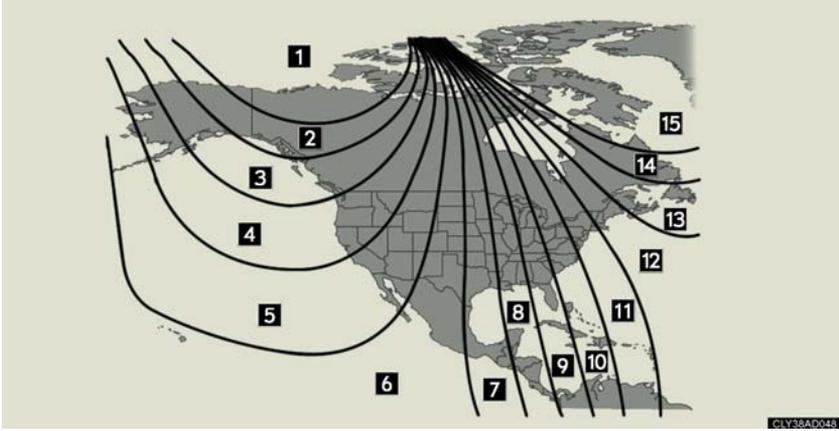


To turn the compass on or off, push and hold "AUTO" for 3 seconds.

#### ■ Displays and directions

Display	Direction
N	North
NE	Northeast
E	East
SE	Southeast
S	South
SW	Southwest
W	West
NW	Northwest

## Calibrating the compass



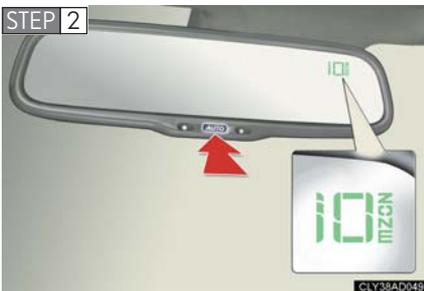
The direction display deviates from the true direction determined by the earth's magnetic field. The amount of deviation varies according to the geographic position of the vehicle.

If you cross over a map boundary shown in illustration, the compass will deviate.

To obtain higher precision or perfect calibration, refer to the following.

### ■ Deviation calibration

**STEP 1** Stop the vehicle where it is safe to drive in a circle.



Push and hold "AUTO" for 6 seconds.

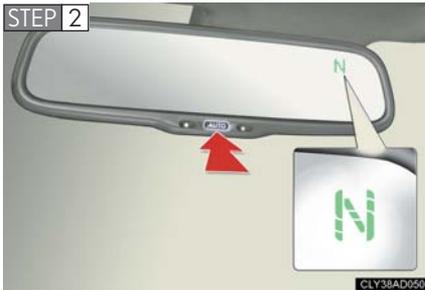
A number (1 to 15) appears on the compass display.

**STEP 3** Press "AUTO", and referring to the map above, select the number of the zone where you are.

If the direction is displayed several seconds after adjustment, the calibration is complete.

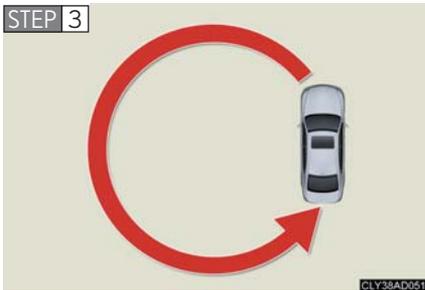
## ■ Circling calibration

**STEP 1** Stop the vehicle where it is safe to drive in a circle.



Push and hold "AUTO" for 12 seconds.

"CAL" appears on the compass display.



Drive the vehicle at 5 mph (8 km/h) or less in a circle until a direction is displayed.

If there is not enough space to drive in a circle, drive around the block until the direction is displayed.

## ■ Conditions unfavorable to correct operation

The compass may not show the correct direction in the following conditions:

- The vehicle is stopped immediately after turning.
- The vehicle is on an inclined surface.
- The vehicle is in a place where the earth's magnetic field is subject to interference by artificial magnetic fields (underground car park/parking lot, under a steel tower, between buildings, roof car park/parking lot, near an intersection, near a large vehicle, etc.).
- The vehicle has become magnetized.  
(There is a magnet or metal object near the inside rear view mirror.)
- The battery has been disconnected.
- A door is open.

 CAUTION

■ **While driving the vehicle**

Do not adjust the display. Be sure to adjust the display only when the vehicle is stopped.

■ **When doing the circling calibration**

Be sure to secure a wide space, and watch out for people and vehicles in the neighborhood. Do not violate any local traffic rules while performing circling calibration.

 NOTICE

■ **To avoid the compass malfunctions**

Do not place magnets or any metal objects near the inside rear view mirror. Doing this may cause a malfunction of the compass sensor.

■ **To ensure normal operation of the compass**

- Do not perform circling calibration of the compass in a place where the earth's magnetic field is subject to interference by artificial magnetic fields.
- During calibration, do not operate electric systems (moon roof, power windows, etc.) as they may interfere with the calibration.

## 3-8. Other interior features

### Lexus Link System (if equipped)

The Lexus Link System is a communication service that uses the Global Positioning System (GPS) data and cellular service to provide you with safety, security and convenience. This system is only operational in GPS and cellular coverage areas. Button operation and voice commands are used to operate the system. To operate the system, follow the voice guidance instructions. For details about service and subscription, call the Lexus Link Call Center at 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) (toll-free).

#### ■ Buttons



- 1 Voice keypad button
- 2 Volume control
- 3 Phone button
- 4 "SERVICES" button
- 5 Emergency button

#### ■ Services

The Lexus Link System offers the following services:

- Airbag deployment notification (→P. 523)
- Emergency assistance (→P. 524)
- Stolen vehicle location assistance (→P. 524)
- Remote horn/lights and remote door lock/unlock (→P. 525)
- Advisor record (→P. 526)
- Personal calling (→P. 526)
- Other services (→P. 525)

Operating the Lexus Link System during a Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> phone call will terminate the Bluetooth phone call.

## Safety information for the Lexus Link System

Important! Read this information before using the Lexus Link System.

### ■ Exposure to radio frequency signals

The Lexus Link System to be installed in your vehicle is a low power radio transmitter and receiver. When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode, it receives and also sends out radio frequency (RF) signals.

In August 1996, the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) adopted RF exposure guidelines with safety levels for mobile wireless phones. Those guidelines are consistent with the safety standards previously set by both U.S. and international standards bodies.

- ANSI (American National Standards Institute) C95.1 [1992]
- NCRP (National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurement) Report 86 [1986]
- ICNIRP (International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection) [1996]

Those standards were based on comprehensive and periodic evaluations of the relevant scientific literature. Over 120 scientists, engineers, and physicians from universities, government health agencies, and industry reviewed the available body of research to develop the ANSI Standard (C95.1).

The design of the Lexus Link System complies with the FCC guidelines in addition to those standards.

## Indicator and warning lights



### 1 Operation indicator light

The operation indicator light will go off a short time after your subscription expired.

### 2 Warning light

If the warning light (red light) comes on, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

## Airbag deployment notification

If an airbag deploys, an emergency call is automatically placed to the Lexus Link Call Center, and your vehicle's location is identified. The Lexus Link Advisor will attempt to contact you and assess the situation. The Advisor can quickly contact the nearest emergency services provider, describe the situation and request that assistance be sent to your location.

The Lexus Link Advisor can, if requested, connect you to an emergency services operator.

### Emergency assistance

When you press  button, a priority call is placed to the Lexus Link Call Center with your vehicle's location. At the Call Center, the Lexus Link Advisor can determine your vehicle's location, communicate with you, and, if appropriate, contact the nearest emergency service provider.

If you have accidentally pressed the button, tell the Lexus Link Advisor that you are not experiencing an emergency.

### Stolen vehicle location assistance

If your vehicle is stolen, call the Lexus Link Call Center at 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) (toll-free) and select the option for Lexus Link.

To protect subscribers' privacy, the location of a vehicle will not be provided to anyone other than a law enforcement authority.

## Remote horn/lights and remote door lock/unlock

The remote operations are performed by contacting the Lexus Link Call Center from the outside of the vehicle. When necessary, call the Lexus Link Call Center at 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) (toll-free) and select the option for Lexus Link.

- If you forget to lock the vehicle or you are locked out, the Lexus Link Call Center can send a signal to lock or unlock the vehicle remotely.
- If you forget where you parked the vehicle, such as in a large parking lot, the Lexus Link Call Center can send a signal to flash the headlights and sound the horn to help you locate the vehicle.

When contacting the Lexus Link Call Center from the outside of the vehicle, you need the Lexus Link PIN (Personal Identification Number). Write the PIN down and carry it with you.

Ability to locate stolen vehicles and lock/unlock doors and activate horn/lights will vary with conditions. Lexus Link is unable to remotely lock doors when the electronic key is left inside the vehicle and is unable to remotely unlock doors when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

## Other services

Press  in the vehicle or call the Lexus Link Call Center at 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) (toll-free), and then select the option for Lexus Link. The services provided will depend on the service plan level.

### Advisor record

#### ■ Recording a conversation with an advisor

Press  to record a conversation. To stop recording, press  again.

- Up to 2 minutes of recording time is available.
- Recording a new conversation deletes the previously recorded conversation.

#### ■ Playing the recorded conversation

**STEP 1** Press  or .

**STEP 2** Say “Advisor playback”.

Press the button again to stop the playback.

To restart the playback, press , say “Advisor playback” and then select either of the following methods.

- Say “Resume” to resume the playback.
- Say “Play” to start from the beginning.

### Personal calling from OEM telematic services

The Lexus Link System provides access to personal calling, a hands-free phone service provided by OEM telematic services. You can purchase a package of minutes that works best for you. As you make and receive calls, minutes are deducted from your plan. They are easily billed to a credit card that is kept on file so no separate phone bill is needed.

Personal calling universal voice recognition commands:

- **“Help”** The system will provide a list of available commands.
- **“Clear”** When you are entering digits, this command will erase the last digit entered.
- **“Cancel”** This command takes you from the current function to the “Lexus Link ready” prompt. If the last response from the system was “Lexus Link ready”, this command will exit voice mode.

Voice recognition command error message:

- **“Pardon”** The system responds with this message if the system does not recognize your voice command properly. Say the command slowly again. After the third time this happens, the system will try to guess the command you are requesting. If correct, say “Yes”. If not, say “No”, and the system will prompt you with its next-best guess.
- **“Slower please”** The system responds with this message if you say a command before the system is ready to listen or if your voice command cannot be recognized because of substantial background noise. Try to wait slightly longer before speaking.

### ■ There are 5 ways to make a call.

#### ▶ Dialing a specific phone number

**STEP 1** Press . When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Dial”.

**STEP 2** When the system responds with “Phone number to dial please”, say the entire number you wish to dial without pausing.

**STEP 3** The system will repeat the number and ask “Yes or No”.

**STEP 4** Say “Yes” (or “No” to try again).

**STEP 5** The system responds with “Dialing” (your call will then be connected).

#### ▶ Dialing digit-by-digit (“Digit Dial”)

“Digit Dial” enables you to dial a phone number by individual digit. This is helpful when there is background noise and also improves voice recognition.

**STEP 1** Press . When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Digit Dial”.

**STEP 2** When the system responds with “Digit please”, say the first digit of the number to be dialed and wait for it to be repeated back to you.

**STEP 3** Continue one digit at a time until all digits are entered.

**STEP 4** When finished, say “Dial”. The system responds with “Dialing” and your call is placed.

If you have problems storing a number using the continuous number method, you can store numbers one digit at a time using “Digit Store”. Simply follow the instructions above for “Digit Dial”, except say “Digit Store” in STEP 1 and “Store” in STEP 4.

► Dialing a phone number saved as a nametag

A nametag is a convenient way to store important or frequently called phone numbers for easy access at any time. To do this, choose a frequently-called number to store, the example below uses your home telephone number.

● How to store a nametag

**STEP 1** Press . When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Store”.

**STEP 2** When the system responds with “Phone number to store, please”, say the entire number you wish to store with no pauses. The system will repeat the number and ask “Yes or No”.

**STEP 3** Say “Yes” (or “No” to try again).

**STEP 4** When the system responds with “Nametag, please”, say “My home”.

**STEP 5** When the system responds with “About to store my home. Does that sound OK?”, say “Yes” (or “No” to try again).

**STEP 6** The system responds with “Storing my home”.

-The system can store up to 20 nametags.

-Try to use multi-syllable nametags such as “my home”, and “the office”.

-Try to avoid similar-sounding nametags like “Tim” and “Kim”.

When using the “Dial” and “Store” commands, the system will recognize 7-, 10-, and 11-digit phone numbers. When dialing or storing a phone number, you can say “zero” or “oh” for 0.

● How to place a call using a stored nametag

**STEP 1** Press . When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Call”.

**STEP 2** When the system responds with “Nametag, please”, say a nametag.

**STEP 3** The system responds with “Calling nametag”.

● How to hear a list of your stored nametags

**STEP 1** Press . When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Directory”.

**STEP 2** The system will list your nametags.

▶ Dialing the last number you called (“Redial”)

You can dial the last number you called by using the “Redial” feature.

**STEP 1** Press . When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Redial”.

**STEP 2** The system will respond with “Redialing [#]”.

▶ Dialing a number a Lexus Link Advisor downloaded to your vehicle

**STEP 1** Press . When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Number recall”.

**STEP 2** The system will respond with “Connecting to number recall”.

■ **Receiving a call**

When someone calls you, you will hear a ring tone. Press  to answer the call.

If you do not answer within 30 seconds, the system will terminate the incoming call.

■ **Ending a call**

When your call is finished, press  to end the call.

### ■ Accessing voicemail and sending number tones to an automated phone system

You can access a voicemail system and respond to number request from an automated phone system. When you receive the request for a number while in a call, press  after saying the numbers one at a time, say “Dial”.

If you do not say any commands within 5 seconds after pressing the button, or if you press the button twice, the system cannot receive the number tones you are trying to send. Press the button to try again.

### ■ How to retrieve your phone number

**STEP 1** Press . When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “My number”.

**STEP 2** The system responds with “Your number is [#]”.

If the response is “Personal calling unavailable”, this means your personal calling feature is not yet active; this may take a few days from vehicle delivery. It could also mean that personal calling service is not available in your area. Press  to check with an Advisor. Now that you have your number, take a moment to practice by making your first call to your home phone. Remember, the system recognizes numbers better when you say them quickly.

### ■ Verifying remaining units (minutes)

► To verify remaining minutes

**STEP 1** Press . When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Units”.

**STEP 2** When the system responds with “Verify or add”, say “Verify”.

**STEP 3** The system responds with “You have [#] units remaining”.

► To add more calling units (minutes)

**STEP 1** Press . When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Units”.

**STEP 2** When the system responds with “Verify or add”, say “Add”.

**STEP 3** The system responds with “Connecting to the Personal Calling Center”.

### ■ Security code/locking your system

The personal calling function can be locked using a 4-digit security code. While the system is locked, it is only possible to communicate with the Lexus Link Call Center.

To turn on/off the security

**STEP 1** Press . When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Security”.

**STEP 2** When the system responds with “Enter first digit of code please”, say your 4-digit code one digit at a time.

**STEP 3** After the fourth digit, the system responds with “Security (code #####) is now on/off”.

### ■ Speech recognition information

The Lexus Link speech recognition systems use speech technology that is designed to understand a wide range of speakers of American English. However, the technology may not work as well if a regional or ethnic accent is encountered. If the speech recognition system does not work properly, refer to the following:

- The system does not recognize your command properly if noise is present. Perform the following to improve voice command recognition.
  - Turn down or off the air conditioning system.
  - Slow down to reduce wind noise.
  - Close the windows and the moon roof to block outside noise.
  - Have all occupants be quiet so that the system does not recognize their conversation as a command.
- When to speak

Say a command within 5 seconds after the system prompts you to speak.

- How to speak
  - Speak forcefully and clearly.
  - Speak calmly and naturally.
  - The driver should speak while facing forward, and the passenger should speak facing the inside rear view mirror.
  - Avoid speaking with a rising intonation. Use a flat or falling intonation.

- Tips for one-word commands
  - The system recognizes only one word at a time for personal calling. (There are some exceptions, such as “Advanced services” and “My number”.)
  - When inputting the security codes or voice-activated keypad number, you must say them one digit at a time. When inputting a phone number, the speech recognition system can recognize 7-, 10-, and 11-digit numbers as well as the number 911.
- Tips for entering a phone number using the “Dial” and “Store” commands
  - You do not need to say “Dial”, “Store” or “Verify” after the phone number.
  - If the phone number entered is not 7-, 10-, or 11-digits, use the “Dial” or “Store” command.
  - Do not pause between the digits.
  - Speech recognition does not recognize the words “Hundred” or “Thousand”. Instead, say each digit.
  - Speech recognition often works better when the digits are combined smoothly into a single phrase.
  - If the system does not recognize your command properly, use the “Digit dial” command to enter one digit at a time.
- If problems continue
  - Say each one of the syllables in the word clearly.
  - Be sure to articulate each sound in the word.
  - If the system is confusing 2 commands that are similar, be sure to pronounce the distinction.
  - Avoid clipping short words and syllables.
  - Try speaking louder to prevent background noise from drowning out your voice.
- Audible voice prompts

Some of the voice guidance instructions can be changed to Spanish. Press



and ask a Lexus Link Advisor.

### ■ Information on Advanced Services

See the Lexus Link area of the Lexus website at [www.lexus.com/lexuslink/](http://www.lexus.com/lexuslink/) or call the Lexus Link Call Center at 1-800-255-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) (toll-free) for more information.

### ■ Certification for the Lexus Link System

FCC ID: SCWTR-423-A2

#### NOTE:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### CAUTION

#### ■ FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications in construction not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Radio Frequency Exposure. This device is approved for Mobile Application only and, to comply with applicable FCC radio frequency exposure regulations, must be used with a distance of at least 7.9 in. (20 cm) between the antenna and the body of any person at all time during use.



<b>4-1. Maintenance and care</b> .....	<b>536</b>	<b>4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance</b> .....	<b>548</b>
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior.....	536	Do-it-yourself service precautions.....	548
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior.....	539	Hood.....	551
<b>4-2. Maintenance</b> .....	<b>542</b>	Positioning a floor jack .....	552
Maintenance requirements .....	542	Engine compartment .....	554
General maintenance .....	544	Tires.....	570
Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs.....	547	Tire inflation pressure.....	578
		Wheels.....	582
		Air conditioning filter .....	584
		Electronic key battery.....	587
		Checking and replacing fuses .....	589
		Headlight aim .....	606
		Light bulbs.....	608

## 4-1. Maintenance and care

# Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior

Perform the following to protect the vehicle and maintain it in prime condition:

- Working from top to bottom, liberally apply water to the vehicle body, wheel wells and underside of the vehicle to remove any dirt and dust.  
Wash the vehicle body using a sponge or soft cloth, such as a chamois.
- For hard-to-remove marks, use car wash soap and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Wipe away any water.
- Wax the vehicle when the waterproof coating deteriorates.

If water does not bead on a clean surface, apply wax when the vehicle body is cool.

---

### ■ Automatic car washes

- Fold the mirrors back before washing the vehicle.
- Brushes used in automatic car washes may scratch the vehicle surface and harm your vehicle's paint.

### ■ High pressure car washes

- Do not allow the nozzles of the car wash to come within close proximity of the windows.
- Before car wash, check that the fuel filler door on your vehicle is closed properly.

### ■ Aluminum wheels

Remove any dirt immediately by using a neutral detergent. Do not use hard brushes or abrasive cleaners. Do not use strong or harsh chemical cleaners. Use the same mild detergent and wax as used on the paint.

### ■ Bumpers and side moldings

Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners.

### ■ To prevent deterioration and corrosion

- Wash the vehicle immediately in the following cases:
  - After driving near the sea coast
  - After driving on salted roads
  - If you see coal tar or tree sap on the paint surface
  - If you see dead insects, insect droppings or bird droppings on the paint
  - After driving in an area contaminated with soot, oily smoke, mine dust, iron powder or chemical substances
  - If the vehicle becomes heavily soiled in dust or mud
  - If liquids such as benzene and gasoline are spilled on the paint surface
- If the paint is chipped or scratched, have it repaired immediately.

## CAUTION

### ■ Caution about the exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers

Exhaust gasses cause the exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers to become quite hot.

When washing the vehicle, be careful not to touch the pipes and diffusers until they have cooled sufficiently, as touching a hot exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers can cause burns.

## NOTICE

### ■ To protect your vehicle's painted surfaces

Do not use organic cleaners such as benzene or gasoline.

### ■ Cleaning the exterior lights

- Wash carefully. Do not use organic substances or scrub with a hard brush. This may damage the surfaces of the lights.
- Do not apply wax on the surfaces of the lights. Wax may cause damage to the lenses.

 NOTICE

■ When using an automatic car wash (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)



Set the wiper switch to "OFF".  
If the wiper switch is in "AUTO", the wipers may operate and the wiper blades may be damaged.

# Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior

The following procedures will help protect your vehicle's interior and keep it in top condition:

### ■ Protecting the vehicle interior

Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner. Wipe dirty surfaces with a cloth dampened with lukewarm water.

### ■ Cleaning the leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe any excess dirt and dust with a soft cloth dampened with diluted detergent.

Use a diluted water solution of approximately 5% neutral wool detergent.

- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off all remaining traces of detergent.
- Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture. Allow the leather to dry in shaded and ventilated area.

### ■ Synthetic leather areas

- Remove loose dirt using a vacuum cleaner.
- Apply a mild soap solution to the synthetic leather using a sponge or soft cloth.
- Allow the solution to soak in for a few minutes. Remove the dirt and wipe off the solution with a clean, damp cloth.

### ■ Cleaning the inside of the rear window

Do not use glass cleaner to clean the rear window, as this may cause damage to the rear window defogger heater wires or antenna. Use a cloth dampened with lukewarm water to gently wipe the window clean. Wipe the window in strokes running parallel to the heater wires or antenna.

### ■ Caring for leather areas

Lexus recommends cleaning the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the vehicle's interior.

### ■ Shampooing the carpets

There are several commercial foaming-type cleaners available. Use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not apply water. Excellent results are obtained when keeping the carpet as dry as possible.

### ■ Seat belts

Clean with mild soap and lukewarm water using a cloth or sponge. Also check the belts periodically for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

### CAUTION

#### ■ Water in the vehicle

- Be careful not to splash or spill liquid on the floor.
- Do not get any of the SRS components or wiring in the vehicle interior wet. (→P.106)

An electrical malfunction may cause the airbags to deploy or not function properly, resulting in death or severe injury.

 NOTICE**■ Cleaning detergents**

Do not use the following types of detergent, as they may discolor the vehicle interior or cause streaks or damage to painted surfaces:

- Non-seat portions: Organic substances such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dye, or bleach
- Seats: Acidic solutions, such as thinner, benzene, or alcohol

**■ Preventing damage to leather surfaces**

Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to and deterioration of leather surfaces.

- Remove any dust or dirt on leather surfaces immediately.
- Do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight for extended periods of time. Park the vehicle in the shade, especially during summer.
- Do not place items made of vinyl, plastic, or that contain wax on the upholstery, as they may stick to the leather surface if the vehicle interior heats up significantly.

**■ Water on the floor**

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water.

Vehicle systems such as the audio system may be damaged if water comes into contact with electrical components under the floor of the vehicle, and may also cause the body to rust.

**■ Cleaning the inside of the rear window**

Be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or antenna.

## 4-2. Maintenance

# Maintenance requirements

To ensure safe and economical driving, day-to-day care and regular maintenance is essential. It is the owner's responsibility to perform regular checks. Lexus recommends the following maintenance.

### ■ General maintenance

Should be performed on a daily basis. This can be done by yourself or by a Lexus dealer.

### ■ Scheduled maintenance

Should be performed at specified intervals according to the maintenance schedule.

For details about maintenance items and schedules, refer to the "Warranty and Service Guide/Owner's Manual Supplement/Scheduled Maintenance".

### ■ Do-it-yourself maintenance

You can perform some maintenance procedures yourself.

Please be aware that do-it-yourself maintenance may affect warranty coverage.

The use of Lexus Repair Manuals is recommended.

For details about warranty coverage, see the separate "Owner's Guide", "Warranty and Service Guide", "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Warranty Booklet".

---

### ■ Repair and replacement

It is recommended that genuine Lexus parts be used for repair to ensure performance of each system. If non-Lexus parts are used in replacement or if a repair shop other than a Lexus dealer performs repairs, confirm the warranty coverage.

**■ Allow inspection and repairs to be performed by a Lexus dealer**

- Lexus technicians are well-trained specialists and are kept up to date with the latest service information. They are well informed about the operations of all systems on your vehicle.
- Keep a copy of the repair order. It proves that the maintenance that has been performed is under warranty coverage. If any problem should arise while your vehicle is under warranty, your Lexus dealer will promptly take care of it.

**⚠ CAUTION****■ Warning in handling of battery**

- Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and a wide variety of automobile components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and other reproductive harm. Work in a well ventilated area.
- Oils, fuels and fluids contained in vehicles as well as waste produced by component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Avoid exposure and wash any affected area immediately.
- Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which are known to cause brain damage. Wash your hands after handling. (→P. 566)

## 4-2. Maintenance

### General maintenance

Listed below are the general maintenance items that should be performed at the intervals specified in the “Warranty and Service Guide” or “Owner’s Manual Supplement”. It is recommended that any problem you notice should be brought to the attention of your Lexus dealer or qualified service shop for advice.

#### Engine compartment

Items	Check points
Battery	Maintenance-free? (→P. 566)
Brake fluid	At the correct level? (→P. 564)
Engine coolant	At the correct level? (→P. 562)
Engine oil	At the correct level? (→P. 558)
Exhaust system	No fumes or strange sounds?
Radiator/condenser/hoses	Not blocked with foreign matter? (→P. 564)
Washer fluid	At the correct level? (→P. 569)

## Vehicle interior

Items	Check points
Accelerator pedal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Moves smoothly (without uneven pedal effort or catching)?</li> </ul>
Automatic transmission "Park" mechanism	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Can the vehicle be held securely on an incline with the shift lever in P?</li> </ul>
Brake pedal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Moves smoothly?</li> <li>• Does it have appropriate clearance and correct amount of free play?</li> </ul>
Brakes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Not pull to one side when applied?</li> <li>• Loss of brake effectiveness?</li> <li>• Spongy feeling brake pedal?</li> <li>• Pedal almost touches floor?</li> </ul>
Head restraints	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Move smoothly and lock securely?</li> </ul>
Indicators/buzzers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Function properly?</li> </ul>
Lights	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do all the lights come on?</li> <li>• Headlights aimed correctly? (→P. 606)</li> </ul>
Parking brake	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Moves smoothly?</li> <li>• Can hold the vehicle securely on an incline?</li> </ul>
Seat belts	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Does the seat belt system operate smoothly?</li> <li>• Are the belts undamaged?</li> </ul>
Seats	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do the seat controls operate properly?</li> </ul>

Items	Check points
Steering wheel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Moves smoothly?</li> <li>• Has correct free play?</li> <li>• No strange noises?</li> </ul>

### Vehicle exterior

Items	Check points
Door/trunk	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Operate smoothly?</li> </ul>
Engine hood	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The lock system works properly?</li> </ul>
Fluid leaks	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Is there any leakage after parking?</li> </ul>
Tire	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inflation pressure is correct?</li> <li>• Tire surfaces not worn or damaged?</li> <li>• Tires rotated according to the maintenance schedule?</li> <li>• Wheel nuts are not loose?</li> </ul>

### CAUTION

#### If the engine is running

Turn the engine off and ensure that there is adequate ventilation before performing maintenance checks.

Some states have vehicle emission inspection programs which include OBD (On Board Diagnostics) checks. The OBD system monitors the operation of the emission control system.

### ■ If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on

The OBD system determines that a problem exists somewhere in the emission control system. Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test and may need to be repaired. Contact your Lexus dealer to service the vehicle.

### ■ Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test:

- When the battery is disconnected or discharged

Readiness codes that are set during ordinary driving are erased. Also, depending on your driving habits, the readiness codes may not be completely set.

- When the fuel tank cap is loose

The malfunction indicator lamp comes on as a temporary malfunction and your vehicle may not pass the I/M test.

### ■ When the malfunction indicator lamp goes off after several driving trips

The error code in the OBD system will not be cleared unless the vehicle is driven 40 or more times.

### ■ If your vehicle does not pass the I/M test

Contact your Lexus dealer to prepare the vehicle for re-testing.

## 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

### Do-it-yourself service precautions

If you perform maintenance yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedure given in these sections.

Items	Parts and tools
Battery condition (→P. 566)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Warm water</li><li>• Baking soda</li><li>• Grease</li><li>• Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts)</li></ul>
Brake fluid level (→P. 564)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid</li><li>• Rag or paper towel</li><li>• Funnel (used only for adding brake fluid)</li></ul>
Engine coolant level (→P. 562)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology. For the U.S.A.: “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is pre-mixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. For Canada: “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is pre-mixed with 55% coolant and 45% deionized water.</li><li>• Funnel (used only for adding engine coolant)</li></ul>

Items	Parts and tools
Engine oil level (→P. 558)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” or equivalent</li> <li>• Rag or paper towel, funnel (used only for adding engine oil)</li> </ul>
Fuses (→P. 589)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fuse with same amperage rating as original</li> </ul>
Tire inflation pressure (→P. 578)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tire pressure gauge</li> <li>• Compressed air source</li> </ul>
Headlight aim (→P. 606)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Phillips-head screwdriver</li> </ul>
Radiator and condenser (→P. 564)	—
Washer fluid (→P. 569)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Water washer fluid containing anti-freeze (for winter use)</li> <li>• Funnel</li> </ul>

### CAUTION

The engine compartment contains many mechanisms and fluids that may move suddenly, become hot, or become electrically energized. To avoid death or serious injury, observe the following precaution:

#### ■ When working on the engine compartment

- Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from the moving fans and engine drive belt.
- Be careful not to touch the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc. right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
- Do not leave anything that may burn easily, such as paper or rags, in the engine compartment.
- Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose an open flame to fuel or the battery. Fuel and battery fumes are flammable.
- Be extremely cautious when working on the battery. It contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid.

 **CAUTION**

■ **When working near the electric cooling fan or radiator grille**

Be sure the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is OFF.

With the “ENGINE START STOP” switch in IGNITION ON mode, the electric cooling fan may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high.

(→P. 564)

■ **Safety glasses**

Wear safety glasses to prevent flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc. from getting in the eyes.

 **NOTICE**

■ **If you remove the air cleaner**

Driving with the air cleaners removed may cause excessive engine wear due to dirt in the air. Also a backfire could cause a fire in the engine compartment.

## 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

# Hood

Release the lock from the inside of the vehicle to open the hood.

STEP 1



Pull the hood release lever.

The hood will pop up slightly.

STEP 2



Lift the hood catch and lift the hood.

### CAUTION

#### ■ Pre-driving check

Check that the hood is fully closed and locked.

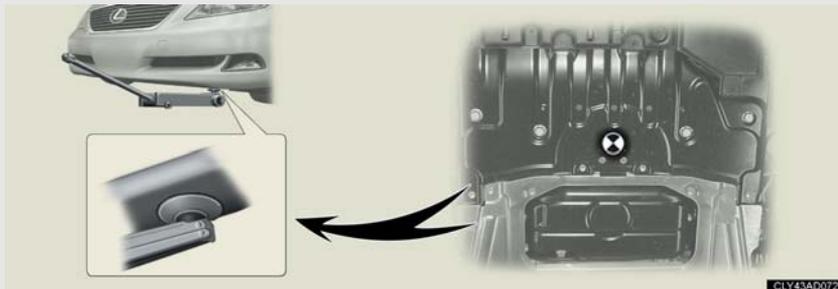
If the hood is not locked properly, it may open while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

## 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

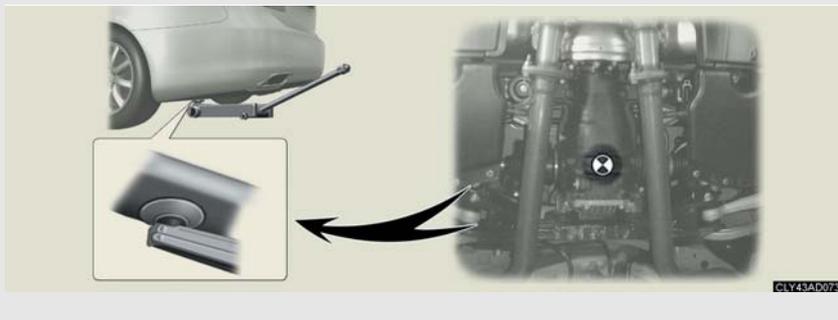
### Positioning a floor jack

When raising your vehicle with a floor jack, position the jack correctly. Improper placement may damage your vehicle or cause injury.

#### ■ Front



#### ■ Rear



## ⚠ CAUTION

### ■ When raising your vehicle

Make sure to observe the following to reduce the possibility of death or serious injury:

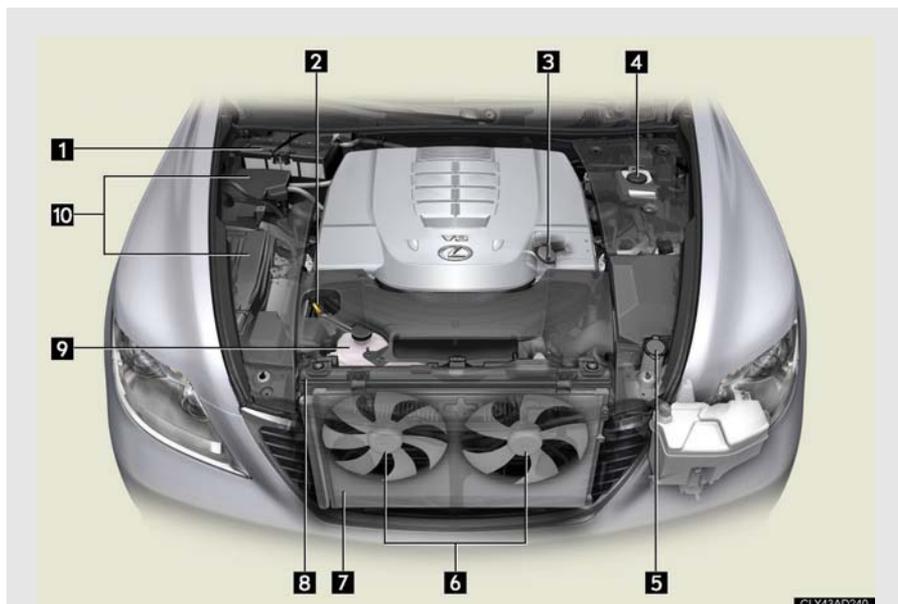


- Lift up the vehicle using a floor jack such as the one shown in the illustration.

- Do not use the jack that was supplied with your vehicle.
- Do not put any part of your body or get underneath the vehicle supported only by the floor jack.  
Always use automotive jack stands on a solid, level surface.
- Do not start the engine while the vehicle is supported by the floor jack.
- Stop the vehicle on level firm ground, set the parking brake and put the shift lever in "P".
- Make sure to set the floor jack properly at the jack point.  
Raising the vehicle with an improperly positioned floor jack will damage the vehicle and may cause the vehicle to fall off the floor jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is in the vehicle.
- When raising the vehicle, do not place any objects on top of or underneath the floor jack.
- Vehicles with electronically modulated air suspension:  
Be sure to turn off the height control and stop the engine. Otherwise, the vehicle height may change in the automatic leveling function. (→P. 204)

## 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

### Engine compartment

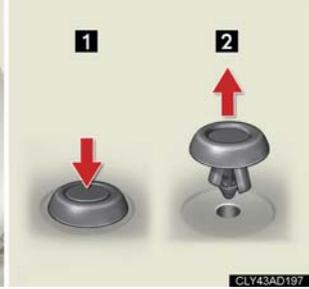


- |                                    |           |                                   |           |
|------------------------------------|-----------|-----------------------------------|-----------|
| <b>1</b> Battery                   | (→P. 566) | <b>6</b> Electric cooling fans    |           |
| <b>2</b> Engine oil level dipstick | (→P. 558) | <b>7</b> Condenser                | (→P. 564) |
| <b>3</b> Engine oil filler cap     | (→P. 558) | <b>8</b> Radiator                 | (→P. 564) |
| <b>4</b> Brake fluid reservoir     | (→P. 564) | <b>9</b> Engine coolant reservoir | (→P. 562) |
| <b>5</b> Washer fluid tank         | (→P. 569) | <b>10</b> Fuse boxes              | (→P. 589) |

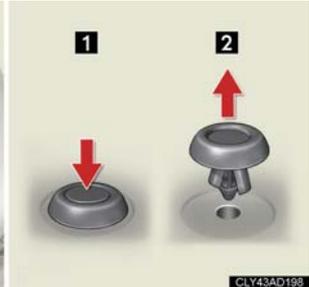
## Engine compartment cover

### ■ Removing the engine compartment covers

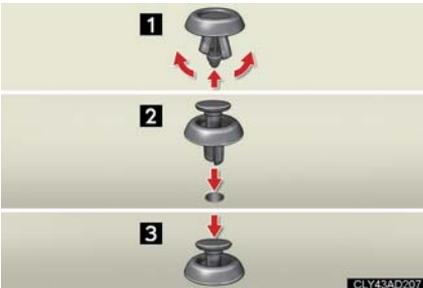
#### ▶ Outside



#### ▶ Front

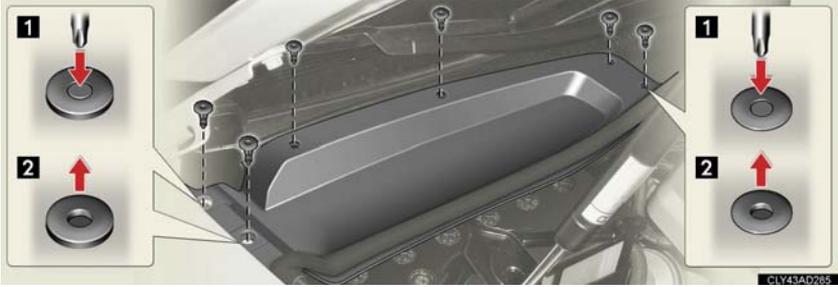


### ■ Installing the clips



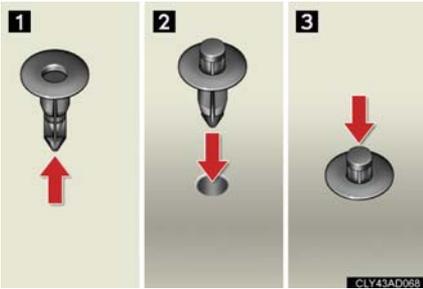
## Battery cover

### ■ Removing the battery cover

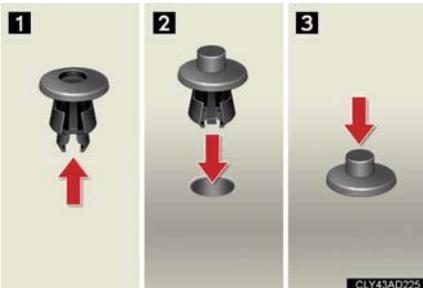


### ■ Installing the clips

#### ► Type A



#### ► Type B



 NOTICE**■ When installing the battery cover**

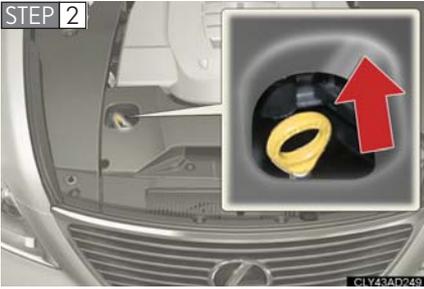
Securely install the cover over the battery. Failure to do so may cause water to enter the engine compartment when it rains or the vehicle is washed, resulting in a malfunction.

## Engine oil

With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.

### ■ Checking the engine oil

**STEP 1** Park the vehicle on level ground. After turning off the engine, wait a few minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.



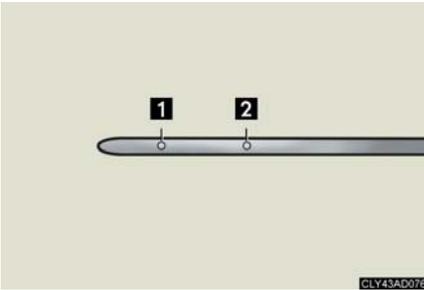
Hold a rag under the end and pull the dipstick out.

**STEP 3** Wipe the dipstick clean.

**STEP 4** Reinsert the dipstick fully.

**STEP 5** Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out and check the oil level.

**STEP 6** Wipe the dipstick and reinsert it fully.



**1** Low

**2** Full

## ■ Adding engine oil



If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as already in the engine.

Make sure to check the oil type and prepare the items needed before adding oil.

Oil grade	ILSAC multi-grade engine oil
Items	Clean funnel

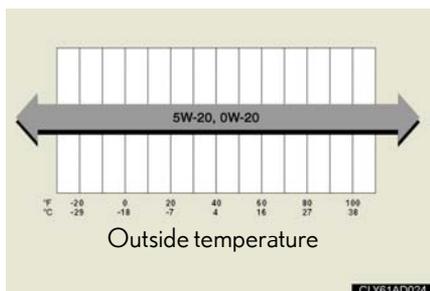
**STEP 1** Remove the oil filler cap.

**STEP 2** Add engine oil slowly, checking the dipstick.

**STEP 3** Install the filler cap, turning it clockwise.

About 1.6 qt. (1.5 L, 1.3 Imp. qt.) is required to raise the oil level from low to full on the dipstick.

### ■ Recommended viscosity



SAE 5W-20 or 0W-20

SAE 5W-20 or 0W-20 motor oil may be used. However, SAE 0W-20 is the best choice for fuel economy, and good starting in cold weather.

### ■ How to read oil container labels

Some oil containers are labeled with ILSAC certification marks that help you to select the proper oil.



### ■ Engine oil consumption

- The amount of engine oil consumed depends on the oil viscosity, the quality of the oil and the way the vehicle is driven.
- More oil is consumed under driving conditions such as high speeds, frequent acceleration and deceleration.
- A new engine consumes more oil.
- When judging the amount of oil consumption, keep in mind that the oil may have become diluted, making it difficult to judge the true level accurately.
- Oil consumption: Max. 1.1 qt./600 miles, 0.9 Imp.qt./600 miles (1.0 L per 1000 km)
- If your vehicle consumes more than 1.1 qt. (1.0 L, 0.9 Imp.qt.) every 600 miles (1000 km), contact your Lexus dealer.

### ■ After changing the engine oil (if equipped)

The oil change system should be reset. Perform the following procedures:

**STEP 1** Switch the display to the trip meter “A” when the engine is running.  
(→P. 161)

**STEP 2** Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF.

**STEP 3** While pressing the trip meter reset button, set the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to the IGNITION ON mode (but do not start the engine because otherwise the reset mode will be cancelled). Press and hold the button until the multi-information display indicates that the reset is complete.

### CAUTION

#### ■ Used engine oil

- Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation or skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.
- Dispose of used oil and filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground. Call your Lexus dealer, service station or auto parts store for information concerning recycling or disposal.
- Do not leave used engine oil within the reach of children.

### NOTICE

#### ■ To prevent serious engine damage

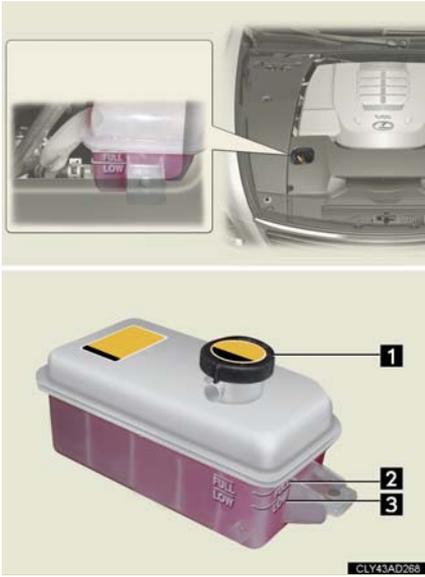
Check the oil level on regular basis.

#### ■ When replacing the engine oil

- Be careful not to spill engine oil on the vehicle components.
- Avoid overfilling, or the engine could be damaged.
- Check the oil level on the dipstick every time you refill the vehicle.
- Be sure the engine oil filler cap is properly tightened.

## Engine coolant

The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the “FULL” and “LOW” lines on the reservoir when the engine is cold.



1 Reservoir cap

2 “FULL”

3 “LOW”

If the level is on or below the “LOW” line, add coolant up to the “FULL” line. (→P. 663)

### ■ If the coolant level drops within a short time after replenishing

Visually check the radiator, hoses, coolant reservoir cap, drain cock and water pump.

If you cannot find a leak, have your Lexus dealer test the cap and check for leaks in the cooling systems.

### ■ Coolant selection

Only use “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.

U.S.A.: “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. (Minimum temperature: -31°F [-35°C])

Canada: “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is a mixture of 55% coolant and 45% deionized water. (Minimum temperature: -44°F [-42°C])

For more details about engine coolant, contact your Lexus dealer.

### CAUTION

#### ■ When the engine is hot

Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap.

The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing burns or other injuries.

### NOTICE

#### ■ When adding engine coolant

Coolant is neither plain water nor straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and antifreeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

#### ■ If you spill coolant

Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent it damaging parts or paint.

## Radiator and condenser

Check the radiator and condenser, and clear any foreign objects. If either of the above parts are extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

### ⚠ CAUTION

#### ■ The radiator and condenser may be hot after driving

Do not touch the radiator or condenser, as they may be hot and you may be burned.

## Brake fluid

### ■ Checking fluid level



The brake fluid level should be between the "MAX" and "MIN" lines on the tank.

Make sure to check the fluid type and prepare the necessary items.

### ■ Adding fluid

Fluid type	FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid
Items	Clean funnel

**■ Brake fluid can absorb moisture from the air**

Excess moisture in the fluid can cause a dangerous loss of braking efficiency. Use only newly opened brake fluid.

** CAUTION****■ When filling the reservoir**

Take care because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes and damage painted surfaces.

If fluid gets in your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water immediately.

If you still experience discomfort, see a doctor.

** NOTICE****■ If the fluid level is low or high**

It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high.

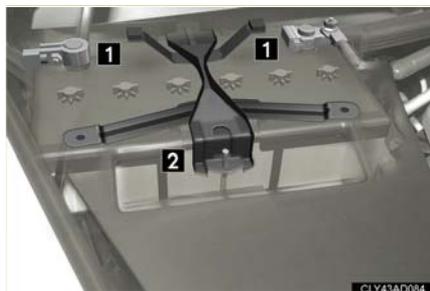
If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious problem.

## Battery

Check the battery as follows.

### Battery exterior

Make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, cracks, or loose clamps.

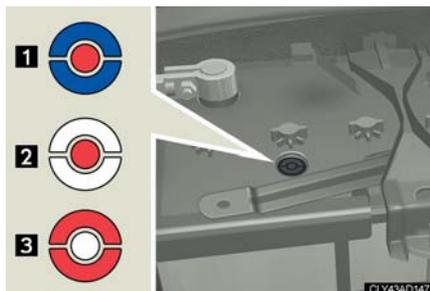


- 1 Terminals
- 2 Hold-down clamp

### Checking battery condition

**STEP 1** Remove the cover located over the battery. (→P. 556)

**STEP 2** Check the battery condition using the indicator color.



- 1 Blue: Good condition
- 2 White: Charging is necessary. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- 3 Red: Not working properly have the battery checked by your Lexus dealer.

**STEP 3** Install the cover over the battery. (→P. 556)

### ■ Before recharging

When recharging, the battery produces hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Therefore, observe the following before recharging:

- If recharging with the battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is off when connecting and disconnecting the charger cables to the battery.

### CAUTION

#### ■ Chemicals in the battery

A battery contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid and may produce hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. To reduce the risk of death or serious injury, take the following precautions while working on or near battery:

- Do not cause sparks by touching the battery terminals with tools.
- Do not smoke or light a match near the battery.
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the battery.
- Keep children away from the battery.

#### ■ Where to safely charge the battery

Always charge the battery in an open area. Do not charge the battery in a garage or closed room where there is not sufficient ventilation.

#### ■ How to recharge the battery

Only perform a slow charge (5 A or less). The battery may explode if charged at a quicker rate.

 CAUTION

■ **Emergency measures regarding electrolyte**

- If electrolyte gets in your eyes  
Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the nearest medical facility.
- If electrolyte gets on your skin  
Wash the affected area thoroughly. If you feel pain or burning, get medical attention immediately.
- If electrolyte gets on your clothes  
It can soak through clothing on to your skin. Immediately take off the clothing and follow the procedure above if necessary.
- If you accidentally swallow electrolyte  
Drink a large quantity of water or milk. Follow with milk of magnesia, beaten raw egg or vegetable oil. Get emergency medical attention immediately.

 NOTICE

■ **When recharging the battery**

Never recharge the battery while the engine is running. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.

■ **When replacing the battery**

Replace the battery with a battery of the same size.

Installing a battery of a different size will prevent the cover from being properly installed over the battery. This may cause water to enter the engine compartment when it rains or the vehicle is washed, resulting in a malfunction.

For more information about replacing the battery, contact your Lexus dealer.

## Washer fluid



If any washer does not work or the warning message appears on the multi-information display, the washer tank may be empty. Add washer fluid.

### ⚠ CAUTION

#### ■ When refilling the washer fluid

Do not refill the washer fluid when the engine is hot or running, as the washer fluid contains alcohol and may catch fire if spilled on the engine etc.

### ⚠ NOTICE

#### ■ Do not use any fluid other than washer fluid

Do not use soapy water or engine antifreeze instead of washer fluid. Doing so may cause streaking on the vehicle's painted surfaces.

#### ■ Diluting washer fluid

Dilute washer fluid with water as necessary. Refer to the freezing temperatures listed on the washer fluid tank.

## 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

### Tires

Replace or rotate tires in accordance with maintenance schedules and treadwear.

#### ■ Checking tires

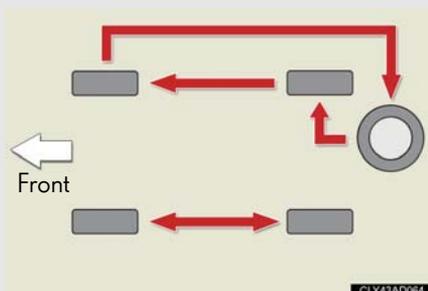


- 1 New tread
- 2 Treadwear indicator
- 3 Worn tread

The location of treadwear indicators is shown by the “TWI” or “Δ” marks, etc., molded on the sidewall of each tire.

Check spare tire condition and pressure if not rotated.

#### ■ Tire rotation



Rotate the tires in the order shown.

To equalize tire wear and extend tire life, Lexus recommends that tire rotation is carried out at the same interval as tire inspection.

#### ■ The tire pressure warning system

Your Lexus is equipped with a tire pressure warning system that uses tire pressure warning valves and transmitters to detect low tire inflation pressure before serious problems arise. (→P. 632, 639)

### Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When replacing tires or wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must also be installed.

When new tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are installed, new tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes must be registered in the tire pressure warning computer and tire pressure warning system must be initialized. Have tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes registered by your Lexus dealer. (→P. 573)

### Initializing the tire pressure warning system

■ **The tire pressure warning system must be initialized in the following circumstances:**

- When changing the tire inflation pressure by changing traveling speed.

When the tire pressure warning system is initialized, the current tire inflation pressure is set as the pressure benchmark.

### ■ How to initialize the tire pressure warning system

**STEP 1** Park the vehicle in safe place and turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF.

While the vehicle is moving, initialization is not performed.

**STEP 2** Adjust the tire pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. (→P. 675)

Make sure to adjust the tire pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. The tire pressure warning system will operate based on this pressure level.

**STEP 3** Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to IGNITION ON mode.



Push and hold the tire pressure warning reset switch until the tire pressure warning light blinks slowly 3 times and a message appears on the multi-information display.

**STEP 5** Wait for a few minutes for the multi-information display to show the tire inflation pressures (5 tires), and then turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to OFF.

## Registering ID codes

The tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is equipped with a unique ID code. When replacing a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, it is necessary to register the ID code of tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. Have the ID code registered by your Lexus dealer.

### ■ When to replace your vehicle's tires

Tires should be replaced if:

- You have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric or bulges indicating internal damage.
- A tire goes flat repeatedly or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage.

If you are not sure, consult with your Lexus dealer.

### ■ Replacing tires and wheels

If the ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is not registered, the tire pressure warning system will not work properly. After driving for about 20 minutes, the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute to indicate a system malfunction.

### ■ Tire life

Any tire over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if they have seldom or never been used or damage is not obvious.

### ■ If the tread wears down below 0.16 in. (4 mm) on snow tires

The effectiveness of the tires as snow tires is lost.

### ■ Maximum load of tire

Check that the maximum load of the replaced tire is greater than 1/2 of the Gross Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR) of either the front axle or the rear axle, whichever is greater.

As for the maximum load of the tire, see the load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure mentioned on the sidewall of the tire, and as for the Gross Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR), see the Certification Label. (→P. 578, 681).

### ■ Tire types

#### 1 Summer tires

Summer tires are high-speed performance tires best suited to highway driving under dry conditions. Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as snow tires, summer tires are inadequate for driving on snow-covered or icy roads. For driving on snow-covered roads or icy roads, the use of snow tires is recommended. When installing snow tires, be sure to replace all four tires.

#### 2 All season tires

All season tires are designed to provide better traction in snow and to be adequate for driving in most winter conditions, as well as for use year round. All season tires, however, do not have adequate traction performance compared with snow tires in heavy or loose snow. Also, all season tires fall short in acceleration and handling performance compared with summer tires in highway driving.

#### 3 Snow tires

For driving on snow-covered roads or icy roads, we recommend using snow tires. If you need snow tires, select tires of the same size, construction and load capacity as the originally installed tires. Since your vehicle has radial tires as original equipment, make sure your snow tires also have radial construction. Do not install studded tires without first checking local regulations for possible restriction. Snow tires should be installed on all wheels. (→P. 232)

### ■ Initializing the tire pressure warning system

Initialize the tires with the tire inflation pressure adjusted to the specified level.

### ■ If you push the tire pressure warning reset switch accidentally

If initialization is performed, adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level and initialize the tire pressure warning system again.

### ■ When the initialization of the tire pressure warning system has failed

Initialization can be completed in a few minutes. However, in the following cases, the settings have not been recorded and the system will not operate properly. If repeated attempts to record tire inflation pressure settings are unsuccessful, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- When operating the tire pressure warning reset switch, the tire pressure warning light does not flash 3 times and the setting message does not appear on the multi-information display.
- After carrying out the initialization procedure, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute then stays on after driving for about 20 minutes.

### ■ Routine tire inflation pressure checks

The tire pressure warning system does not replace routine tire inflation pressure checks. Make sure to check tire inflation pressure as part of your routine of daily vehicle checks.

### ■ Tire pressure warning system certification

► For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

#### NOTICE:

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

### FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

► For vehicles sold in Canada

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

### CAUTION

#### ■ When inspecting or replacing tires

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents. Failure to do so may cause damage to parts of the drive train, as well as dangerous handling characteristics, which may lead to fatal or injury accidents.

- Do not mix tires of different makes, models, tread patterns or treadwear.
- Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended by Lexus.
- Do not mix radial, bias-belted, or bias-ply tires.
- Do not mix summer, all season and winter tires.

#### ■ Using tires of a different size

Do not use tires of a different size from those equipped when the vehicle was new, as the front tire steering angle setting is designed for the original tire size. It is dangerous to use an incorrect wheel and tire combination as this may result in reduced vehicle stability.

For example, 245/45R19 tires cannot be used for vehicles originally equipped with 235/50R18 tires.

#### ■ When initializing the tire pressure warning system

Do not push the tire pressure warning reset switch without first adjusting the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. Otherwise, the tire pressure warning light may not come on even if the tire inflation pressure is low, or it may come on when the tire inflation pressure is actually normal.

 NOTICE**■ Repairing or replacing tires, wheels and tire pressure warning valves and transmitters**

When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.

**■ To avoid damaging the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters**

Do not use liquid sealants on flat tires.

**■ Driving on rough roads**

Take particular care when driving on roads with loose surfaces or potholes. These conditions may cause losses in tire inflation pressure, reducing the cushioning ability of the tires. In addition, driving on rough roads may cause damage to the tires themselves, as well as the vehicle's wheels and body.

**■ If tire inflation pressures become low while driving**

Do not continue driving, or your tires and/or wheels may be ruined.

## 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

### Tire inflation pressure

#### ■ Tire inflation pressure

The recommended cold tire inflation pressure and tire size is displayed on the tire and loading information label. (→P. 681)



TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION			INFORMATION SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT		
SEATING CAPACITY: TOTAL X FRONT X-REAR X The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs.			NOMBRE DE PLACES ASSISES: TOTAL X AVANT X-ARRIÈRE X Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais être supérieur à XXX kg ou XXX lb.		
TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE	PNEUS	DIMENSION	PRESSION DE GONFLAGE À FROID
FRONT	XXXXXXRXX	XXXXPa,XXKPSI	AVANT	XXXXXXRXX	XXXXPa,XXKPSI
REAR	XXXXXXRXX	XXXXPa,XXKPSI	ARRIÈRE	XXXXXXRXX	XXXXPa,XXKPSI
SPARE	TXXXXXXDX	XXXXPa,XXKPSI	SECOURS	TXXXXXXDX	XXXXPa,XXKPSI
SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION			POUR DE PLUS AMPLES INFORMATIONS, VOIR LE MANUEL DU PROPRIÉTAIRE		

CLY43AD273

### ■ Inspection and adjustment procedure



1 Tire valve

2 Tire pressure gauge

**STEP 1** Remove the tire valve cap.

**STEP 2** Press the tip of the tire pressure gauge onto the tire valve.

**STEP 3** Read the pressure using the graduations of the gauge.

**STEP 4** If the tire inflation pressure is not within the recommended levels, adjust inflate the tire.

If you add too much air, press the center of the valve to lower.

**STEP 5** After completing the tire inflation pressure measurement and adjustment, apply soapy water to the valve and check for leakage.

**STEP 6** Reinstall the tire valve cap.

### ■ Tire inflation pressure check interval

You should check tire inflation pressure every two weeks, or at least once a month. Do not forget to check the spare.

### ■ Effects of incorrect tire inflation pressure

Driving with incorrect tire inflation pressure may result in the following:

- Reduced fuel efficiency
- Reduced driving comfort and tire life
- Reduced safety
- Damage to the drive train

If a tire needs frequent refilling, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

### ■ Instructions for checking tire pressure

When checking tire inflation pressure, observe the following:

- Check only when the tires are cold.

If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours and has not been driven for more than 1 mile or 1.5 km, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.

- Always use a tire pressure gauge.

The appearance of the tire can be misleading. In addition, tire inflation pressures that are even just a few pounds off can degrade ride and handling.

- Do not bleed or reduce tire inflation pressure after driving. It is normal for the tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving.

- Never exceed the vehicle capacity weight.

Passengers and luggage weight should be placed so that the vehicle is balanced.

 **CAUTION****■ Proper inflation is critical to save tire performance**

Keep your tires properly inflated. Otherwise, the following conditions may occur and result in an accident causing death or serious injury:

- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor handling
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires
- Poor sealing of the tire bead
- Wheel deformation and/or tire separation
- A greater possibility of tire damage from road hazards

 **NOTICE****■ When inspecting and adjusting tire pressure**

Be sure to reinstall the tire valve caps.

Without the valve caps, dirt or moisture could get into the valve and cause air leakage, which could result in an accident. If the caps have been lost, replace them as soon as possible.

# Wheels

If a wheel is bent, cracked or heavily corroded, it should be replaced. Otherwise, the tire may separate from the wheel or cause loss of handling control.

### ■ Wheel selection

When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width, and offset.

Replacement wheels are available at your Lexus dealer.

Lexus does not recommend using:

- Wheels of different sizes or types
- Used wheels
- Bent wheels that have been straightened

### ■ Aluminum wheel precautions

- Use only Lexus wheel nuts and wrenches designed for use with your aluminum wheels.
- When rotating, repairing or changing your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1000 miles (1600 km).
- Be careful not to damage the aluminum wheels when using tire chains.
- Use only Lexus genuine balance weights or equivalent and a plastic or rubber hammer when balancing your wheels.

---

### ■ When replacing wheels

The wheels of your Lexus are equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters that allow the tire pressure warning system to provide advanced warning in the event of a loss in tire inflation pressure. Whenever wheels are replaced, the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must be installed. (→P. 571)

 **CAUTION****■ When replacing wheels**

- Do not use wheels that are a different size from those recommended in the Owner's Manual, as this may result in loss of handling control.
- Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire. Doing so may result in an accident, causing death or serious injury.

 **NOTICE****■ Replacing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters**

- Because tire repair or replacement may affect the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, make sure to have tires serviced by your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop. In addition, make sure to purchase your tire pressure warning valves and transmitters at your Lexus dealer.
- Ensure that only genuine Lexus wheels are used on your vehicle. Tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not work properly with non-genuine wheels.

## 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

### Air conditioning filter

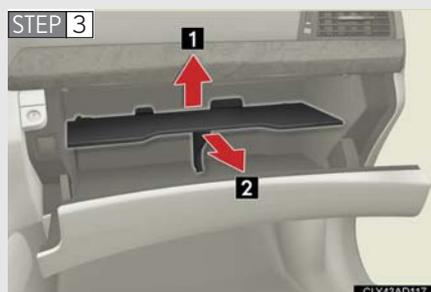
The air conditioning filter must be changed regularly to maintain air conditioning efficiency.

#### ■ Front air conditioning filter

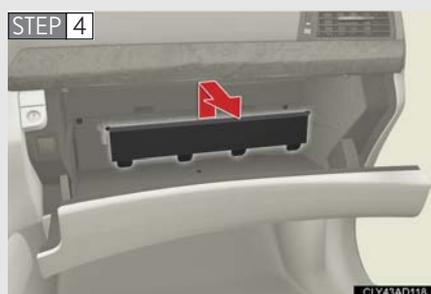
**STEP 1** Set the air conditioning system to recirculated mode.  
(→P. 251, 261, 270)

The air conditioning filter case cannot be removed with the system in the outside air mode.

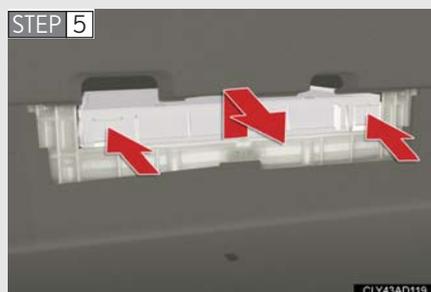
**STEP 2** Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF.



Open the glove box. Lift and remove the partition.

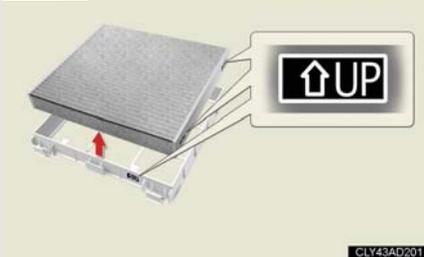


Remove the filter cover.



Remove the filter case.

## STEP 6



Remove the air conditioning filter from the filter case and replace it with a new one.

The ↑UP marks shown on the filter and the filter case should be pointing up.

STEP 7 Reset the air conditioning filter maintenance data. (→P. 586)

### ■ Rear air conditioning filter (if equipped)

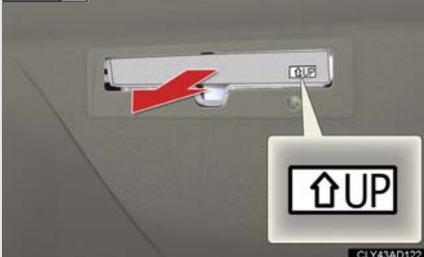
STEP 1 Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF.

## STEP 2



Open the trunk lid. Remove the filter cover.

## STEP 3



Remove the air conditioning filter and replace it with a new one.

The ↑UP marks shown on the filter should be pointing up.

### ■ Changing interval for the front air conditioning filter

Inspect and replace the air conditioning filter when a message is appeared on the multi-information display. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, early replacement may be required.

### ■ If air flow from the vents decreases dramatically

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter and replace if necessary.

### ■ After changing the air conditioning filter

The air conditioning filter maintenance data should be reset. Perform the following procedures:

**STEP 1** Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to IGNITION ON mode.

**STEP 2** Press and hold  (on the air conditioning panel) for 4 seconds or more.

A buzzer will sound to indicate that the maintenance data has been successfully reset.

### ■ Rear air conditioning filter (if equipped)

If it is necessary to clean or replace the filter, contact your Lexus dealer.

### ■ Climate control seat filter

On vehicles with climate control seats, filters are installed in the seats. When it is necessary to clean or replace the filters, contact your Lexus dealer.

#### NOTICE

### ■ When using the air conditioning system

Make sure that a filter is always installed.

Using the air conditioning system without a filter may cause damage to the system.

## 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

### Electronic key battery

Replace the battery with a new one if it is discharged.

■ You will need the following items:

- Flathead screwdriver
- Small Phillips-head screwdriver
- Lithium battery (CR1632)

■ Replacing the battery

STEP 1



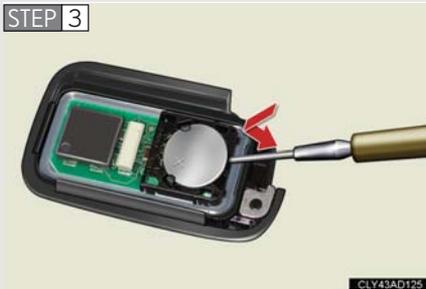
Take out the mechanical key.

STEP 2



Remove the cover.

STEP 3



Remove the depleted battery.

Insert a new battery with the “+” terminal facing up.

### ■ If the electronic key battery is discharged

The following symptoms may occur:

- The smart access system with push-button start and wireless remote control will not function properly.
- The operational range is reduced.

### ■ Use a CR1632 lithium battery

- Batteries can be purchased at your Lexus dealer, jewelers, or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.

### ■ When the card key battery needs to be replaced

The battery for the card key is available only at Lexus dealers. Your Lexus dealer can replace the battery for you.

### CAUTION

#### ■ Removed battery and other parts

Keep away from children.

These parts are small and if swallowed by a child, they can cause choking.

### NOTICE

#### ■ For normal operation after replacing the battery

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents:

- Always work with dry hands.  
Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- Do not touch or move any other components inside the remote control.
- Do not bend either of the battery terminals.

## 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

### Checking and replacing fuses

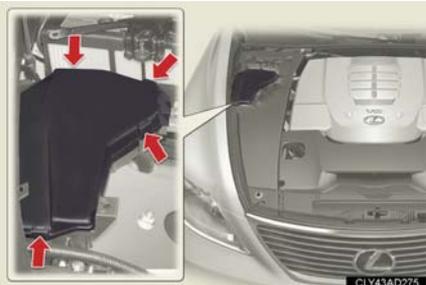
If any of the electrical components do not operate, a fuse may have blown. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

**STEP 1** Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF.

**STEP 2** Remove the engine compartment cover. (→P. 555)

**STEP 3** Open the fuse box cover.

▶ Engine compartment (type A fuse box)



Push the tabs in and lift the lid off.

▶ Engine compartment (type B fuse box)



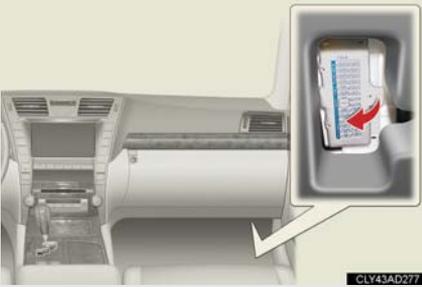
Push the tabs in and lift the lid off.

▶ Driver's side instrument panel



Remove the lid.

▶ Passenger's side instrument panel



Remove the lid.

▶ Trunk



Remove the lid.

**STEP 4** After a system failure, see "Fuse layout and amperage ratings" for details about which fuse to check. (→P. 593)

**STEP 5**

Remove the fuse with the pull-out tool.

**STEP 6** Check if the fuse has blown.

## ► Type A and B

## Type A

**1****2****1** Normal fuse**2** Blown fuse

Replace it with one of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

## Type B

**1****2**

► Type C and D

Type C

**1**



**2**



CLY43AD169

Type D

**1**



**2**



CLY43AD167

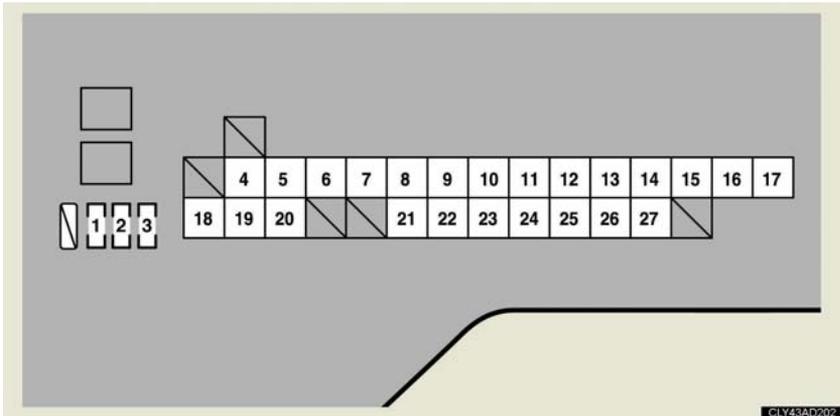
**1** Normal fuse

**2** Blown fuse

Contact your Lexus dealer.

## Fuse layout and amperage ratings

### ■ Engine compartment (type A fuse box)



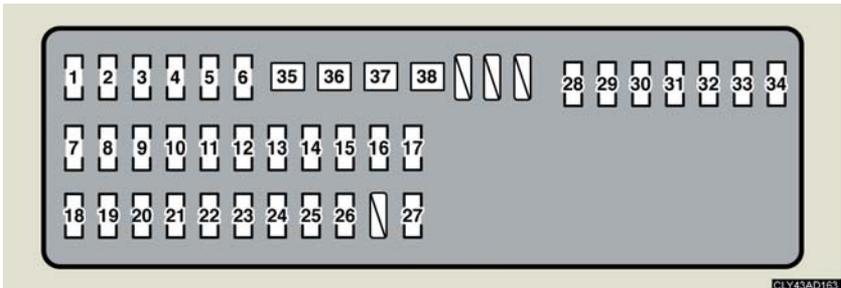
Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
1	PTC HTR 3	25 A	PTC heater
2	PTC HTR 1	25 A	PTC heater
3	VSSR	5 A	Electric power control system
4	ALT	180 A	AIR SUS, HTR, DEFOG, FAN NO.1, H-LP CLN, PTC HTR 2, PTC HTR, RR A/C, E/G RM1, D-J/B ALT, P-J/B ALT, LUG-J/B ALT
5	P-J/B ALT	60 A	P P/SEAT 1, P P/SEAT 2, A/C, RR SEAT, P-IG1-1, P-IG1-2, P-IG1-3, P-IG1-4, P-ACC, P-CIG, AIR SUS, climate control seat system
6	FAN NO.1	80 A	Electric cooling fans
7	E/G RM1	80 A	DEICER, WIP, E/G RM-IG1-1, E/G RM-IG1-2, NV-IR, FR FOG, FR CTRL ALT, ABS MTR1

### 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
8	D-J/B ALT	80 A	OBD, D P/SEAT, TI&TE, AM1, S/ROOF, D-IG1-1, D-IG1-2, D-IG1-3, D-IG1-4, D-ACC, PWR OUTLET, PANEL, climate control seat system
9	PTC HTR	60 A	PTC HTR 1, PTC HTR 3
10	LUG-J/B ALT	50 A	PTL, RL SEAT, B/ANC, FUEL OPN, RR S/SHADE, PSB, RR-IG1-1, RR-IG1-2, RR-IG1-3, RR-ACC, RR-CIG
11	RR A/C	30 A	Air conditioning system
12	AIR SUS	40 A	Electronically modulated air suspension system
13	HTR	50 A	Air conditioning system
14	NOISE FILTER	40 A	Condenser
15	DEFOG	40 A	Rear window defogger
16	PTC HTR 2	50 A	PTC heater
17	H-LP CLN	30 A	Headlight cleaner
18	EPS	80 A	EPS
19	EFI	80 A	VVT, ETCS, ABS MAIN 1, EDU1, EDU2, A/F, ECU-IG, IGN, INJ, P-J/B
20	E/G RMB	80 A	D/C CUT 1, FR CTRL BAT, EPS ECU, ABS MAIN 2, ABS MTR2, ST, H-LP RL, H-LP LL
21	EFI NO.1	40 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system
22	E/G RMB2	30 A	ABS MAIN 3, EPS ECU, D/C CUT 2

	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
23	D-J/B B	40 A	D-DOOR 1, HAZ, D-DOOR 2, STR LOCK, STOP, SECURITY
24	LUG J/B B	40 A	STOP LP 1, STOP LP 2, TAIL, E-PKB, capacitor
25	P-J/B B	40 A	P DOOR 1, P RR DOOR, AM2, RADIO NO.1, P-D/C CUT, P DOOR 2, PMG, AMP
26	VGRS	40 A	VGRS
27	BAT VB	30 A	VSSR

### ■ Engine compartment (type B fuse box)



	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
1	DEICER	25 A	Windshield wiper de-icer
2	WIP	30 A	Windshield wiper
3	ABS MAIN 2	10 A	ABS, VSC, VDIM
4	IGCT 1	25 A	Smart access system with push-button start
5	EPSECU	10 A	EPS
6	FR CTRL BAT	30 A	Headlight high beams, horns

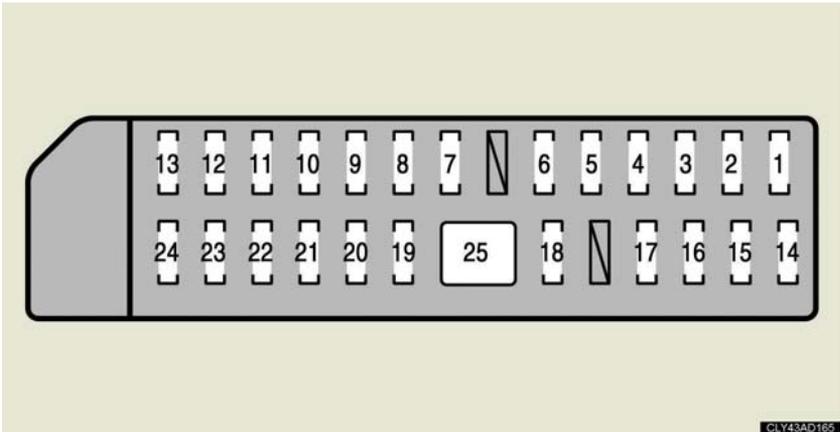
### 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
7	E/G RM-IG1-2	10 A	AFS, headlight high beams, parking lights, side marker lights, horns, alarm, windshield washer, exhaust system, headlight cleaner
8	E/G RM-IG1-1	10 A	Charging system, EPS, electric cooling fans, AFS
9	H-LP LL	15 A	Headlight low beams
10	ABS MAIN 1	10 A	Brake system, pre-collision seat belt
11	H-LP RL	15 A	Headlight low beams
12	ETCS	10 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system
13	NV IR	10 A	Cruise control system
14	IGN	10 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system, brake system, airbag system
15	ECU-IG	10 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system, stop lights, pre-collision seat belt, charging system
16	D/C CUT 1	30 A	ECU-B, D MPX-B 1, D MPX-B 2, P MPX-B, RR MPX-B 1, RR MPX-B 2, DOME
17	ECU-B	10 A	Headlight high beams, parking lights, horns, alarm, windshield washer, pre-collision seat belt, headlight cleaner
18	A/F	15 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system, exhaust system

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
19	EDU2	25 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system
20	FR CTRL ALT	20 A	Windshield washer, alarm, headlight cleaner, parking lights, side marker lights
21	EDU1	25 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system
22	RELIEF VLV	10 A	Fuel system
23	FR FOG	15 A	Front fog lights
24	A/C W/P	10 A	Air conditioning system, electric cooling fans
25	H-LP LVL	10 A	Discharge headlights, headlight high beams, parking lights, side marker lights, horns, alarm, windshield washer
26	P-J/B	10 A	P IG2, P RR-IG2
27	INJ	10 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system
28	D/C CUT 2	30 A	P MPX-B, RR ECU-B
29	ECU-B 2	5 A	Brake system
30	ABS MAIN 3	10 A	Brake system, pre-collision seat belt
31	EFI MAIN 2	25 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system, exhaust system
32	EFI MAIN	25 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system, fuel system

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
33	EFI	10 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system, fuel system
34	EFI-B	10 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system
35	ST	30 A	Starter system
36	ABS MTR1	50 A	Brake system
37	ABS MTR2	50 A	Brake system
38	VVT	40 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system

## Driver's side instrument panel

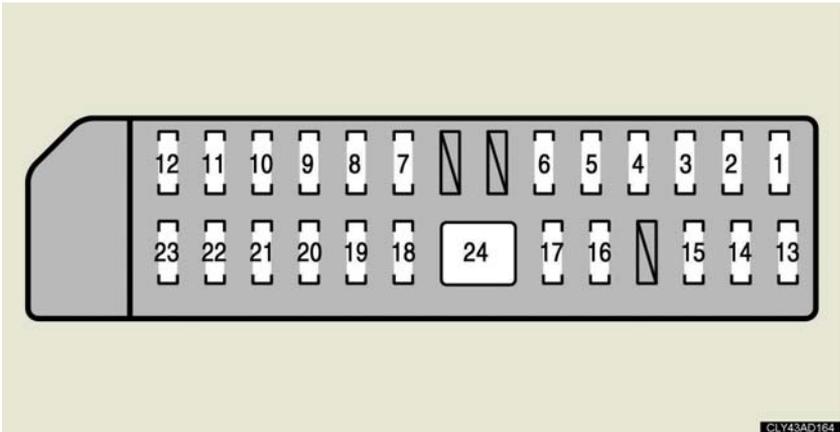


Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
1	D-IG1-3	10 A	Automatic transmission, power door lock system, cruise control system, brake system, rear window defogger, moon roof, pre-collision seat belt, head restraints, power outlet, turn signal lights, climate control seat system, audio system
2	D-IG1-2	5 A	Cruise control system
3	D-IG1-4	15 A	Starter system, climate control seat system
4	D-IG1-1	5 A	Main body ECU, pre-collision seat belt, tilt and telescopic steering, starter system
5	PWR OUTLET	15 A	Power outlet
6	D-ACC	5 A	Power door lock system
7	S/ROOF	30 A	Moon roof
8	TI&TE	30 A	Tilt and telescopic steering

### 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
9	AM1	5 A	Power door lock system
10	OBD	10 A	On-board diagnosis system
11	D P/SEAT	30 A	Front seat adjustment
12	D S/HTR	20 A	Climate control seat system
13	D RR S/HTR	30 A	Climate control seat system
14	D MPX-B 1	10 A	Meters and gauges, front seat adjustment, rear seat adjustment, tilt and telescopic steering, power door lock system, cruise control system
15	DOME	10 A	Interior lights, clock
16	D MPX-B 2	10 A	Audio system
17	PANEL	10 A	Fuel filler door opener, interior lights, audio system
18	SECURITY	5 A	Smart access system with push-button start, theft deterrent system
19	STR LOCK	20 A	Tilt and telescopic steering
20	D DOOR 2	10 A	Power door lock system
21	HAZ	10 A	Turn signal lights
22	D RR DOOR	25 A	Interior lights, power door lock system, power windows
23	D DOOR 1	25 A	Interior lights, outside rear view mirror, power door lock system, power windows, outside rear view mirror defogger
24	STOP	5 A	Stop lights
25	AMP	30 A	Audio system

## ■ Passenger's side instrument panel



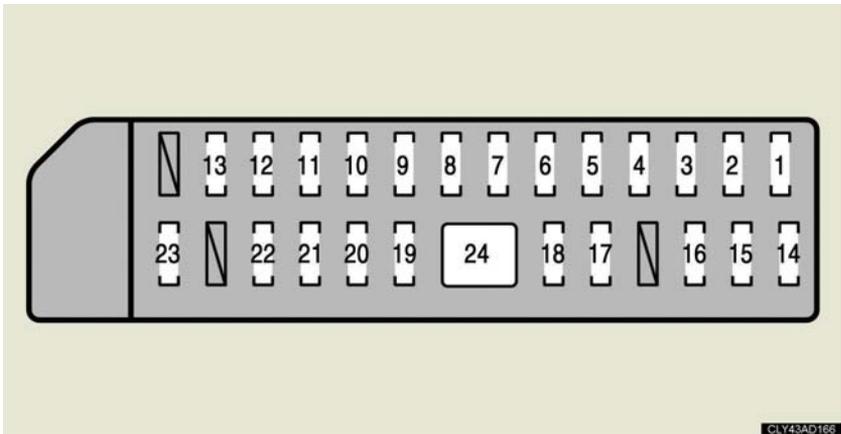
Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
1	P-IG1-2	5 A	Audio system
2	P-IG1-3	5 A	VGRS
3	P-IG1-1	10 A	Audio system, navigation system, power door lock system, VGRS, air conditioning system, head restraints, pre-collision seat belt, intuitive parking assist, tire pressure warning system
4	P-IG1-4	10 A	Climate control seat system
5	P-CIG	15 A	Cigarette lighter
6	P-ACC	5 A	Audio system, navigation system, clock, Lexus link system, cruise control system
7	A/C	10 A	Air conditioning system
8	P S/HTR	20 A	Climate control seat system
9	P P/SEAT 2	30 A	Front seat adjustment
10	RR SEAT	30 A	Rear seat adjustment

### 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
11	P P/SEAT 1	30 A	Front seat adjustment
12	P RR S/HTR	30 A	Climate control seat system
13	P IG2	5 A	Tilt and telescopic steering, smart access system with push-button start, meters and gauges, electric power control system, Lexus link system
14	P RR-IG2	5 A	On-board diagnosis system, Lexus link system
15	P MPX-B	10 A	Power door lock system, front seat adjustment, rear seat adjustment, VGRS, smart access system with push-button start, starter system, intuitive parking assist
16	AIR SUS	20 A	Electronically modulated air suspension system
17	AM2	10 A	Power door lock system
18	RADIO NO.1	20 A	Air conditioning system, navigation system, Lexus link system
19	PMG	5 A	Electric power control system
20	P-D/C CUT	5 A	Headlight switch, windshield wiper and washer, horn, tilt and telescopic steering, power windows, power door lock system, door sunshade, rear sunshade, rear seat adjustment, steering wheel switches
21	P DOOR 2	10 A	Power door lock system
22	P RR DOOR	25 A	Interior lights, power door lock system, power windows

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
23	P DOOR 1	25 A	Interior lights, outside rear view mirror, power door lock system, power windows, outside rear view mirror defogger
24	AMP	30 A	Audio system

### ■ Trunk



Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
1	RR-IG1-3	10 A	Climate control seat system
2	RR-IG1-4	10 A	Rear seat adjustment
3	RR-IG1-2	10 A	Power door lock system, cool box, air conditioning system
4	RR-IG1-1	5 A	Capacitor, brake system, rear seat adjustment
5	RR-ACC	5 A	Audio system, rear seat entertainment system
6	RR-CIG	15 A	Cigarette lighter
7	AC100/115V	15 A	Power outlet

### 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
8	RL SEAT	30 A	Rear seat adjustment
9	B/ANC	10 A	Shoulder anchor
10	RR S/SHADE	10 A	Rear sunshade
11	PSB	30 A	Pre-collision seat belt
12	PTL	30 A	Power trunk opener and closer
13	FUEL OPN	15 A	Fuel filler door opener, power trunk opener and closer
14	RR MPX-B 1	10 A	Audio system, rear seat entertainment system, power trunk opener and closer
15	RR MPX-B 2	5 A	Power door lock system, rear seat adjustment, interior lights, power trunk opener and closer, alarm
16	IGCT 3	5 A	—
17	BATT FAN	20 A	Electric cooling fan
18	B-FAN RLY	5 A	Electric cooling fan
19	RR ECU-B	5 A	Seat belt buckle lights, trunk light
20	ABS MAIN 4	10 A	Capacitor
21	STOP LP 1	10 A	Stop lights, back-up lights
22	STOP LP 2	10 A	Stop lights, high-mounted stoplights
23	TAIL	5 A	Tail lights, license plate lights
24	E-PKB	30 A	Brake system

### ■ After a fuse is replaced

- If the lights do not turn on even after the fuse has been replaced, a bulb may need replacement. (→P. 608)
- If the replaced fuse blows again, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

### ■ If there is an overload in the circuit

The fuses are designed to blow before the entire wiring harness is damaged.

## CAUTION

### ■ To prevent system breakdowns and vehicle fire

Observe the following precautions.

Failing to do so may cause damage, and possibly a fire or injury.

- Never use a fuse of a higher amperage rating than indicated, or use any other object in place of a fuse.
- Always use a genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent.  
Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary fix.  
This can cause extensive damage or even fire.
- Do not modify fuses or the fuse box.

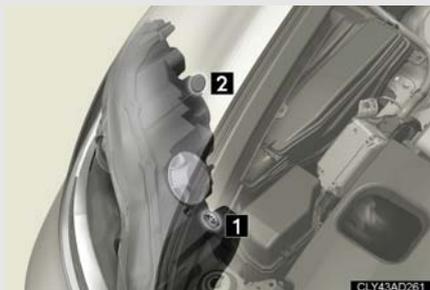
## NOTICE

### ■ Before replacing fuses

Have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by your Lexus dealer.

# Headlight aim

### ■ Vertical movement adjusting bolts



1 Adjustment bolt A

2 Adjustment bolt B

### ■ Before checking the headlight aim

**STEP 1** Make sure the vehicle has a full tank of gas and the area around the headlight is not deformed.

**STEP 2** Park the vehicle on level ground.

**STEP 3** Sit in the driver's seat.

**STEP 4** Bounce the vehicle several times.

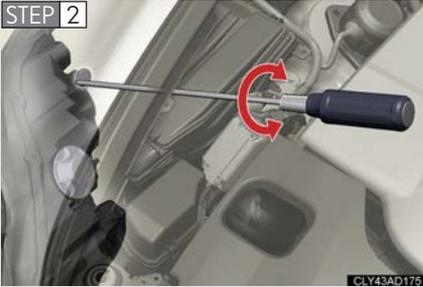
### ■ Adjusting the headlight aim



Turn bolt A in either direction using a Phillips-head screwdriver.

Remember the turning direction and the number of turns in mind.

STEP 2



Turn bolt B the same number of turns and in the same direction as step 1 using a Phillips-head screwdriver.

If the error is over the value specified above, take the vehicle to your Lexus dealer to adjust the headlight aim

## 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

### Light bulbs

You may replace the following bulbs by yourself. The difficulty level of replacement varies depending on the bulb. If necessary bulb replacement seems difficult to perform, contact your Lexus dealer.

For more information about replacing other light bulbs, contact your Lexus dealer.

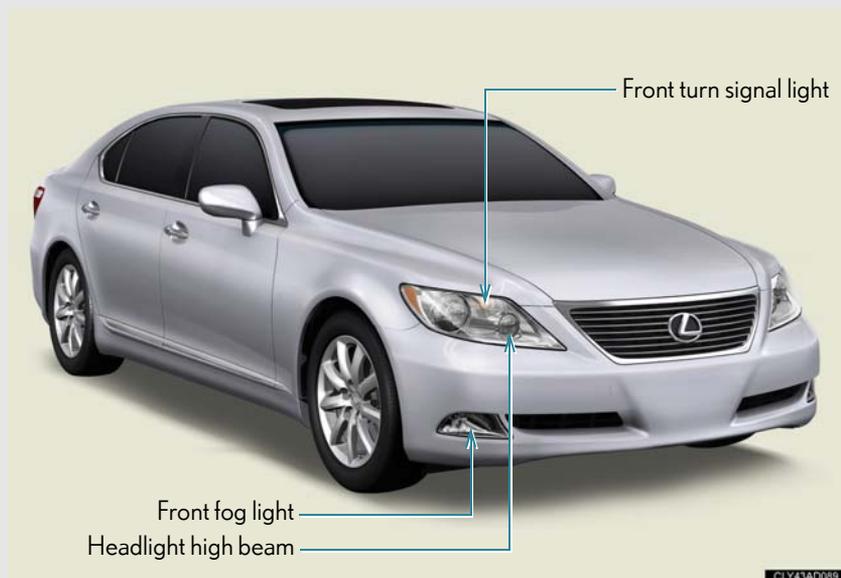
#### ■ Preparing for light bulb replacement

Check the wattage of the light bulb being replaced. (→P. 677)

#### ■ Remove the engine compartment cover

→P. 555

#### ■ Front bulb locations



## ■ Rear bulb locations



CLY43AD091

4

Maintenance and care

## Replacing light bulbs

### ■ Headlight high beams

**STEP 1** When replacing the bulbs:

▶ Left side



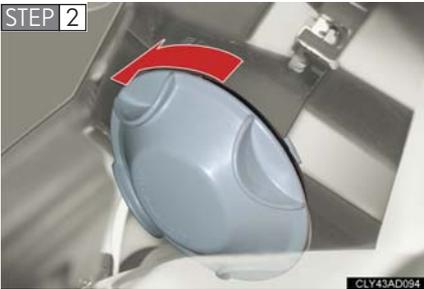
CLY43AD093

Remove the securing bolt and move the washer fluid filler opening.

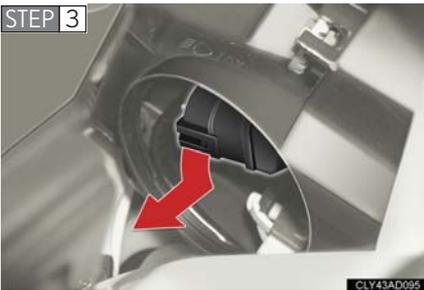
► Right side



Remove the securing bolts and nut, and move the fuse block.



Turn the cover counterclockwise and remove it.



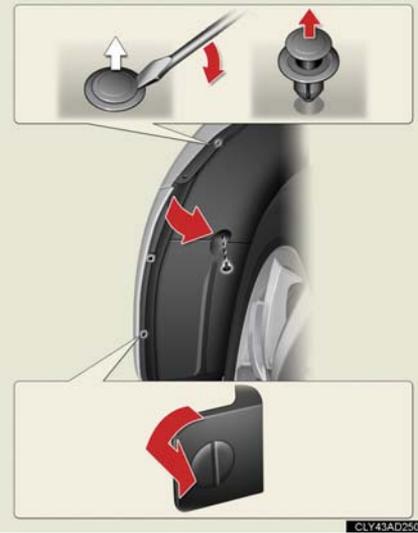
Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.



Unplug the connector while depressing the lock release.

## ■ Front fog lights

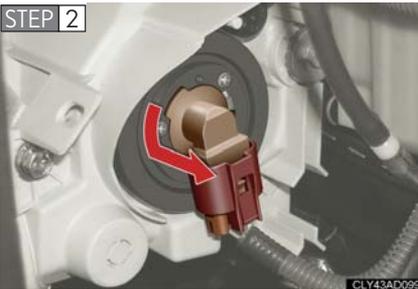
### STEP 1



To allow enough working clearance, turn the steering wheel to the opposite side of the bulb to be replaced.

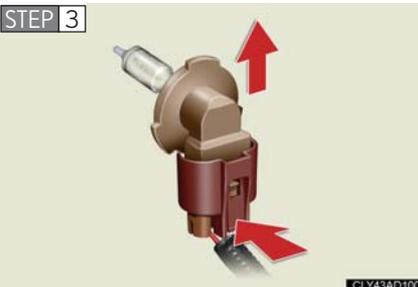
Remove the fender liner bolt and clips, and then remove the fender liner.

### STEP 2

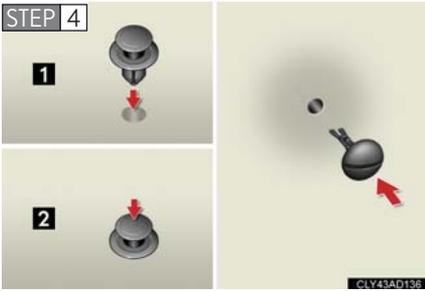


Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

### STEP 3



Unplug the connector while depressing the lock release.



Install the bolt and clips.

### ■ Front turn signal lights

**STEP 1** When replacing the bulbs:

► Left side

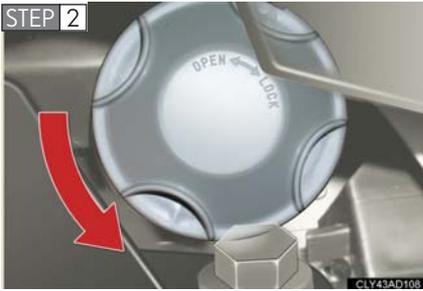


Remove the securing bolt and move the washer fluid filler opening.

► Right side



Remove the securing bolts and nut, and move the fuse block.



Turn the cover counterclockwise and remove it.



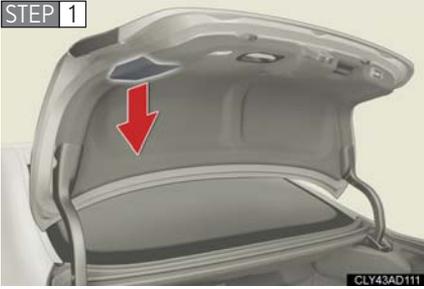
Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.



Remove the light bulb.

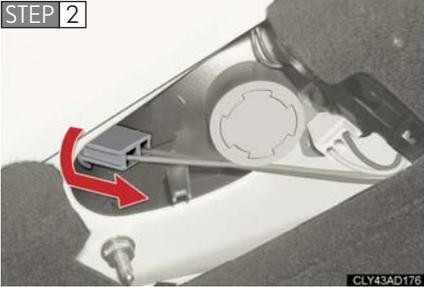
### ■ Back-up lights

STEP 1



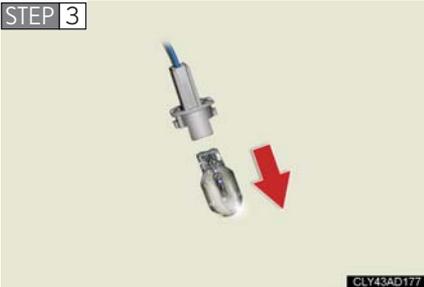
Open the trunk lid and remove the cover.

STEP 2



Turn the bulb bases counterclockwise.

STEP 3

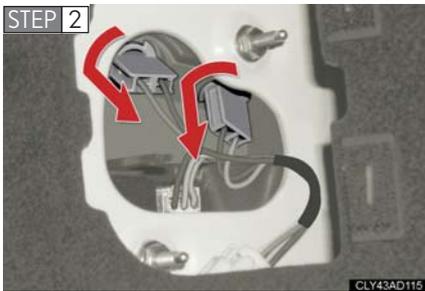


Remove the light bulb.

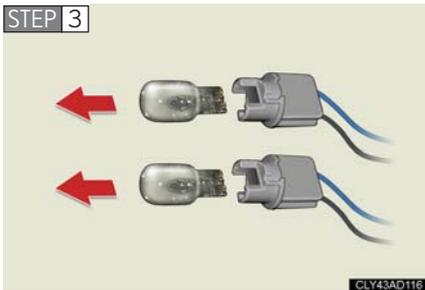
## ■ Rear turn signal lights



Open the trunk lid and remove the cover.



Turn the bulb bases counterclockwise.



Remove the light bulbs.

### ■ Lights other than the above

If any of the lights listed below has burnt out, have it replaced by your Lexus dealer.

- Headlight low beams
- Parking lights
- Side turn signal lights
- Side marker lights
- Stop/tail lights
- High mounted stoplight
- License plate lights

---

### ■ Condensation build-up on the inside of the lens

Contact your Lexus dealer for more information in the following situations. Temporary condensation build-up on the inside of the headlight lens does not indicate a malfunction.

- Large drops of water are built up on the inside of the lens.
- Water has built up inside the headlight.

### ■ Discharge headlights

If voltage to the discharge bulbs is insufficient, the bulbs may not come on, or may go out temporarily. The discharge bulbs will come on when normal power is restored.

### ■ LED stop/tail lights and high mounted stoplight

The stop/tail lights and high mounted stoplight consists of a number of LEDs. If any of the LEDs burn out, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer to have the light replaced.

 **CAUTION****■ Replacing light bulbs**

- Turn off the headlights. Do not attempt to replace the bulb immediately after turning off the headlights.  
The bulbs become very hot and may cause burns.
- Do not touch the glass portion of the light bulb with bare hands. Hold the bulb by the plastic or metal portion.  
If the bulb is scratched or dropped it may blow out or crack.
- Fully install light bulbs and any parts used to secure them. Failing to do so may result in heat damage, fire, or water entering the headlight unit. This may damage the headlights or cause condensation to build up on the lens.
- Do not attempt to take apart or repair the low beam discharge headlight bulbs, connectors, power supply circuits, or related components.  
Doing so could result in electric shock and serious injury or death.

**■ Discharge headlights**

- Contact your Lexus dealer before replacing discharge headlights (including light bulbs).
- Do not touch the high-intensity discharge headlight's high voltage socket when the headlights are turned on.  
An extremely high voltage of 20000 V will be discharged and could result in serious injury or death by electric shock.

**■ To prevent damage or fire**

Make sure bulbs are fully seated and locked.



**5-1. Essential information .... 620**

If your vehicle needs to be  
towed ..... 620

If you think something is  
wrong ..... 626

Fuel pump shut off system .... 627

Event data recorder ..... 628

**5-2. Steps to take in an  
emergency ..... 630**

If a warning light turns on or  
a warning buzzer  
sounds... ..... 630

If a warning message is  
displayed..... 639

If you have a flat tire..... 642

If the engine will not start .... 650

If the shift lever cannot be  
shifted from "P" ..... 652

If the parking brake cannot  
be released ..... 653

If you lose your keys ..... 655

If the electronic key does  
not operate properly..... 656

If the vehicle battery is  
discharged ..... 660

If your vehicle overheats ..... 663

If the vehicle becomes  
stuck..... 666

## 5-1. Essential information

### If your vehicle needs to be towed

If towing is necessary, we recommend having your vehicle towed by your Lexus dealer or a commercial towing service, using a lift-type truck or a flatbed truck.

Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by all state/provincial and local laws.

If towing from the rear, the vehicle's front wheels and axles must be in good condition. (→P. 624)

If the vehicle is damaged, use a towing dolly or flatbed truck.

#### Before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact your Lexus dealer before towing.

- The engine is running, but the vehicle will not move.
- The vehicle makes an abnormal sound.

#### Emergency towing

If a tow truck is not available, in an emergency your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the emergency towing eyelet(s). This should only be attempted on hard, surfaced roads for short distances at low speeds.

A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes. The vehicle's wheels, drive train, axles, steering and brakes must be in good condition.



1 Towing eyelets

**■ Before emergency towing**

- Release the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to “N”.
- Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to ACCESSORY (engine off) or IGNITION ON mode (engine running).

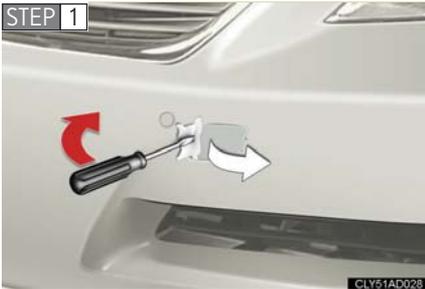
** CAUTION****■ Caution while towing**

- Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle.  
Avoid sudden starts or erratic driving maneuvers which place excessive stress on the emergency towing eyelets and the cables or chains.
- If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not function, making steering and braking more difficult.

** NOTICE****■ To prevent causing serious damage to the transmission**

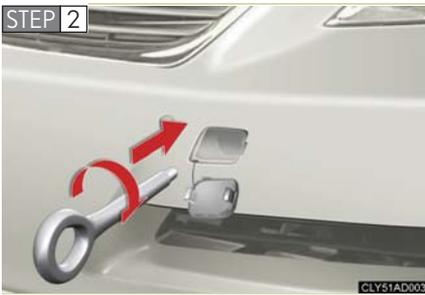
Never tow this vehicle from the front with the rear wheels on the ground.  
This may cause serious damage to the transmission.

## Installing towing eyelets



Remove the eyelet cover using a flat head screwdriver.

To protect the bodywork, place a rag between the screwdriver and the vehicle body, as shown in the illustration.



Insert the towing eyelet into the hole and tighten partially by hand.



Tighten down the towing eyelet securely using a wheel nut wrench.

### ■ Location of the emergency towing eyelet

→P. 642

**⚠ CAUTION****■ Installing towing eyelets to the vehicle**

Make sure that towing eyelets are installed securely.

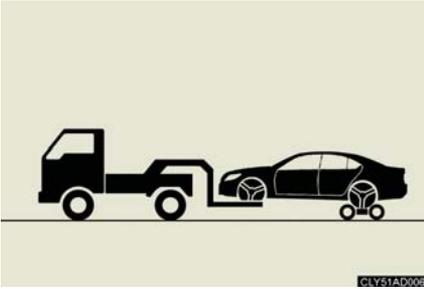
If not securely installed, towing eyelets may come loose during towing. This may lead to accidents that cause serious injury or even death.

**Towing with a sling-type truck****⚠ NOTICE****■ To prevent body damage**

Do not tow with a sling type truck, either from the front or rear.

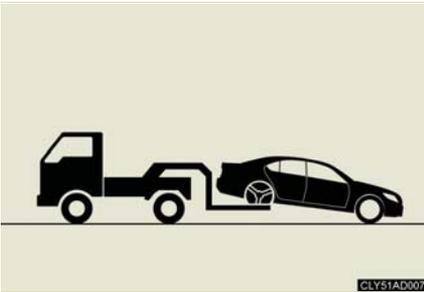
## Towing with a wheel lift-type truck

### ► From front



Use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

### ► From rear



Switch to ACCESSORY mode so that the steering wheel is unlocked.

### NOTICE

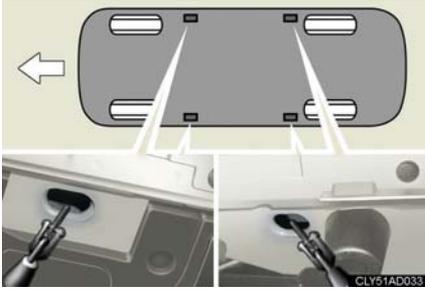
#### ■ To prevent causing serious damage to the transmission

Never tow this vehicle from the front with the rear wheels on the ground.

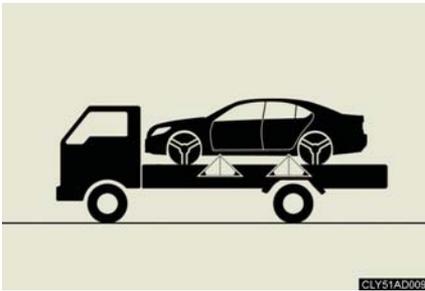
#### ■ To prevent damaging the vehicle

- Do not tow the vehicle with the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF. The steering lock mechanism is not strong enough to hold the front wheels straight.
- When raising the vehicle, ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Without adequate clearance, the vehicle could be damaged while being towed.

## Using a flat bed truck



If your Lexus is transported by a flat bed truck, it should be tied down at the locations shown in the illustration.



If you use chains or cables to tie down your vehicle, the angles shaded in black must be 45°.

Do not overly tighten the tie downs or the vehicle may be damaged.

## 5-1. Essential information

### If you think something is wrong

If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

#### ■ Visible symptoms

- Fluid leaks under the vehicle.  
(Water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Flat-looking tires or uneven tire wear
- Engine coolant temperature gauge needle continually points higher than normal.

#### ■ Audible symptoms

- Changes in exhaust sound
- Excessive tire squeal when cornering
- Strange noises related to the suspension system
- Pinging or other noises related to the engine

#### ■ Operational symptoms

- Engine missing, stumbling or running rough
- Appreciable loss of power
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when braking.
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road.
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling, pedal almost touches the floor

## 5-1. Essential information

# Fuel pump shut off system

To minimize the risk of fuel leakage when the engine stalls or an airbag inflates upon collision, the fuel pump shut off system stops supplying fuel to the engine.

Follow the procedure below to restart the engine after the system is activated.

**STEP 1** Switch to ACCESSORY mode or OFF.

**STEP 2** Restart the engine.

### NOTICE

#### ■ Before starting the engine

Inspect the ground under the vehicle.

If you find that fuel has leaked on to the ground, the fuel system has been damaged and is in need of repair. Do not restart the engine.

## 5-1. Essential information

### Event data recorder

Your vehicle has computers that monitor and control certain aspects of your vehicle. These computers assist in driving and maintaining optimal vehicle performance.

Besides storing data useful for troubleshooting, there is an event data recorder (EDR) that records data in a crash or a near car crash event.

#### In a crash or a near car crash event

The SRS airbag sensor assembly contains the EDR. In a crash or a near car crash event, this device may record some or all of the following information:

- Engine speed
- Whether the brake pedal was applied or not
- Vehicle speed
- To what extent the accelerator pedal was depressed
- Position of the transmission shift lever
- Whether the driver and front passenger wore seat belts or not
- Driver's seat position
- SRS airbag deployment data
- SRS airbag system diagnostic data
- Front passenger's occupant classification

The information above is intended to be used for the purpose of improving vehicle safety performance. Unlike general data recorders, the EDR does not record sound data such as conversation between passengers.

## Disclosure of the data

Lexus will not disclose the data recorded in an EDR to a third party except when:

- An agreement from the vehicle's owner (or the leasing company for a leased vehicle) is obtained
- Officially requested by the police or other authorities
- Used as a defense for Lexus in a law suit
- Ordered by a court law

However, if necessary Lexus will:

- Use the data for research on Lexus vehicle safety performance
- Disclose the data to a third party for research purposes without disclosing details of the vehicle owner, and only when it is deemed necessary
- Disclose summarized data cleared of vehicle identification information to a non-Lexus organization for research purposes

## 5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

### If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds...

Calmly perform the following actions if any of the warning lights turn on or flash. If a light turns on or flashes, but then turns off, this does not necessarily indicate a malfunction in the system.

**Stop the vehicle immediately. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.**

The following warning indicates a possible problem in the brake system. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
 (U.S.A.)	<b>Brake system warning light (red indicator)</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Low brake fluid</li></ul>
 (Canada)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Malfunction in the electronically controlled brake system</li></ul>

**Stop the vehicle immediately.**

The following warning indicates the possibility of damage to the vehicle that may lead to an accident. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
	<b>Charging system warning light</b> Indicates a malfunction in the vehicle's charging system

## Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Failing to investigate the cause of the following warnings may lead to the system operating abnormally and possibly cause an accident. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
 (U.S.A.)  (Canada)	<b>Malfunction indicator lamp</b> Indicates a malfunction in: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The electronic engine control system;</li> <li>• The electronic throttle control system; or</li> <li>• The electronic automatic transmission control system</li> </ul>
	<b>SRS warning light</b> Indicates a malfunction in: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The SRS airbag system; or</li> <li>• The seat belt pretensioner system</li> </ul>
 (U.S.A.)  (Canada)	<b>ABS warning light</b> Indicates a malfunction in: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The ABS; or</li> <li>• The brake assist system</li> </ul>
	<b>Brake system warning light (yellow indicator)</b> Indicates a malfunction in: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The electronically controlled brake system; or</li> <li>• The electric parking brake</li> </ul>
	<b>Electric power steering system warning light</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates a malfunction in the EPS (Electric Power Steering) system</li> </ul>
	<b>Pre-collision system warning light (if equipped)</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates a malfunction in the pre-collision system</li> </ul>

**■ If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while driving**

First check the following:

- Is the fuel empty?  
If it is, fill the fuel tank immediately.
- Is the fuel tank cap loose?  
If it is, tighten it securely.

The lamp will go off after taking several driving trips.

If the light does not go off even after several trips, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

**■ Electric power steering warning light**

When the battery is low or when the voltage drops temporarily, the electric power steering warning light may come on.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**■ When the electric power steering warning light comes on**

The steering wheel may become extremely heavy.

If the steering wheel becomes heavier than usual when operating, firmly hold and operate it using more force than usual.

**Have the malfunction repaired immediately.**

After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning light turns off.

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	<p><b>Open door warning light (warning buzzer)*<sup>1</sup></b> Indicates that a door or the trunk is not fully closed.</p>	<p>Check that all doors and the trunk are closed.</p>

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
 In the fuel gauge	<b>Low fuel level warning light</b> Remaining fuel (Approximately 3.4 gal. [13L, 2.8 Imp.gal.] or less)	Refuel the vehicle.
	<b>Driver's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*2</b> Warns the driver to fasten his/her seat belt.	Fasten the seat belt.
	<b>Front passenger's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*2</b> Warns the front passenger to fasten his/her seat belt.	Fasten the seat belt.
	<b>Tire pressure warning light</b>	
	When the light comes on: Low tire inflation pressure.	Adjust the tire inflation pressure.
	When the light comes on after blinking for 1 minute: Malfunction in the tire pressure warning system.	Have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.
	<b>Master warning light</b> A buzzer sounds and the warning light comes on or flashes to indicate that the master warning system has detected a malfunction.	→P. 639

### \*1: Open door warning buzzer:

The open door warning buzzer sounds to alert one or more of the doors is not fully closed (with the vehicle having reached a speed of 3 mph [5 km/h]).

### \*2: Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminders buzzer:

The driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminders sound to alert the driver and front passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. The buzzer sounds intermittently for 10 seconds after the vehicle has reached a speed of at least 12 mph (20 km/h). Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 20 more seconds.

---

#### ■ Front passenger detection sensor and passenger seat belt reminder

- If luggage is placed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger detection sensor may cause the warning light to flash, even if a passenger is not sitting in the seat.
- If a cushion is placed on the seat, the sensor may not detect a passenger, and the warning light may not operate properly.

#### ■ When the tire pressure warning light comes on

Check the tire inflation pressure and adjust to the appropriate level. Pushing the tire pressure warning reset switch does not turn off the tire pressure warning light.

#### ■ The tire pressure warning light may turn on due to natural causes

The tire pressure warning light may turn on due to natural causes such as natural air leaks or tire inflation pressure changes caused by temperature. In this case, adjusting the tire inflation pressure will turn off the warning light (after a few minutes).

#### ■ When a tire is replaced with a spare tire

The spare tire is also equipped with the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. The tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire inflation pressure of the spare tire is low. If a tire goes flat, even though the flat tire is replaced with the spare tire, the tire pressure warning light does not turn off. Replace the spare tire with the repaired tire and adjust the proper tire inflation pressure. The tire pressure warning light will turn off after a few minutes.

■ **If the tire pressure warning system is inoperative**

The tire pressure warning system will be disabled in the following conditions:  
(When the condition becomes normal, the system will work properly.)

- If tires not equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are used.
- If the ID code on the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters is not registered in the tire pressure warning computer.
- If the tire inflation pressure is 73 psi (500 kPa, 5.1 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup> or bar) or higher.

The tire pressure warning system may be disabled in the following conditions:  
(When the condition becomes normal, the system will work properly.)

- If electronic devices or facilities using similar radio wave frequencies are nearby.
- If a radio set at similar frequencies is in use in the vehicle.
- If a window tint that affects the radio wave signals is installed.
- If there is a lot of snow or ice on the vehicle, in particular around the wheels or wheel housings.
- If non-genuine Lexus wheels are used. (Even if you use Lexus wheels, the tire pressure warning system may not work properly with some types of tires.)
- If tire chains are used.
- If the spare tire is in a location subject to poor radio wave signal reception.
- If a large metallic object which can interfere with signal reception is put in the trunk.

■ **If the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute frequently**

If the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute frequently when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

■ **Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer**

The vehicle speed linked seat belt reminder buzzer can be disabled. (Customizable features →P. 692)

 **CAUTION**

■ **If the tire pressure warning light comes on**

Be sure to observe the following precautions. Failure to do so could cause loss of vehicle control and result in death or serious injury.

- Stop your vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.
- If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires. If the tire is flat, change to the spare tire and have the flat tire repaired by the nearest Lexus dealer.
- Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

■ **If a blowout or sudden air leakage should occur**

The tire pressure warning system may not activate immediately.

 **CAUTION****■ Maintenance of the tires**

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label (tire and load information label). (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label [tire and load information label], you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS-tire pressure warning system) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light) when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light) illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light).

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light). When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) to continue to function properly.

 NOTICE

■ **Precaution when installing a different tire**

When a tire of a different specification or maker is installed, the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

## 5-2. Steps to take in an emergency If a warning message is displayed

The multi-information display shows warnings of system malfunctions, incorrectly performed operations, or shows messages that indicate a need for maintenance. When a message is shown, perform the correction procedure appropriate to the message.



### 1 Master warning light

The master warning light comes on or flashes when a message is being shown on the multi-information display.

### 2 Multi-information display

If any of the warning messages is shown again after its correction procedure has been performed, contact your Lexus dealer.

## Messages and warnings

The warning lights and warning buzzers operate as follows depending on the content of the message. If a message indicates the need for inspection by a dealer, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

	System warning light	Warning buzzer*	Warning
Comes on	—	Sounds	Indicates an important situation, such as when a system related to driving is malfunctioning or that danger may result if the correction procedure is not performed
—	Comes on or flashes	Sounds	Indicates an important situation, such as when the system shown on the multi-information display may be malfunctioning
Flashes	—	Sounds	Indicates a situation, such as when damage to the vehicle or danger may result
Comes on	—	Does not sound	Indicates a condition, such as malfunction of electrical components, their condition, or indicates the need for maintenance
Flashes	—	Does not sound	Indicates a situation, such as when an operation has been performed incorrectly, or indicates how to perform an operation correctly

\*: A buzzer sounds the first time a message is shown on the multi-information display.

### ■ System warning lights

The master warning light does not come on or flash in the following cases. Instead, a separate system warning light will come on or flash along with the message shown on the multi-information display.

- Malfunction of the AFS (Adaptive Front Lighting System)  
The “AFS OFF” indicator light flashes. (→P. 173)
- Malfunction of the brake system  
The brake system warning light (red indicator) comes on. (→P. 630)
- Malfunction of the electronically controlled brake system or electric parking brake  
The brake system warning light (yellow indicator) comes on. (→P. 631)
- Malfunction of the ABS  
The ABS warning light comes on. (→P. 631)
- Malfunction of the charging system  
The charging system warning light comes on. (→P. 630)
- High engine coolant temperature  
The needle of the engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone. (→P. 161)

### ■ When “Electrical equipment operation is limited” is shown

This message indicates that the battery is low. When the message is shown, operation of electrical equipment that uses a large amount of electric power, such as the air conditioning system, may be limited temporarily. This does not indicate a malfunction. Operation of electrical equipment will be restored after the battery is charged.

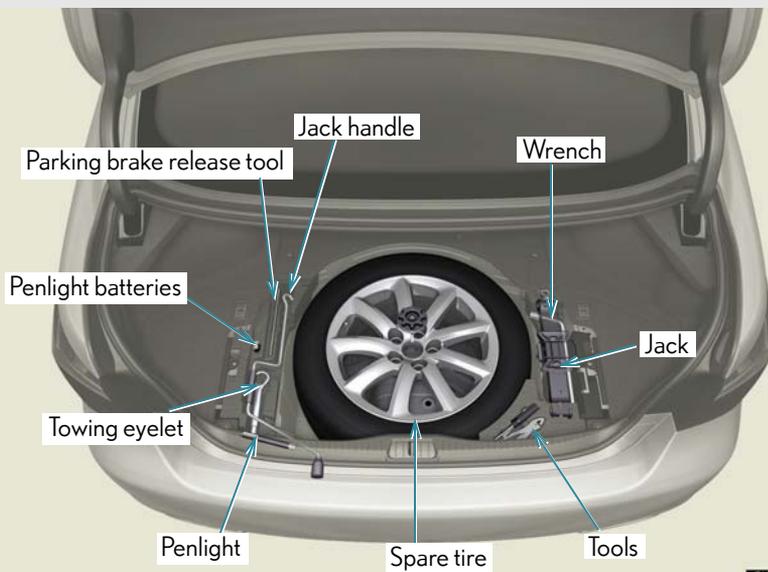
## 5-2. Steps to take in an emergency If you have a flat tire

Remove the flat tire and replace it with the spare provided.

### ■ Before jacking up the vehicle

- Stop the vehicle on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to “P”.
- Stop the engine.
- Turn on the emergency flashers.

### ■ Location of the spare tire, jack and tools



## Penlight

The vehicle is equipped with a penlight, located inside the trunk. The penlight is provided in case it is necessary to perform an unexpected service operation at night, such as installation of the spare tire.



- 1 Turn the top portion to remove it.
- 2 Insert batteries.
- 3 Install the top portion.
- 4 On/off

## Taking out the jack and spare tire



Lift up the hook of the panel on the trunk floor.



Secure the panel using the hook provided.

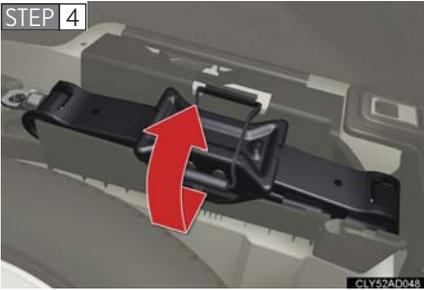
## 5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

STEP 3



Remove the tool tray.

STEP 4



Remove the jack after removing the hook.

STEP 5



Loosen the center fastener that secures the spare tire.

If the center fastener cannot be turned by hand, use the wrench that is stored in the trunk. (To secure the tire, tighten the center fastener by hand. Do not use the wrench or other tools.)

## Replacing a flat tire

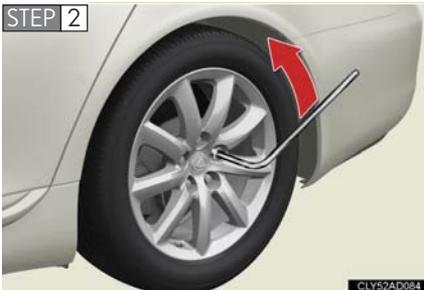
### STEP 1



Chock the tires.

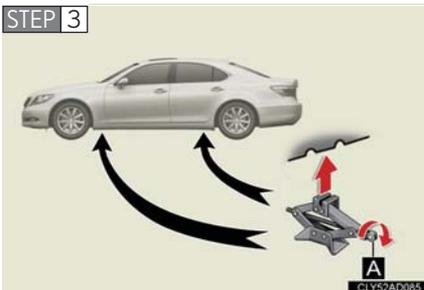
Flat tire		Wheel chock positions
Front	Left-hand side	Behind the rear right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	Behind the rear left-hand side tire
Rear	Left-hand side	In front of the front right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	In front of the front left-hand side tire

### STEP 2



Slightly loosen the wheel nuts (one turn).

### STEP 3



Turn the tire jack portion "A" by hand until the notch of the jack is in contact with the jack point.

## 5-2. Steps to take in an emergency



Raise the vehicle until the tire is slightly raised off the ground.

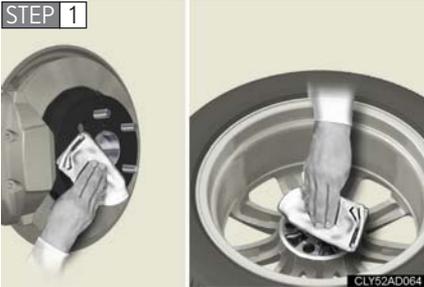


Remove all the wheel nuts and the tire.

When resting the tire on the ground, place the tire so that the wheel design faces up to avoid scratching the wheel surface.

## Installing the spare tire

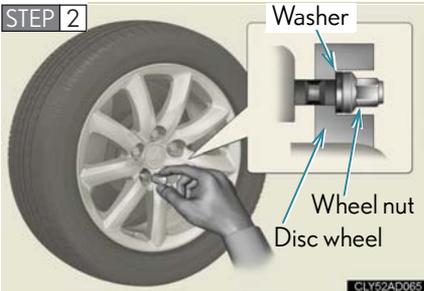
### STEP 1



Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.

If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, and the tire may come off the vehicle.

### STEP 2



Install the spare tire and loosely tighten each wheel nut by hand to approximately the same amount.

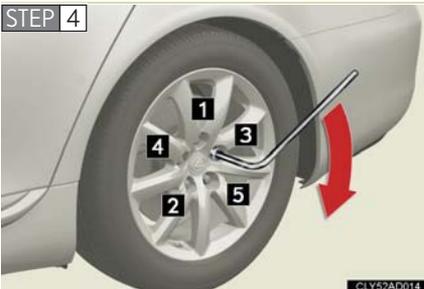
Turn the lug nuts until the washers come into contact with the wheel.

### STEP 3



Lower the vehicle.

### STEP 4



Firmly tighten each nut two or three times in the order shown in the illustration.

#### Tightening torque:

103.3 ft•lbf (140 N•m, 14.3 kgf•m)

**STEP 5** Stow the flat tire, tire jack and all tools.

■ **After completing the tire change**

The tire pressure warning system must be reset. (→P. 571)

 **CAUTION**

■ **Using the tire jack**

Improper use of the tire jack may lead to death or injuries due to the vehicle suddenly falling off the jack.

- Do not use the tire jack for any purpose other than replacing tires or installing and removing tire chains.
- Only use the tire jack that comes with this vehicle for replacing a flat tire. Do not use it on other vehicles, and do not use other tire jacks for replacing tires on this vehicle.
- Always check that the tire jack is securely set to the jack point.
- Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle supported by a jack.
- Do not start or run the engine while your vehicle is supported by the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is in it.
- When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle to a height greater than that required to replace the tire.
- Use a jack stand if it is necessary to get under the vehicle.
- Vehicles with electronically modulated air suspension: Be sure to turn off the height control and stop the engine.

Take particular care when lowering the vehicle to ensure that no one working on or near the vehicle may be injured.

 **CAUTION**
**■ Replacing a flat tire**

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of death or serious injury:

- Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.  
The oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen, causing a serious accident.  
Remove any oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
- Have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 103.3 ft•lbf (140 N•m, 14.3 kgf•m) as soon as possible after changing wheels.  
Failure to follow these precautions could cause the nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, which could lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.

 **NOTICE**
**■ Do not drive the vehicle with a flat tire.**

Do not continue driving with a flat tire.

Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair.

**■ When replacing the tires**

When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.

**■ To avoid damaging the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters**

Do not use liquid sealants on flat tires.

## 5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

### If the engine will not start

If the engine will not start, even though correct starting procedures are being followed (→P. 146), consider each of the following points.

#### ■ The engine will not start, even when the starter motor operates normally.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle's tank.

Refuel the vehicle.

- The engine may be flooded.

Try to restart the engine once more following correct starting procedures. (→P. 146)

- There may be a malfunction in the engine immobilizer system.

(→P. 97)

#### ■ The starter motor turns over slowly, the interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The battery may be discharged. (→P. 660)

- The battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded.

#### ■ The starter motor does not turn over.

The following may be the cause of the problem:

- The engine starting system may be malfunctioning due to an electrical problem such as an open circuit or a blown fuse. However, an interim measure is available to start the engine. (→P. 651)

■ **The starter motor does not turn over, the interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound.**

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- One or both of the battery terminals may be disconnected.
- The battery may be discharged. (→P. 660)
- There may be a malfunction in the steering lock system.

Contact your Lexus dealer if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

### Emergency start function

When the engine does not start, the following steps can be used as an interim measure to start the engine if the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is functioning normally:

**STEP 1** Set the parking brake.

**STEP 2** Put the shift lever in “P”.

**STEP 3** Set the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to ACCESSORY mode.

**STEP 4** Press and hold the “ENGINE START STOP” switch about 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal firmly.

Even if the engine can be started using the above steps, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

## 5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

### If the shift lever cannot be shifted from “P”

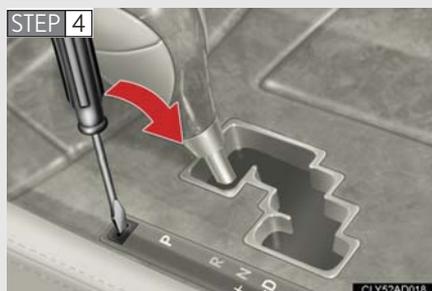
If the shift lever cannot be shifted with your foot on the brake pedal, there may be a problem with the shift lock system (a system to prevent accidental operation of the shift lever). Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the shift lever can be shifted:

**STEP 1** Set the parking brake.

**STEP 2** Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to the ACCESSORY mode.

**STEP 3** Depress the brake pedal.



Pry the cover up with a flathead screwdriver or equivalent.



Press the shift lock override button.

The shift lever can be shifted while the button is pressed.

## 5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

### If the parking brake cannot be released

In the event that the battery is discharged or switch operation does not release the parking brake, the parking brake can be released manually using the procedure below. This procedure should be performed only if necessary, such as in an emergency.

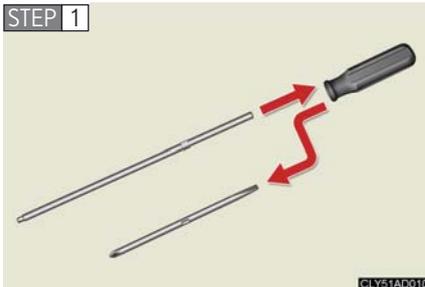
If the switch cannot be operated even when the battery is normal, the parking brake system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

#### ■ Before releasing the parking brake manually

- Shift the shift lever to "P".
- Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF.
- Check that the parking brake indicator is off.
- Check the tires.

#### Releasing the parking brake manually

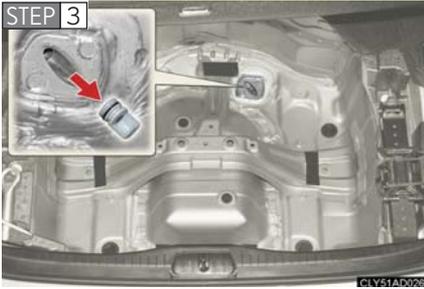
STEP 1



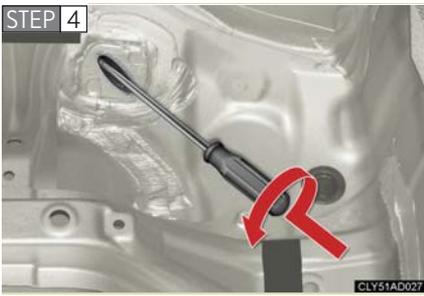
Take out the parking brake release tool and the screwdriver from the trunk. (→P. 642)

Install the parking brake release tool into the screwdriver handle.

STEP 2 Take out the spare tire. (→P. 642)



Remove the plug.



Insert the tool and press it down firmly while turning it counter-clockwise until it stops.

#### ■ Manual operation of the parking brake

The parking brake cannot be set manually.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

##### ■ When releasing the parking brake manually

- Shift the shift lever to “P”, turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF and chock the tires.  
Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move, resulting in an accident.
- Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF and check that the parking brake indicator is off.  
Failure to do so may cause the system to operate and turn the parking brake release tool that is inserted, resulting in an injury.

## 5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

### If you lose your keys

New genuine Lexus keys can be made by your Lexus dealer using one of the other keys and the key number stamped on your key number plate.

## 5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

### If the electronic key does not operate properly

If communication between the electronic key and vehicle is interrupted (→P. 37) or the electronic key cannot be used because the battery is depleted, the smart access system with push-button start and wireless remote control cannot be used. In such cases, the doors and trunk can be opened or the engine can be started by following the procedure below.

#### Locking and unlocking the doors, unlocking the trunk and key linked functions

##### ► Doors



Remove the cover on the driver's door handle using the mechanical key in order to perform the following operations.

- 1 Locks all doors
- 2 Closes the windows (turn and hold)

The moon roof will also close.  
(if equipped)

- 3 Unlocks the door

Turning the key rearward unlocks the driver's door. Turning the key once again unlocks the other doors.

- 4 Opens the windows (turn and hold)

The moon roof will also open.  
(if equipped)

Return the cover to the original position after use.

► Trunk



Turn the mechanical key clockwise to open.

## Changing “ENGINE START STOP” switch modes and starting the engine

**STEP 1** Ensure that the shift lever is in “P” and apply the brakes.



Touch the Lexus emblem side of the electronic key to the “ENGINE START STOP” switch.

If any of the doors is opened or closed after the key was touched to the switch to start the vehicle, an alarm will sound to indicate that the start function cannot detect the key.



**STEP 3** To change “ENGINE START STOP” switch modes: Within 5 seconds of the buzzer sounding, release the brake pedal and press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch. Modes can be changed each time the switch is pressed. (→P. 147)

To start the engine: Press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch within 10 seconds [after the buzzer sounds], keeping the brake pedal depressed.

In the event that the engine still cannot be started, contact your Lexus dealer.

---

**■ Stopping the engine**

Shift the shift lever to P and press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch as you normally do when stopping the engine.

**■ Replacing the key battery**

As the above procedure is a temporary measure, it is recommended that the electronic key battery be replaced immediately when the battery depletes. (→P. 587)

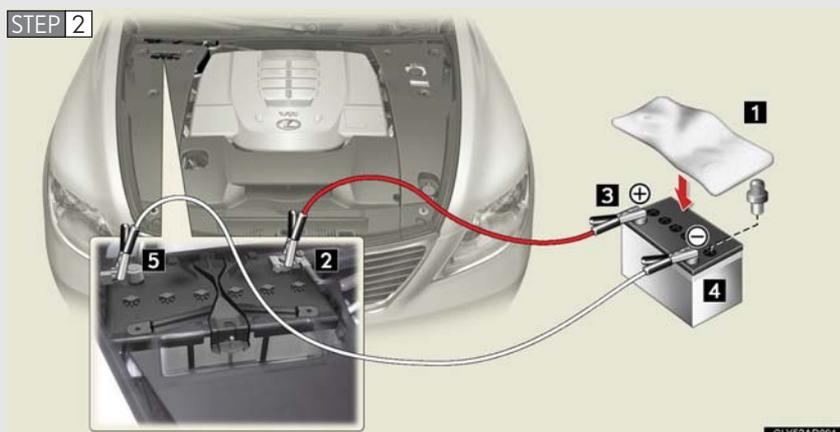
## 5-2. Steps to take in an emergency If the vehicle battery is discharged

The following procedures may be used to start the engine if the vehicle's battery is discharged.

You can call your Lexus dealer or qualified repair shop.

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with a 12-volt battery, you can jump start your Lexus following the steps below.

**STEP 1** Remove the engine compartment covers and battery cover.  
(→P.555)



Connect the jumper cables.

- 1** If required, remove all vent plugs from the booster battery. Lay a cloth over the open vents on the booster battery. (This helps reduce explosion hazard, personal injuries and burns.)
- 2** Positive (+) battery terminal on your vehicle
- 3** Positive (+) battery terminal on the second vehicle
- 4** Negative (-) battery terminal on the second vehicle
- 5** Connect the jumper cable to ground on your vehicle as shown in the illustration.

**STEP 3** Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery of your vehicle.

**STEP 4** Open and close any of the doors with the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF.

**STEP 5** Maintain the engine speed of the second vehicle and turn the ignition switch to IGNITION ON mode, then start the engine.

**STEP 6** Once the engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order in which they were connected.

Once the engine starts, have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

---

#### ■ Starting the engine when the battery is discharged

The engine cannot be started by push-starting.

#### ■ Avoiding a discharged battery

- Turn off the headlights and the audio system while the engine is turned off.
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic.

#### ■ When the battery is removed or discharged

The tire pressure warning system must be initialized.  
(→P. 571)

 **CAUTION**

■ **Avoiding battery fires or explosions**

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the battery:

- Make sure the jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal and that it is not unintentionally in contact with any part other than the intended terminal.
- Do not allow the jumper cables to come into contact with the “+” and “-” terminals.
- Do not allow open flame or use matches, cigarette lighters or smoke near the battery.

■ **Battery precautions**

The battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte, while related parts contain lead and lead compounds. Observe the following precautions when handling the battery:

- When working with the battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any battery fluids (acid) to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the battery.
- In the event that battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention. Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Do not allow children near the battery.

 **NOTICE**

■ **When handling jumper cables**

Be careful that the jumper cables do not become tangled in the cooling fan or belt when connecting or disconnecting the cables.

## 5-2. Steps to take in an emergency If your vehicle overheats

### If your engine overheats:

**STEP 1** Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the air conditioning system.

**STEP 2** Check to see if steam is coming out from the engine area.

If you see steam:

Stop the engine and carefully lift the hood.

If you do not see steam:

Leave the engine running and carefully lift the hood.

**STEP 3** Remove the engine compartment cover. (→P. 555)

**STEP 4** Check if the cooling fan is operating.

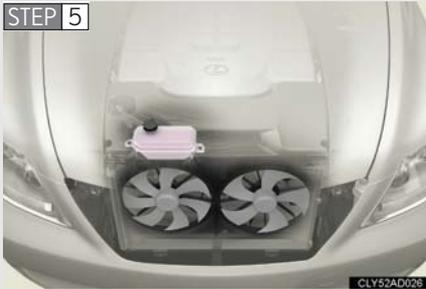
If the fans are operating:

Wait until the temperature of the engine (shown on the instrument cluster) begins to fall and then stop the engine.

If the fans are not operating:

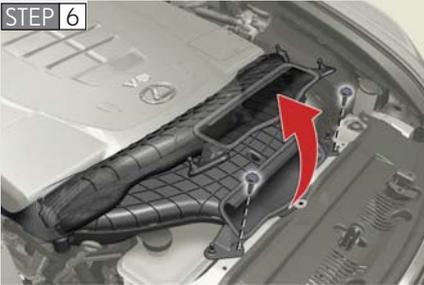
Stop the engine immediately and call your local Lexus dealer.

**STEP 5**



After the engine has cooled down, check the engine coolant level and inspect the cooling system for leaks.

STEP 6



Add engine coolant if necessary.

Water can be used in an emergency if engine coolant is unavailable. (→P. 672)

Have the vehicle inspected at your nearest Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

## ■ Overheating

The following symptoms may occur when your vehicle is overheating:

- The engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone or a loss of power is experienced.
- Steam is coming from the engine area.

 **CAUTION**

- **To prevent an accident or injury when inspecting under the hood of your vehicle**
  - Keep hands and clothing away from the fan and other belts while the engine is running.
  - Do not loosen the coolant reservoir cap while the engine and radiator are hot. Serious injury, such as burns, may result from hot coolant and steam released under pressure.

 **NOTICE****■ When adding engine coolant**

Wait until the engine has cooled down before adding engine coolant. When adding coolant, do so slowly. Adding cool coolant to a hot engine too quickly can cause damage to the engine.

## 5-2. Steps to take in an emergency If the vehicle becomes stuck

Carry out the following procedures if the tires spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt, or snow:

**STEP 1** Stop the engine. Set the parking brake and put the selector lever in "P".

**STEP 2** Remove the mud, snow, or sand from around the stuck tire.

**STEP 3** Place wood, stones or some other material to help provide traction under the tires.

**STEP 4** Restart the engine.

**STEP 5** Shift the shift lever to the "D" or "R" position and carefully apply the accelerator to free the vehicle.

Turn off TRAC/VSC if these functions are hampering your attempts to free the vehicle. (→ P. 211)

### CAUTION

#### ■ When attempting to free a stuck vehicle

If you choose to rock the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear to avoid striking other vehicles, objects or persons. The vehicle may also lunge forward or lunge back suddenly as it becomes free. Use extreme caution.

#### ■ When shifting the shift lever

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed. This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

### NOTICE

#### ■ To avoid damaging the transmission and other components

- Avoid spinning the wheels and do not rev the engine.
- If the vehicle remains stuck after trying these procedures, the vehicle may require towing to be freed.

<b>6-1. Specifications.....</b>	<b>668</b>
Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) .....	668
Fuel information.....	678
Tire information.....	681
<b>6-2. Customization.....</b>	<b>692</b>
Customizable features .....	692
<b>6-3. Initialization .....</b>	<b>696</b>
Items to initialize .....	696

## 6-1. Specifications

### Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.)

#### Dimensions and weight

Overall length	LS460	198.0 in. (5030 mm)
	LS460L	202.8 in. (5150 mm)
Overall width		73.8 in. (1875 mm)
Overall height * <sup>1</sup>		58.1 in. (1475 mm)* <sup>2</sup> 57.7 in. (1465 mm)* <sup>3</sup>
Wheelbase	LS460	116.9 in. (2970 mm)
	LS460L	121.7 in. (3090 mm)
Tread	Front	63.6 in. (1615 mm)* <sup>4</sup> 63.4 in. (1610 mm)* <sup>5</sup>
	Rear	63.8 in. (1620 mm)* <sup>4</sup> 63.6 in. (1615 mm)* <sup>5</sup>
Vehicle capacity weight (Occupants + luggage)		825 lb. (375 kg)* <sup>6</sup> 675 lb. (305 kg)* <sup>7</sup>

\*<sup>1</sup>: Unladen vehicles

\*<sup>2</sup>: Vehicles without an electronically modulated air suspension

\*<sup>3</sup>: Vehicles with an electronically modulated air suspension

\*<sup>4</sup>: Vehicles with 18-inch tires

\*<sup>5</sup>: Vehicles with 19-inch tires

\*<sup>6</sup>: 5-seat models

\*<sup>7</sup>: 4-seat models

## Vehicle identification

### ■ Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identification number for your Lexus. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.

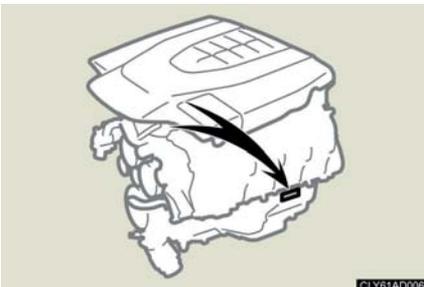


This number is stamped on the top left of the instrument panel and in the engine compartment.



This number is also on the Certification Label.

### ■ Engine number



The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown.

### Engine

Model	1UR-FSE
Type	8-cylinder V type, 4-cycle, gasoline
Bore and stroke	3.70 × 3.27 in. (94.0 × 83.0 mm)
Displacement	281.2 cu.in. (4608 cm <sup>3</sup> )
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment

### Fuel

Fuel type	Unleaded gasoline only
Octane rating	91 (Research octane number 96) or higher
Fuel tank capacity	22.1 gal. (84 L, 18.4 Imp.gal.)

## Lubrication system

Oil capacity  
(drain and refill)

with filter

9.1 qt. (8.6 L, 7.6 Imp.qt.)

without filter

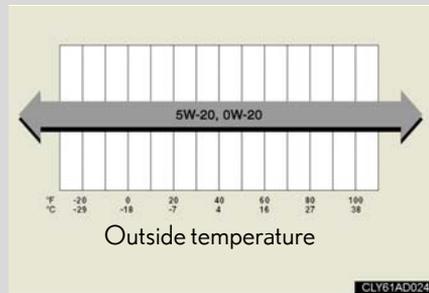
8.9 qt. (8.4 L, 7.4 Imp.qt.)

Oil grade

ILSAC multi-grade engine oil

Recommended oil  
viscosity

Use Lexus approved “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” or equivalent to satisfy the grade and viscosity shown below.



0W-20 is an oil that provides optimal levels of fuel efficiency.

### Oil viscosity

- The 0W portion of the oil viscosity rating indicates a characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 20 in 0W-20 indicates the oil viscosity when the oil is at its operating temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load condition.

### Cooling system

Capacity	11.7 qt. (11.0 L, 9.7 Imp.qt.)
Coolant type	Use either of the following. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant”</li><li>• Similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology</li></ul> Do not use plain water alone.

### Ignition system

Spark plug	
Make	DENSO FK20HBR11
Gap	0.043 in. (1.1 mm)

 NOTICE

■ **Iridium-tipped spark plugs**

Use only iridium-tipped spark plugs. Do not adjust spark plug gap.

## Electrical system

Battery	
Open voltage* at 68°F (20°C):	12.6 — 12.8 V Fully charged 12.2 — 12.4 V Half charged 11.8 — 12.0 V Discharged (*: Voltage checked 20 minutes after the engine and all the lights are turned off)
Charging rates	5A max.

## Differential

Oil capacity	1.42 qt. (1.35 L, 1.19 Imp.qt.)
Oil type and viscosity*	Toyota Genuine Differential gear oil LT 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent

\*: "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil LT" is filled in your Lexus vehicle at factory fill. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil LT" or equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

## Automatic Transmission

Fluid capacity *	10.62 qt. (10.05 L, 8.84 Imp.qt.)
Fluid type	Toyota Genuine ATF WS

\*: The fluid capacity is a reference quantity. If replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.

### NOTICE

#### ■ Automatic transmission fluid type

Using automatic transmission fluid other than “Toyota Genuine ATF WS” may cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage the automatic transmission of your vehicle.

## Brakes

Pedal clearance *	3.7 in. (95.0 mm) Min.
Pedal free play	0.04 — 0.08 in. (1.0 — 2.0 mm)
Brake pad wear limit	0.04 in. (1.0 mm)
Parking brake lining wear limit	0.04 in. (1.0 mm)
Fluid type	SAE J1703 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 3

\*: Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with a force of 50 lbf (200 N, 20 kgf).

## Steering

Free play	Less than 1.2 in. (30 mm)
-----------	---------------------------

## Tires and wheels

### ► 18-inch tires

Tire size	235/50R18 97W, P235/50R18 97V
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	<p>Driving under normal conditions</p> <p>Front: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup> or bar)</p> <p>Rear: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup> or bar)</p> <p>Spare: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup> or bar)</p> <p>Driving at high speeds above 100 mph (160 km/h) (in countries where such speeds are permitted by law)</p> <p>Add 3 psi (20 kPa, 0.2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup> or bar) to the front tires, 9 psi (60 kPa, 0.6 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup> or bar) to the rear tires. Never exceed the maximum cold tire inflation pressure indicated on the tire sidewall.</p>
Wheel size	18 × 7 1/2J
Wheel nut torque	103.3 ft•lbf (140 N•m, 14.3 kgf•m)

► 19-inch tires

Tire size	245/45R19 98Y, P245/45R19 98V
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	<p>Driving under normal conditions</p> <p>Front: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup> or bar)</p> <p>Rear: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup> or bar)</p> <p>Spare: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup> or bar)</p> <p>Driving at high speeds above 100 mph (160 km/h) (in countries where such speeds are permitted by law)</p> <p>Add 6 psi (40 kPa, 0.4 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup> or bar) to the front tires and rear tires. Never exceed the maximum cold tire inflation pressure indicated on the tire sidewall.</p>
Wheel size	19 × 8J
Wheel nut torque	103.3 ft•lbf (140 N•m, 14.3 kgf•m)

## Light bulbs

	Light Bulbs	Bulb No.	W	Type
Exterior	Headlights			
	High beam (halogen bulbs)	9005	60	A
	Low beam (discharge bulbs)	—	35	B
	Front side marker lights	194	3.8	C
	Front turn signal lights	—	21	D
	Parking lights	—	5	C
	Front fog lights	9006	51	E
	Trunk lid light	194	3.8	C
	Trunk light	—	3.8	C
	Rear turn signal lights	921	16	C
	Back-up lights	921	16	C
Outer foot lights	—	5	C	
Interior	Vanity lights			
	Front	—	8	C
	Rear	—	3	F
	Interior lights			
	Front	—	8	C
Rear	—	8	F	
Door courtesy lights	—	5	C	

- A: HB3 halogen bulbs  
 B: D4S discharge bulbs  
 C: Wedge base bulbs (clear)  
 D: Wedge base bulbs (amber)  
 E: HB4 halogen bulbs  
 F: Double end bulbs

## 6-1. Specifications

### Fuel information

Your vehicle must use only unleaded gasoline.

Premium unleaded gasoline with an Octane Rating of 91 (Research Octane Number 96) or higher required for optimum engine performance.

At minimum, the gasoline you use should meet the specifications of ASTM D4814 in the U.S.A. and CGSB3.5-M93 in Canada.

---

#### ■ Fuel tank opening for unleaded gasoline

To help prevent incorrect fueling, your Lexus has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on unleaded fuel pumps.

#### ■ If premium gasoline is not available

If 91 Octane cannot be obtained, you may use unleaded gasoline with an octane rating as low as 87 (Research Octane Number 91).

The use of such gasoline may cause the engine to knock or drastically reduce output to protect itself while driving with a heavy load. To avoid this, refill the tank with premium unleaded gasoline as soon as possible.

#### ■ If your engine knocks

- Consult your Lexus dealer.
- You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.

#### ■ Gasoline quality

In very few cases, driveability problems may be caused by the brand of gasoline you are using. If driveability problems persist, try changing the brand of gasoline. If this does not correct the problem, consult your Lexus dealer.

### ■ Gasoline quality standards

- Automotive manufacturers in the US, Europe and Japan have developed a specification for fuel quality called World-Wide Fuel Charter (WWFC) that is expected to be applied worldwide.
- The WWFC consists of four categories that are based on required emission levels. In the US, category 4 has been adopted.
- The WWFC improves air quality by lowering emissions in vehicle fleets, and customer satisfaction through better performance.

### ■ Lexus recommends the use of gasoline containing detergent additives

- Lexus recommends the use of gasoline that contains detergent additives to avoid build-up of engine deposits.
- All gasoline sold in the US contains detergent additives to clean and/or keep clean intake systems.

### ■ Lexus recommends the use of cleaner burning gasoline

Cleaner burning gasoline, including reformulated gasoline that contains oxygenates such as ethanol or MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) is available in many areas.

Lexus recommends the use of cleaner burning gasoline and appropriately blended reformulated gasoline. These types of gasoline provide excellent vehicle performance, reduce vehicle emissions and improve air quality.

### ■ Lexus does not recommend blended gasoline

- Lexus allows the use of oxygenate blended gasoline where the oxygenate content is up to 10% ethanol or 15% MTBE.
- If you use gasohol in your Lexus, be sure that it has an octane rating no lower than 87.
- Lexus DOES NOT recommend the use of gasoline containing methanol.

### ■ Lexus does not recommend gasoline containing MMT

Some gasoline contains octane enhancing additive called MMT (Methylcyclopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl).

Lexus DOES NOT recommend the use of gasoline that contains MMT. If fuel containing MMT is used, your emission control system may be adversely affected.

The malfunction indicator lamp on the instrument cluster may come on. If this happens, contact your Lexus dealer for service.

### NOTICE

#### ■ Notice on gasoline quality

- Do not use leaded gasoline.

Leaded gasoline can cause damage to your vehicle's three-way catalytic converters causing the emission control system to malfunction.

- Do not use gasohol other than that stated here.

Other gasohol may cause fuel system damage or vehicle performance problems.

- Use of unleaded gasoline with an octane rating lower than 91 may result in engine knocking and significantly reduced performance. Persistent knocking can lead to engine damage and should be corrected by refueling with higher octane unleaded gasoline.

#### ■ Fuel-related poor driveability

If after using a different type of fuel, poor driveability is encountered (poor hot starting, vaporization, engine knocking, etc.), discontinue the use of that type of fuel.

#### ■ When refueling with gasohol

Take care not to spill gasohol. It can damage your vehicle's paint.

## 6-1. Specifications

# Tire information

### Typical tire symbols



- 1 Tire size (→P. 683)
- 2 DOT and Tire Identification Number (TIN) (→P. 682)
- 3 Location of treadwear indicators (→P. 570)
- 4 Tire ply composition and materials

Ply is a layer of rubber-coated parallel cords. Cords are the strands which form the plies in a tire.

- 5 Radial tires or bias-ply tires

A radial tire has RADIAL on the sidewall. A tire not marked RADIAL is a bias-ply tire.

- 6 TUBELESS or TUBE TYPE

A tubeless tire does not have a tube and air is directly filled in the tire. A tube type tire has a tube inside the tire and the tube maintains the air pressure.

- 7 Load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure (→P. 574)
- 8 Maximum cold tire inflation pressure (→P. 675)

This means the pressure to which a tire may be inflated.

- 9 Uniform tire quality grading

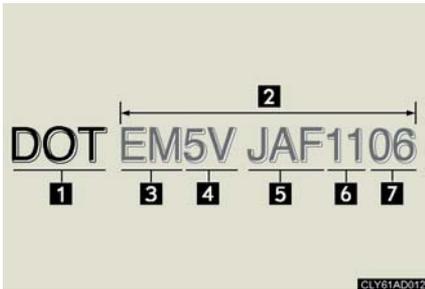
For details, see “Uniform tire quality grading” that follows.

10 Summer tire or all season tire

(→P. 574)

An all season tire has “M+S” on the sidewall. A tire not marked “M+S” is a summer tire.

Typical DOT and tire identification number (TIN)

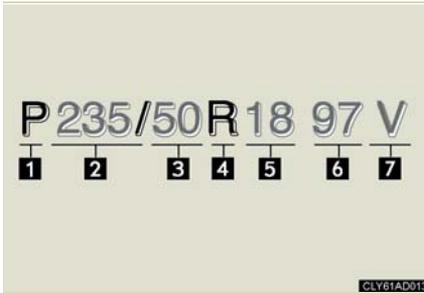


- 1 DOT symbol\*
- 2 Tire Identification Number (TIN)
- 3 Tire manufacturer's identification mark
- 4 Tire size code
- 5 Manufacturer's optional tire type code (3 or 4 letters)
- 6 Manufacturing week
- 7 Manufacturing year

\*:The DOT symbol certifies that the tire conforms to applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

## Tire size

### Typical tire size information



The illustration indicates typical tire size.

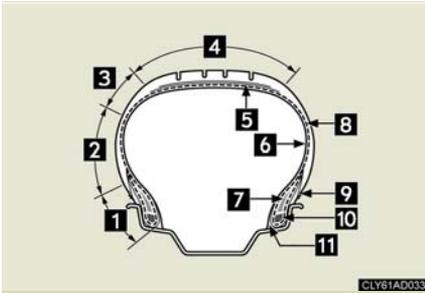
- 1** Tire use  
(P = Passenger car,  
T = Temporary use)
- 2** Section width (millimeters)
- 3** Aspect ratio  
(tire height to section width)
- 4** Tire construction code  
(R = Radial, D = Diagonal)
- 5** Wheel diameter (inches)
- 6** Load index (2 or 3 digits)
- 7** Speed symbol  
(alphabet with one letter)

### Tire dimensions



- 1** Section width
- 2** Tire height
- 3** Wheel diameter

## Tire section names



- 1 Bead
- 2 Sidewall
- 3 Shoulder
- 4 Tread
- 5 Belt
- 6 Inner liner
- 7 Reinforcing rubber
- 8 Carcass
- 9 Rim lines
- 10 Bead wires
- 11 Chafer

## Uniform Tire Quality Grading

This information has been prepared in accordance with regulations issued by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration of the U.S.A. Department of Transportation.

It provides the purchasers and/or prospective purchasers of Lexus vehicles with information on uniform tire quality grading.

Your Lexus dealer will help answer any questions you may have as you read this information.

### ■ DOT quality grades

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades. Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example: Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A

## ■ Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1 - 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

## ■ Traction AA, A, B, C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C, and they represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete.

A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on braking (straight ahead) traction tests and does not include cornering (turning) traction.

## ■ Temperature A, B, C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109.

Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning: The temperature grades for this tire are established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded.

Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

### Glossary of tire terminology

Tire related term	Meaning
Cold tire inflation pressure	Tire pressure when the vehicle has been parked for three hours or more, or has not been driven more than 1 mile or 1.5 km under that condition
Maximum inflation pressure	The maximum cold inflated pressure to which a tire may be inflated, shown on the sidewall of the tire
Recommended inflation pressure	Cold tire inflation pressure recommended by a manufacturer
Accessory weight	The combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not)
Curb weight	The weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment, including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil and coolant, and if so equipped, air conditioning and additional weight optional engine
Maximum loaded vehicle weight	The sum of: (a) Curb weight (b) Accessory weight (c) Vehicle capacity weight (d) Production options weight
Normal occupant weight	150 lb. (68 kg) times the number of occupants specified in the second column of Table 1* that follows

Tire related term	Meaning
Occupant distribution	Distribution of occupants in a vehicle as specified in the third column of Table 1* below
Production options weight	The combined weight of installed regular production options weighing over 5 lb. (2.3 kg) in excess of the standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim
Rim	A metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated
Rim diameter (Wheel diameter)	Nominal diameter of the bead seat
Rim size designation	Rim diameter and width
Rim type designation	The industry manufacturer's designation for a rim by style or code
Rim width	Nominal distance between rim flanges
Vehicle capacity weight (Total load capacity)	The rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lb. (68 kg) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity
Vehicle maximum load on the tire	The load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight, and dividing by two
Vehicle normal load on the tire	The load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with Table 1* below), and dividing by two
Weather side	The surface area of the rim not covered by the inflated tire

Tire related term	Meaning
Bead	The part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim
Bead separation	A breakdown of the bond between components in the bead
Bias ply tire	A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at alternate angles substantially less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread
Carcass	The tire structure, except tread and sidewall rubber which, when inflated, bears the load
Chunking	The breaking away of pieces of the tread or sidewall
Cord	The strands forming the plies in the tire
Cord separation	The parting of cords from adjacent rubber compounds
Cracking	Any parting within the tread, sidewall, or innerliner of the tire extending to cord material
CT	A pneumatic tire with an inverted flange tire and rim system in which the rim is designed with rim flanges pointed radially inward and the tire is designed to fit on the underside of the rim in a manner that encloses the rim flanges inside the air cavity of the tire
Extra load tire	A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire
Groove	The space between two adjacent tread ribs
Innerliner	The layer(s) forming the inside surface of a tubeless tire that contains the inflating medium within the tire
Innerliner separation	The parting of the innerliner from cord material in the carcass

Tire related term	Meaning
Intended outboard sidewall	(a) The sidewall that contains a whitewall, bears white lettering, or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same molding on the other sidewall of the tire, or (b) The outward facing sidewall of an asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle
Light truck (LT) tire	A tire designated by its manufacturer as primarily intended for use on lightweight trucks or multipurpose passenger vehicles
Load rating	The maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure
Maximum load rating	The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire
Maximum permissible inflation pressure	The maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated
Measuring rim	The rim on which a tire is fitted for physical dimension requirements
Open splice	Any parting at any junction of tread, sidewall, or innerliner that extends to cord material
Outer diameter	The overall diameter of an inflated new tire
Overall width	The linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs
Passenger car tire	A tire intended for use on passenger cars, multipurpose passenger vehicles, and trucks, that have a gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) of 10,000 lb. or less.
Ply	A layer of rubber-coated parallel cords

Tire related term	Meaning
Ply separation	A parting of rubber compound between adjacent plies
Pneumatic tire	A mechanical device made of rubber, chemicals, fabric and steel or other materials, that, when mounted on an automotive wheel, provides the traction and contains the gas or fluid that sustains the load
Radial ply tire	A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread
Reinforced tire	A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire
Section width	The linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, excluding elevations due to labeling, decoration, or protective bands
Sidewall	That portion of a tire between the tread and bead
Sidewall separation	The parting of the rubber compound from the cord material in the sidewall
Snow tire	A tire that attains a traction index equal to or greater than 110, compared to the ASTM E-1136 Standard Reference Test Tire, when using the snow traction test as described in ASTM F-1805-00, Standard Test Method for Single Wheel Driving Traction in a Straight Line on Snow-and Ice-Covered Surfaces, and which is marked with an Alpine Symbol (  ) on at least one sidewall
Test rim	The rim on which a tire is fitted for testing, and may be any rim listed as appropriate for use with that tire

Tire related term	Meaning
Tread	That portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road
Tread rib	A tread section running circumferentially around a tire
Tread separation	Pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass
Treadwear indicators (TWI)	The projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread
Wheel-holding fixture	The fixture used to hold the wheel and tire assembly securely during testing

\*: Table 1 — Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Designated seating capacity, Number of occupants	Vehicle normal load, Number of occupants	Occupant distribution in a normally loaded vehicle
2 through 4	2	2 in front
5 through 10	3	2 in front, 1 in second seat
11 through 15	5	2 in front, 1 in second seat, 1 in third seat, 1 in fourth seat
16 through 20	7	2 in front, 2 in second seat, 2 in third seat, 1 in fourth seat

## 6-2. Customization

### Customizable features

Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to your preferences. Programming these preferences requires specialized equipment and may be performed by an authorized Lexus dealership.

Some function settings are changed simultaneously with other functions being customized. Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Smart access system with push-button start (→P. 32)	Smart access system with push-button start	On	Off
	Operation signal (Emergency flashers)	On	Off
Wireless remote control (→P. 46)	Wireless remote control	On	Off
	Unlocking operation	Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two steps	All doors unlocked in one step
	Automatic door lock function to be activated if door is not opened after being unlocked	On	Off
	Time elapsed before automatic lock function is activated if door is not opened after being unlocked	60 seconds	30 seconds 120 seconds

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Wireless remote control (→P. 46)	Operational signal (Emergency flashers)	On	Off
	Door lock buzzer	On	Off
	Trunk unlocking operation	Push and hold	Push twice
			One short push
Panic function	On	Off	
Door lock (→P. 49, 656)	Speed-detecting automatic door lock function	Off	On
	Opening driver's door unlocks all doors.	Off	On
	Shifting gears to P unlocks all doors.	On	Off
	Shifting gears to position other than P locks all doors.	On	Off
	Unlocking using a key	Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two steps	All doors unlocked in one step
Trunk (→P. 54)	Power trunk opener and closer function	On	Off
Power windows (→P. 89)	Mechanical key linked operation	On	Off
	Mechanical key linked operation	Open and close	Open only
	Close only		

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Power windows (→P. 89)	Wireless remote control linked operation	On	Off
	Linked entry operation	On	Off
Moon roof (→P. 91)	Mechanical key linked operation	On	Off
	Mechanical key linked operation	Open and close	Open only
			Close only
	Linked operation of components when door key is used	Slide only	Tilt only
	Wireless remote control linked operation	On	Off
	Linked operation of components when wireless remote control used	Slide only	Tilt only
Automatic light control system (→P. 172)	Light sensor sensitivity	Level 3	Level 1 to 5
	Time elapsed before headlights automatically turn off after doors are closed	30 seconds	0 second
			60 seconds
			90 seconds
Lights (→P. 172)	Daytime running light system (U.S.A. only)	On	Off
Intuitive parking assist-sensor (→P. 195)	Buzzer volume	Level 3	Level 1 to 5
	Distance at which the front and back sensors detect an obstacle	Level 1	Level 2

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Illumination (→P. 457)	Time elapsed before lights turn off	15 seconds	7.5 seconds
			30 seconds
	Operation when the doors are unlocked	On	Off
	Operation after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned OFF	On	Off
	Footwell lighting	On	Off
	Shift lever lighting	On	Off
	Outer foot lights	On	Off
Seat belt reminder (→P. 632)	Vehicle speed linked seat belt reminder buzzer	On	Off

### Multi-information display (→P. 168)

Country	Available languages
U.S.A.	English and Spanish
Canada	English, French, German, Spanish and Italian

## 6-3. Initialization

### Items to initialize

The following items must be initialized for normal system operation in cases such as after the battery is reconnected, or maintenance is performed on the vehicle.

Item	When to initialize	Reference
Engine oil maintenance data	After changing engine oil	P. 561
Tire pressure warning system	When changing the tire inflation pressure by changing traveling speed	P. 570

Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners.....	698
Seat belt instructions for Canadian owners (in French).....	699

## Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying the Lexus Division of Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc. (Toll-free: 1-800-25-LEXUS).

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Lexus Division of Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Ave, S.E., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

## Seat belt instructions for Canadian owners (in French)

The following is a French explanation of seat belt instructions extracted from the seat belt section in this manual.

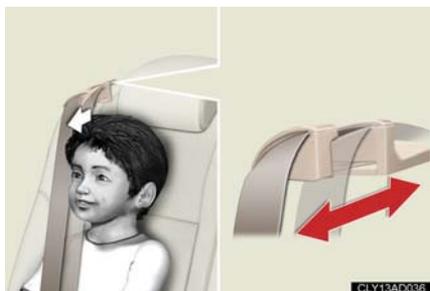
See the seat belt section for more detailed seat belt instructions in English.

### Utilisation correcte des ceintures de sécurité



- Déroulez la sangle diagonale de telle sorte qu'elle passe bien sur l'épaule, sans pour autant être en contact avec votre cou ou glisser de votre épaule.
- Placez la sangle abdominale le plus bas possible sur les hanches.
- Réglez la position du dossier de siège. Asseyez-vous le dos le plus droit possible et caliez-vous bien dans le siège.
- Ne vrillez pas la ceinture de sécurité.

### Guide de confort de ceinture de sécurité (sièges arrière extérieurs)



Si la sangle diagonale est proche du cou de la personne, faites coulisser le guide de confort de ceinture de sécurité vers l'avant.

## Entretien et soin

### ■ Ceintures de sécurité

Nettoyez avec un chiffon ou une éponge humectée d'eau savonneuse tiède. Profitez de l'occasion pour vérifier régulièrement que les ceintures ne sont pas effilochées, entaillées, ou ne paraissent pas exagérément usées.

### ATTENTION

#### ■ Détérioration et usure des ceintures de sécurité

Inspectez les ceintures de sécurité périodiquement. Contrôlez qu'elles ne sont pas entaillées, effilochées, et que leurs ancrages ne sont pas desserrés. N'utilisez pas une ceinture de sécurité défectueuse avant qu'elle ne soit remplacée. Une ceinture de sécurité défectueuse n'apporte aucune garantie de protection de l'occupant en cas d'accident.

## Index

**Abbreviation list ..... 702**

**Alphabetical index ..... 704**

**What to do if... ..... 714**

For details of equipment related to the navigation system, such as the audio system and clock, refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

## Abbreviation list

# Abbreviation/Acronym list

ABBREVIATIONS	MEANING
A/C	Air Conditioning
ABS	Anti-Lock Brake System
AFS	Adaptive Front-lighting System
AI-SHIFT	Artificial Intelligence Shift control
ALR	Automatic Locking Retractor
CAL	Calibration
CRS	Child Restraint System
DISP	Display
ECT	Electronic Controlled Transmission
ECU	Electronic Control Unit
EDR	Event data recorder
ELR	Emergency Locking Retractor
EPS	Electric Power Steering
GAWR	Gross Axle Weight Ratings
GPS	Global Positioning System
I/M	Emission inspection and maintenance
INFO	Information
INT	Intermittent
LED	Light Emitting Diode
MMT	Methylcyclopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl
M + S	Mud and Snow
MTBE	Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether
OBD	On Board Diagnostics
PCS	Pre-Collision System
PWR	Power

ABBREVIATIONS	MEANING
SRS	Supplemental Restraint System
TIN	Tire Identification Number
TPMS	Tire Pressure Warning System
TRAC	Traction Control
VDIM	Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management
VGRS	Variable Gear Ratio Steering
VIB	Vibration
VIN	Vehicle Identification Number
VSC	Vehicle Stability Control

<b>A</b>	<b>A/C</b>	
	Air conditioning filter .....	584
	Automatic air conditioning system .....	248, 257, 266, 276
	Front air conditioning system .....	248, 257, 266
	Rear air conditioning system .....	276
	ABS .....	209
	ACCESSORY mode .....	146
	AFS .....	173
	Adaptive front lighting system .....	173
	Air conditioning filter .....	584
	<b>Air conditioning system</b>	
	Air conditioning filter .....	584
	Front air conditioning system .....	248, 257, 266
	Rear air conditioning system .....	276
	<b>Airbags</b>	
	Airbag operating conditions .....	108
	Airbag precautions for your child .....	113
	Airbag warning light .....	631
	Curtain shield airbag operating conditions .....	109
	Curtain shield airbag precautions .....	113
	Front passenger occupant classification system .....	118
	General airbag precautions .....	113
	Locations of airbags .....	104
	Modification and disposal of airbags .....	117
	Proper driving posture .....	102, 113
	Side airbag operating conditions .....	109
	Side airbag precautions .....	113
	SRS airbags .....	104
	<b>Alarm</b> .....	99
	<b>Antenna</b> .....	291
	<b>Anti-lock brake system</b> .....	209
	<b>Armrest</b> .....	493
	<b>Ashtrays</b> .....	481
	<b>Audio input</b> .....	306, 360
	<b>Audio system</b>	
	Antenna .....	291
	Audio input .....	306, 360
	Audio visual input .....	409
	AUX adapter .....	306, 360
	A/V input adapter .....	409
	CD player/changer .....	292, 317
	DVD player .....	332, 377, 378
	MP3/WMA disc .....	298, 325
	Optimal use .....	304, 356
	Portable music player .....	306, 360
	Radio .....	288, 312
	Rear seat audio system .....	361
	Rear seat entertainment system .....	367
	Steering wheel audio switch .....	307
	<b>Audio visual input</b> .....	409
	<b>Automatic air conditioning system</b>	
	Air conditioning filter .....	584
	Front air conditioning system .....	248, 257, 266
	Rear air conditioning system .....	276
	<b>Automatic headlight leveling system</b> .....	174
	<b>Automatic light control system</b> .....	172

Automatic transmission	
Automatic transmission.....	150
If the shift lever cannot be	
shifted from "P" .....	652
S mode .....	152
AUX adapter.....	306, 360
A/V input adapter .....	409

**B**

Back-up lights	
Wattage .....	677
Battery	
Checking.....	566
If the vehicle has discharged	
battery.....	660
Preparing and checking	
before winter.....	232
Bluetooth® .....	413
Brake	
Fluid.....	564
Brake hold .....	159
Parking brake.....	156
Brake assist.....	209
Brake hold.....	159

**C**

Care	
Exterior.....	536
Interior.....	539
Seat belts .....	540
Cargo capacity .....	227
Cargo hooks .....	508
CD changer .....	292, 317
CD player.....	292, 317
Chains.....	232

**Child restraint system**

Booster seats, definition .....	123
Booster seats, installation .....	129
Convertible seats, definition.....	123
Convertible seats, installation.....	129
Front passenger occupant	
classification system .....	118
Infant seats, definition.....	123
Infant seats, installation .....	129
Installing CRS with lower	
anchors.....	132
Installing CRS with seat belts.....	129
Installing CRS with top straps.....	133

**Child safety**

Airbag precautions.....	113
Battery precautions .....	567, 662
Child restraint system.....	123
Child-protectors.....	50
How your child should wear	
the seat belt .....	80
Installing child restraints.....	128
Moon roof precautions.....	93
Power window lock switch.....	89
Power window precautions .....	90
Removed electronic key battery	
precautions.....	588
Seat belt comfort guide .....	78
Seat belt extender precautions.....	82
Seat belt precautions .....	81
Seat heater precautions.....	492
Trunk precautions.....	56
Child-protectors.....	50
Cigarette lighter.....	482

Cleaning	
Exterior .....	536
Interior .....	539
Seat belts.....	540
Climate control seat .....	489
Climate control seat filter.....	586
Clock .....	478
Coat hooks .....	506
Coin holder .....	464
Compass .....	517
Condenser .....	564
Console box .....	468
Cool box.....	470
Cooling system	
Engine overheating .....	663
Cornering assist sensors .....	195
Cruise control	
Cruise control .....	182
Dynamic radar cruise control.....	185
Cup holders .....	466
Curtain shield airbags.....	104
Customizable features .....	692
<b>D</b> Daytime running light system .....	173
Defogger	
Rear window.....	283
Side mirrors .....	283
Dimensions.....	668
Dinghy towing .....	237
Display	
Multi-information display.....	168
Touch screen .....	240
Trip information.....	169
Warning message.....	639
Do-it-yourself maintenance .....	548

Door courtesy lights	
Door courtesy lights.....	457
Wattage.....	677
Door pockets .....	465
Doors	
Door glasses.....	89
Door lock.....	32, 46, 49
Side mirrors.....	87
Driver's seat belt reminder light.....	632
Driving	
Correct posture.....	102
Procedures.....	138
Driving position memory.....	69
DVD player.....	332, 377, 378

<b>E</b> Electric power steering.....	209
Electronically modulated air suspension.....	204
Electronic key	
If the electronic key does not operate properly.....	656
Emergency, in case of	
If the electronic key does not operate properly.....	656
If the engine will not start.....	650
If the parking brake cannot be released.....	653
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P" .....	652
If the vehicle has discharged battery .....	660
If the warning buzzer sounds.....	630
If the warning light turns on.....	630
If the warning message is displayed.....	639

If you have a flat tire ..... 642

If you lose your keys ..... 655

If you think something is  
wrong..... 626

If your vehicle becomes stuck ... 666

If your vehicle needs to be  
towed..... 620

If your vehicle overheats..... 663

**Engine**

Accessory mode..... 146

Compartment ..... 554

Engine switch ..... 146

Hood ..... 551

How to start the engine..... 146

Identification number..... 669

If the engine will not start ..... 650

Ignition switch..... 146

Overheating..... 663

**Engine compartment cover..... 555**

**Engine coolant**

Capacity..... 672

Checking..... 562

Preparing and checking  
before winter..... 232

**Engine coolant temperature**  
gauge ..... 161

**Engine immobilizer system..... 97**

**Engine oil**

Capacity..... 671

Checking..... 558

Preparing and checking  
before winter..... 232

**Engine oil maintenance data..... 561**

**EPS..... 209**

**Event data recorder..... 628**

**F** **First-aid kit storage belt ..... 508**

**Floor mat ..... 507**

**Fluid**

Brake..... 564

Washer ..... 569

**Fog lights**

Switch..... 175

Wattage..... 677

**Footwell lighting..... 457**

**Front fog lights**

Switch..... 175

Wattage..... 677

**Front passenger occupant**  
classification system ..... 118

**Front passenger's seat belt**  
reminder light..... 632

**Front seats**

Adjustment..... 59

Driver's seat position memory..... 69

**Front turn signal lights**

Wattage..... 677

**Fuel**

Capacity ..... 670

Fuel gauge..... 161

Fuel pump shut off system..... 627

Information ..... 678

Refueling..... 94

**Fuel door ..... 94**

**Fuel filler door ..... 94**

**Fuel pump shut off system..... 627**

**Fuses ..... 589**

<b>G</b>	Garage door opener ..... 511	<b>I</b>	I/M test ..... 547
	Gauges ..... 161		Identification
	Glove box ..... 463		Engine ..... 669
<b>H</b>	Hands-free system		Vehicle ..... 669
	(for cellular phone) ..... 413		Ignition switch ..... 146
	Head restraints		Illuminated entry system ..... 457
	Adjustment ..... 75		Indicator lights ..... 164
	Headlight aim ..... 606		Initialization
	Headlight cleaner ..... 181		Items to initialize ..... 696
	Headlights		Inside rear view mirror ..... 86
	Discharge headlight		Interior lights
	precautions ..... 617		Interior lights ..... 457
	Replacing light bulbs ..... 608		Switch ..... 458
	Switch ..... 172		Wattage ..... 677
	Wattage ..... 677	<b>J</b>	Jack
	Heaters		Positioning a floor jack ..... 552
	Seat heaters ..... 489		Replacing the wheel ..... 642
	Side mirrors ..... 283		Jack handle ..... 642
	Steering wheel ..... 487	<b>K</b>	Keyless entry ..... 46
	Height control		Keys
	Electronically modulated air		Electronic key ..... 28
	suspension ..... 204		Engine switch ..... 146
	Hill-start assist control ..... 209		If the electronic key does not
	Hood ..... 551		operate properly ..... 656
	Hooks		If you lose your keys ..... 655
	Cargo ..... 508		Key number ..... 28
	Coat ..... 506		Keyless entry ..... 46
	Shopping bag ..... 508		Keys ..... 28
			Mechanical key ..... 29
			Wireless remote control key ..... 46

**L** Lexus link system..... 521

Light bulbs

- Replacing..... 608
- Wattage .....677

Lights

- Door courtesy lights ..... 457
- Fog light switch.....175
- Headlight switch ..... 172
- Interior light switch.....458
- Outer foot lights..... 457
- Overhead courtesy light ..... 457
- Personal light switch .....458
- Replacing light bulbs ..... 608
- Shift lever lighting ..... 457
- Turn signal lever .....155
- Vanity lights .....477
- Wattage .....677

Load capacity ..... 230

**M** Maintenance

- Do-it-yourself maintenance..... 548
- General maintenance..... 544
- Maintenance data ..... 668
- Maintenance requirements..... 542

Meter

- Instrument panel light control ..... 162
- Meters .....161

Micro dust and pollen

- filter.....252, 261, 272

Mirrors

- Inside rear view mirror ..... 86
- Side mirror heaters.....283
- Side mirrors..... 87
- Vanity mirrors .....477

Moon roof..... 91

MP3 disc ..... 298, 325, 381

Multi-information display ..... 168

**O** Odometer.....161

Oil

- Engine oil..... 558

Opener

- Fuel filler door ..... 94
- Hood..... 551
- Trunk ..... 54

Outer foot lights

- Outer foot lights ..... 457
- Wattage.....677

Outside rear view mirrors

- Adjusting and folding.....87
- Mirror position memory.....69

Outside temperature display ..... 169

Overhead console ..... 474

Overhead courtesy lights

- Overhead courtesy lights..... 457
- Wattage.....677

Overheating, Engine..... 663

**P** Parking assist sensors ..... 195

Parking brake ..... 156

Parking lights

- Replacing light bulbs..... 608
- Switch.....172
- Wattage..... 677

PCS ..... 215, 218

Penlight ..... 643

Personal lights

- Switch..... 458

Power outlet.....484

Power windows ..... 89

Pre-collision system..... 215, 218

<b>R</b>	Radar cruise control.....	185
	Radiator.....	564
	Radio.....	288, 312
	RDS.....	290
	Rear seat	
	Seat adjustment.....	62, 65
	Seat position memory.....	73
	Rear seat entertainment system.....	367
	Rear seat relaxation system.....	494
	Rear sunshade.....	498
	Rear turn signal lights	
	Replacing light bulbs.....	608
	Wattage.....	677
	Rear view mirror	
	Compass.....	517
	Rear view monitor system.....	206
	Rear window defogger.....	283
	Replacing	
	Electronic key battery.....	587
	Fuses.....	589
	Light bulbs.....	608
	Reporting safety defects for	
	U.S. owners.....	698

<b>S</b>	Seat belts	
	Adjusting the seat belt.....	78
	Automatic locking retractor.....	79
	Child restraint system	
	installation.....	128
	Cleaning and maintaining	
	the seat belts.....	540
	Emergency locking retractor.....	79
	How to wear your seat belt.....	77
	How your child should wear	
	the seat belt.....	80
	Pregnant women,	
	proper seat belt use.....	79
	Reminder light.....	632
	Seat belt extenders.....	80
	Seat belt pretensioners.....	78
	Seat heaters.....	489
	Seat position memory.....	69, 73
	Seating capacity.....	230
	Seats	
	Adjustment.....	59, 62, 65
	Adjustment	
	precautions.....	61, 64, 68
	Child seats/child restraint	
	system installation.....	128
	Cleaning.....	539
	Climate control.....	489
	Climate control seat.....	489
	Driver's seat position memory.....	69
	Head restraint.....	75
	Properly sitting in the seat.....	102
	Rear seat position memory.....	73
	Rear seat relaxation system.....	494

Seat heaters.....	489
Seat position memory.....	69, 73
Service reminder indicators .....	164
<b>Shift lever</b>	
Automatic transmission.....	150
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P" .....	652
<b>Shift lever lighting.....</b>	<b>457</b>
<b>Shift lock system .....</b>	<b>652</b>
<b>Shopping bag hooks.....</b>	<b>508</b>
<b>Side airbags.....</b>	<b>104</b>
<b>Side marker lights</b>	
Switch.....	172
<b>Side mirror</b>	
Adjusting and folding .....	87
Mirror position memory .....	69
<b>Smart access system with push-button start</b>	
Entry function .....	32
Starting the engine.....	146
<b>Spare tire</b>	
Inflation pressure .....	578
Spare tire .....	642
<b>Spark plug.....</b>	<b>672</b>
<b>Specifications.....</b>	<b>668</b>
<b>Speedometer.....</b>	<b>161</b>
<b>Steering wheel</b>	
Adjustment .....	84
Audio switches .....	307
Heated steering wheel .....	487
Steering wheel position memory .....	69
<b>Storage feature.....</b>	<b>460</b>
<b>Stuck vehicle</b>	
If your vehicle becomes stuck .....	666
<b>Sun visors.....</b>	<b>476</b>

<b>Sunshades</b>	
Rear.....	498
Rear door.....	501
Roof.....	92
<b>Switch</b>	
ECT switch.....	151
Engine switch.....	146
Fog light switch .....	175
Heated steering wheel switch....	487
Ignition switch .....	146
Light switches .....	172
Parking brake switch.....	156
Power door lock switch .....	49
Power trunk lid.....	54
Power trunk opener and closer ...	54
Power window switch .....	89
Window lock switch.....	89
Wipers and washer switch .....	176

<b>T</b>	<b>Tachometer.....</b>	<b>161</b>
	<b>Tail lights</b>	
	Switch.....	172
	<b>Theft deterrent system</b>	
	Alarm.....	99
	Engine immobilizer system.....	97
	<b>Theft prevention labels.....</b>	<b>101</b>
	<b>Tire inflation pressure .....</b>	<b>578</b>
	<b>Tire information</b>	
	Glossary .....	686
	Size.....	683
	Tire identification number.....	682
	Uniform tire quality grading.....	684

**Tires**

- Chains ..... 232
- Checking ..... 570
- If you have a flat tire ..... 642
- Inflation pressure ..... 578
- Inflation pressure sensor ..... 571
- Information ..... 681
- Replacing ..... 642
- Rotating tires ..... 570
- Size ..... 675
- Snow tires ..... 232
- Tire pressure warning system ..... 570, 632

**Tools** ..... 642

**Total load capacity** ..... 230

**Touch screen** ..... 240

**Towing**

- Dinghy towing ..... 237
- Emergency towing ..... 620
- Trailer towing ..... 236

**TRAC** ..... 209

**Traction control** ..... 209

**Trip meter** ..... 161

**Trunk**

- Extending a space ..... 504
- Opener ..... 54
- Closer ..... 54

**Trunk light**

- Wattage ..... 677

**Turn signal lights**

- Replacing light bulbs ..... 608
- Switch ..... 155
- Wattage ..... 677

**V**

**Vanity lights**

- Vanity lights ..... 477
- Wattage ..... 677

**Vanity mirrors** ..... 477

**VDIM** ..... 209

**Vehicle dynamics integrated management** ..... 209

**Vehicle identification number** ..... 669

**Vehicle stability control** ..... 209

**VSC** ..... 209

**W**

**Warning buzzers**

- Brake system ..... 630
- Open door ..... 632
- Seat belt reminder ..... 632

**Warning lights**

- Anti-lock brake system ..... 631
- Brake assist system ..... 631
- Brake system ..... 630, 632
- Charging system ..... 630
- Electric power steering ..... 631
- Electronic engine control system ..... 631
- Low fuel level ..... 632
- Low tire pressure ..... 632
- Malfunction indicator lamp ..... 631
- Master warning light ..... 632
- Open door ..... 632
- Pre-collision system ..... 631
- Pretensioners ..... 631
- Seat belt reminder light ..... 632
- SRS airbags ..... 631
- Tire pressure ..... 632

**Warning messages** ..... 639

<b>Washer</b>	
Checking.....	569
Preparing and checking before winter.....	232
Switch.....	176
<b>Washing and waxing.....</b>	<b>536</b>
<b>Weight</b>	
Cargo capacity.....	227
Load limits.....	230
Weight.....	668
<b>Wheels.....</b>	<b>582</b>
<b>Window glasses.....</b>	<b>89</b>
<b>Window lock switch.....</b>	<b>89</b>
<b>Windows</b>	
Power windows.....	89
Rear window defogger.....	283
Washer.....	176
<b>Windshield wiper de-icer.....</b>	<b>284</b>
<b>Windshield wipers.....</b>	<b>176</b>
<b>Wireless remote control key</b>	
Replacing the battery.....	587
<b>WMA disc.....</b>	<b>298, 325, 381</b>

## What to do if...

## What to do if...



A tire punctures

P. 642 If you have a flat tire



The engine does not start

P. 650 If the engine will not start

P. 97 Engine immobilizer system

P. 660 If the battery is discharged



The shift lever cannot be moved out

P. 652 If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P"



The engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone

P. 663 If your vehicle overheats



Steam can be seen coming from under the hood



The key is lost

P. 655 If you lose your keys



The battery runs out

P. 660 If the battery is discharged



The doors cannot be locked

P. 49 Doors



The horn begins to sound

P. 99 Alarm



The vehicle is stuck in mud or sand

P. 666 If the vehicle becomes stuck

 A warning light or indicator light comes on

P. 630 If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds...



■ Warning lights

 Brake system warning light (red indicator)

or

 P. 630

 Malfunction indicator lamp

or

 P. 631

 "ABS" warning light

or

 P. 631

 Driver's seat belt reminder light P. 632

 PASSENGER Front passenger's seat belt reminder light P. 632

 Brake system warning light (yellow indicator) P. 631

 Master warning light with warning message P. 632

 Low fuel level warning light P. 632

 Electric power steering warning light P. 631

 SRS warning light P. 631

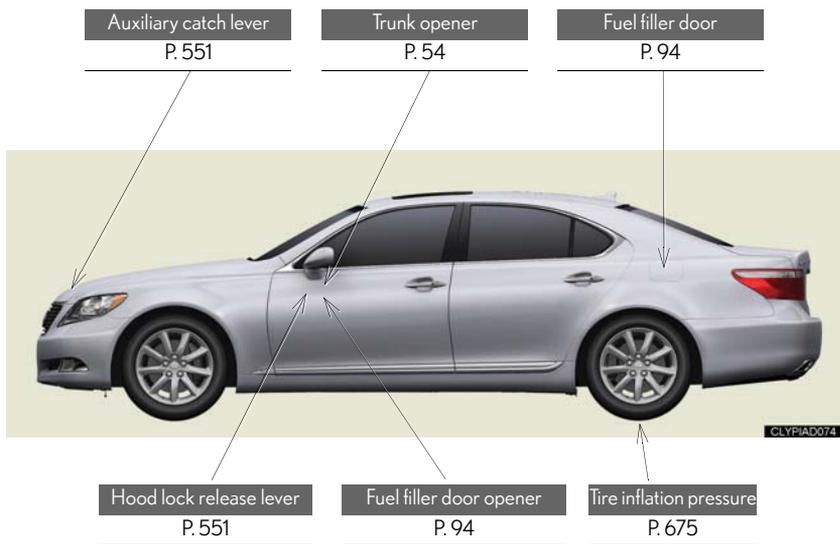
 PCS Pre-collision system warning light P. 631

 Open door warning light P. 632

 Tire pressure warning light P. 632

 Charging system warning light P. 630

## GAS STATION INFORMATION



Fuel tank capacity	22.1 gal. (84L, 18.4 Imp.gal.)	
Fuel type	Unleaded gasoline only	P. 95, 670
Cold tire inflation pressure		P. 675
Engine oil capacity (Drain and refill)	With filter Without filter	qt. (L, Imp.qt.) 9.1 (8.6, 7.6) 8.9 (8.4, 7.4)
Engine oil type	Toyota Genuine Motor Oil or equivalent Oil grade: ILSAC multigrade engine oil Recommended oil viscosity: SAE-5W-20, -0W-20	P. 671